



MORE

Basic Course



MORÉ BASIC COURSE

P R E F A C E

Moré is the language spoken by the Mossi people of Upper Volta, about 2,000,000 in number. This book is intended to give the student a start in Moré, providing him with dialogues that relate to some of the first situations in which he is likely to use the language, as well as with systematic practice in all major points of grammar.

Moré Basic Course in one of a series of short Basic Courses in selected African languages prepared by the Foreign Service Institute with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, under provisions of the National Defense Education Act.

The course is laid out in three cycles. Cycle One is devoted mainly to socially useful set expressions and to general notes on social usage and the major points of grammar. Cycle Two concentrates on developing fuller control of the language structure within the context of high frequency situations. Cycle Three presents additional material for comprehension and conversation practice aimed at the consolidation of skills developed in Cycle Two.

All Moré texts were provided by Adamă Balima. James E. Redden developed the system of transcription and the notes on the phonemic system incorporated in the introduction, he was also primarily responsible for the development of Cycle One and the last three units of Cycle Two. Marianne Lehr developed the remainder of Cycle Two, organized the supplementary materials incorporated as Cycle Three, and is responsible for the glossary and much of the introduction. Useful suggestions came from Earl W. Stevick and Lloyd B. Swift of the FSI staff. The Moré-French Dictionary of R. P. Alexandre, published by L'Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, was of particular value.

The tape recordings to accompany this text were prepared in the studios of the Foreign Service Institute under the technical direction of Gary Alley. Mrs. Evelyn Vass prepared the manuscript for reproduction.


James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction.....	xv
Speakers of Moré.....	xv
The Language Family.....	xv
The Language of this Manual.....	xv
 A Learner's Synopsis of Moré.....	 xvi
General Characteristics of the Language.....	xvi
Basic Word Structure.....	xvi
Major Words: Nouns and Verbs.....	xvi
The Syllable.....	xix
Functional Identity.....	xx
Inflection of the Suffix Vowel.....	xxi
Syntax.....	xxiv
Summary of General Characteristics.....	xxvi
 Sounds of Moré: Symbol List.....	 xxvi
Sounds of Moré: Pitch Contour.....	xxx1
Characteristics of the Two Tones.....	xxx1
Mid Tone or Down Step.....	xxxii
Symbols for Tones.....	xxxiii
Intonation Patterns.....	xxxiv
Tones of Borrowed Words.....	xxxv
 The Writing System.....	 xxxv
 The Organization of this Manual.....	 xxxvi
 Suggestions for the Use of this Manual.....	 xxxvii

CYCLE ONE

Introduction.....	1
Unit 1 Greetings.....	2
1A Greetings.....	3
1B Pronouns: List.....	3
1C Pronouns: Stylistic Usage.....	4
1D Pronouns: Social Usage.....	5
1E Elision of Word-Final Vowels.....	6
1.1 Drills with Greetings.....	6

MORE BASIC COURSE

Unit 2	Welcoming Greetings.....	7
2A	Informal/Polite.....	8
2B	Regional Variations.....	9
2C	Members of the Family.....	9
2D	/ɔYám waa láafì?/.....	9
2E	Collective Plural: /dambá/.....	9
2F	Obligatory /mé/ after verbs.....	10
Unit 3	Greetings to a Recent Arrival.....	11
3A	The Verb System.....	12
3B	The Connective /n/.....	15
3C	The Locative /-ě/.....	15
3D	Tones of Verbs.....	15
3.1	Tone Drills.....	16
3.2	Question Intonation.....	16
	Comprehension Drills.....	18
Unit 4	Introductions.....	19
4A	Titles of Respect and Familiarity.....	20
4B	Tones of Initial /ya/.....	21
4C	Tones of Verb Objects.....	21
4D	Vowel Changes in Stems.....	22
4E	/la/ With Short Form Pronouns.....	22
4F	Bambada and Silmiidi.....	22
4.1	Tone Drills.....	22
	Comprehension Drills.....	24
Unit 5	How is the Family?.....	25
5A	The Question Marker /bí/.....	26
5B	The Imperative.....	26
5.1	Tone Drills.....	27
5.2	Drills on Command Forms.....	28
	Comprehension Drill	28
Unit 6	Greetings: Delighted and Happy.....	30
6A	The Negative.....	31
6B	The Future: Purpose.....	31
6C	The Relative Connective /sé...wǎ/.....	31

MORE BASIC COURSE

6D	Definiteness /-ǎ/, /wǎ/.....	32
6.1	Drills on Negation.....	32
	Comprehension Drill.....	33
Unit 7	Afternoon Greetings.....	34
7A	/a/ Before Proper Names.....	36
7B	The Proximity Marker, /ná/.....	36
7C	/ohóò: ngée/.....	36
7D	/yíidì, zaká, doogó/.....	36
7E	The Verb /lá/.....	36
7.1	Drills on the Verb /lá/.....	38
Unit 8	Personal Data.....	41
8A	Some Special Expressions.....	42
8B	Numerals Preceded by /á/.....	43
8.1	Number Drills.....	43
	Comprehension Drills.....	44
Unit 9	Name the Profession.....	45
9A	Aspect.....	46
9B	The Present Tense.....	46
9C	Stem Irregularity.....	47
9D	Voiced Consonant plus Identical Voiced Consonant.....	47
9E	Agent Nouns.....	47
9.1	Tone Drills.....	48
	Comprehension Drills.....	48
Unit 10	Pardon Me.....	50
10A	Reduplication for Intensity.....	51
10B	The Past Tense Markers, /dá/ and /dágè/.....	51
10C	Nto.....	52
10D	The Reversive /-g/.....	52
10.1	Drill using /dá/.....	52
10.2	Drill using /-g/.....	53
10.3	Review Drill.....	53
	Comprehension Drill.....	54

MORE BASIC COURSE

Unit 11	How Do You Say...?	55
11A	/l/ plus /d/.....	56
11B	/wǎ tí/.....	56
11C	/n kǒ mã/.....	56
11D	/Boole yǎ n kǒ mã/.....	56
11E	The Negative Imperative.....	57
11.1-4	Drills.....	57
Unit 12	What's Your Name?.....	60
12A	/pog sádà/, /págà/, /dàwà/.....	61
12B	/yítà/ and /yíi/.....	61
12C	The stem of /tengá/: /temsé/.....	61
12D	Alternation of Vowel plus Consonant with Long Nasal Vowel....	62
12.1-3	Drills.....	62
	Comprehension Drill.....	63
Unit 13	Buying Some Fruit.....	64
13A	Noun plus Adjective.....	65
13B	/¿Ub bíi m(é) wae?/.....	65
13C	/wae/.....	66
13D	Alternative Translations of Some Verbs.....	66
13E	Orthography: /l/ and /y/.....	66
13.1-3	Drills.....	66
	Comprehension Drill.....	68
13F	Alternation of /-ǎ/ and /-a/.....	68
Unit 14	Still at the Market.....	69
14A	Saying Thanks.....	70
14B	/I kábdè/.....	70
14C	/tǒé n/ plus another verb.....	71
14.1-3	Drills.....	71
14D	/dá/ plus the Imperfective.....	72
	Comprehension Drill.....	73
Unit 15	A Taxi to the Hotel.....	74
15A	Verb plus Verb Constructions.....	76
15B	The Transitivity /-s/.....	76
15C	Location.....	76

MORE BASIC COURSE

15D	The Cohortative: /bí/.....	76
15.1-2	Drills.....	77
	Comprehension Drills.....	78
CYCLE TWO		
	Introduction.....	79
Unit 16	What Languages Do You Speak?.....	80
16.1	Tones.....	81
16.2	The Loss of the Suffix Vowel.....	84
	Comprehension Drills.....	86
Unit 17	Seku's Daily Routine.....	88
17.1	Review of tones.....	89
17.2	The Present Tense.....	91
17.3	The Short Form after /la/.....	92
	Comprehension Drill.....	93
Unit 18	Kuka Has Decided to Go Hunting.....	94
18A	Aspect.....	95
18B	Tone Class.....	95
18C	Metathesis.....	95
18.1	Negation.....	95
18.2	Noun Inflection.....	97
18.3	/bí, bí/ meaning 'or'.....	100
	Comprehension Drill.....	101
Unit 19	The Latest News.....	103
19.1	The Simple Past Tense.....	104
19.2	The Imperfective in /-ta/.....	105
19.3	Emphatic Word Order.....	107
19.4	The Verb /kǒǒ/.....	111
	Comprehension Drills.....	112
Unit 20	Who Is This?.....	113
	Do You Know Paul?.....	113
20A	Stative Verbs.....	114
20B	/ya/ and /a ya/.....	114

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

20.1	Commands (The Imperative).....	115
20.2	Uses of /kóŋ/.....	117
20.3	/dátà/ + Noun, /dátè/ + Verb.....	119
20.4	The Connective /tí/.....	120
	Comprehension Drill.....	121
Unit 21	Street Directions.....	122
21.1	/bée/ and /ya/.....	122
21.2	The Particle, /sé/.....	126
	Comprehension Drills.....	128
Unit 22	Street Directions.....	131
22.1	The Subordinate Conjunction, /sǎ/.....	132
22.2	Stative Verbs.....	133
22.3	Spatial Relationships.....	134
22.4	Practical Situations.....	135
Unit 23	The Garden I Once Had.....	140
23A	/lébè/ plus Another Verb.....	142
23B	The Reversive /-g-/.....	142
23C	The Suffix /-mde/.....	143
23.1	The Verb /lébà/.....	143
23.2	The Past Tense of Stative Verbs.....	144
	Comprehension Drill.....	147
Unit 24	Habitual Activities in the Former Garden.....	148
24A	/míí/ plus Another Verb.....	148
24.1	Past Habitual Action.....	149
	Comprehension Drills.....	150
Unit 25	What Happened on the Way to the Party?.....	152
25A	The Partitive.....	152
25.1	Past Interrupted Action.....	152
	Comprehension Drills.....	154
Unit 26	Where's the Gas Station?.....	156
26.1	'Having', 'Knowing', and 'Being' as Second Verbs.....	157
	Comprehension Drill.....	161

MORE BASIC COURSE

Unit 27	We Are Going To Build a School.....	162
27.1	The Tone of the Verb /náǎ/.....	162
27.2	The Use of the Verb /náǎ/.....	163
27.3	Special Use of the Verb /náǎ/.....	165
27.4	The Future Tense of 'Having', 'Being', and 'Knowing'.....	167
27.5	/náǎ/ and /lébè/.....	168
	Comprehension Drill.....	168
Unit 28	The Builder Has Just Arrived, But He Hasn't Seen the Site Yet	170
28.1	The Proximity Marker, /ná/.....	171
28.2	The Uses of the Proximity Marker, /ná/.....	172
28.3	The Use of Two Markers, /dá/ and /ná/.....	177
	Comprehension Drills.....	178
Unit 29	A Prince and a Child.....	180
29.1	All the Pronouns.....	182
	Comprehension Drills.....	184
Unit 30	Who Came With You?.....	185
30A	/ub/ as polite reference.....	186
30B	Kinship Terminology.....	186
30C	The Diminutive.....	188
30D	The Augmentative.....	188
30E	Sex of Humans.....	188
30.1	Plural Formations of Personal Nouns.....	188
30.2	Drills.....	190
Unit 31	Farming.....	193
31A	/bwě né bwě/.....	195
31B	Favorable Questions.....	195
31C	The Suffix /-m/, Mass Nouns.....	196
31D	/Sáagà níí mé./.....	196
31.1	/-ě/ and /púgě/.....	196
31.2	Mass nouns.....	196
31.3	Drills.....	198
	Comprehension Drill.....	199

MORE BASIC COURSE

Unit 32	Farm Animals.....	201
32A	Word Order: Location and Time.....	203
32B	Multiple Modifiers of Nouns.....	203
32C	Instrument Nouns.....	203
32D	Titles of Great Respect.....	203
32E	Sex of Animals.....	204
32.1	Plural Formation, /-ga/ to /-se/.....	204
32.2	/míí n/ as the First of Two Verbs.....	207
32.3	Drill.....	208
	Comprehension Drills.....	209
Unit 33	Doctor, It Hurts.....	210
33A	Emphatic Sentences.....	212
33.1	Plural Formations: /-de/ to /-a/ and /-go/ to /-do/.....	213
33.2	Drills.....	214
	Comprehension Drills.....	215
Unit 34	Hiring a Boy.....	217
34A	The Connectives, /n/ and /la/.....	220
34B	Subordinate /-e/.....	221
34C	The Suffix /-bo/.....	221
34D	/dégè/ as the First of Two Verbs.....	221
34E	The Imperfective, Another Use.....	221
34F	Quoting Prices.....	221
34G	The Cohortative.....	222
34H	/lébè/ as the First of Two Verbs.....	222
34I	The Omission of /ya/.....	222
34J	Instrument: Means.....	222
34.1-3	Drills.....	223
Unit 35	The Weather.....	226
35A	/yě/ as the First of Two Verbs.....	228
35B	Intonation after Particles.....	228
35.1-2	Drills.....	228
	Comprehension Drill.....	230
Unit 36	A Soccer Game.....	232
36A	Verbal Nouns: /-go/ and /-ga/.....	234

MORE BASIC COURSE

36B	Polite Suggestion.....	234
36.1-4	Drills.....	234
	Comprehension Drills.....	236
Unit 37	Parking Problems.....	238
37.1-2	Drills.....	239
	Comprehension Drills.....	242
CYCLE THREE		
Introduction.....		245
Unit 38	Short Descriptions of Ouagadougou.....	246
38.1	The Central Market.....	246
38.2	Market Street on a Work Day.....	247
38.3	In Ouagadougou Practically Everybody Has a Bicycle.....	247
38.4	The Kinds of Cars.....	248
38.5	Early to Work.....	249
38.6	'Sunday' in Ouagadougou.....	250
38.7	A New Church.....	251
38.8	The Railroad Station.....	252
Unit 39	Houses.....	254
39.1	How Big is a House?.....	254
39.2	A Well.....	255
39.3	Building a House.....	255
39.4	Taking Care of the Garden.....	256
Unit 40	Food.....	258
40.1	The Inside of the House.....	258
40.2	Sagbo, The Traditional Dish.....	259
40.3	The Variety of Meat.....	259
Unit 41	The Weather.....	261
41.1	The Seasons in Upper Volta.....	261
41.2	Rain.....	261
41.3	A European Winter.....	262
Unit 42	Schools.....	263
42.1	We Want to Build Schools.....	263

MORE BASIC COURSE

42.2	How Many Do We Need?.....	263
42.3	Isaac Has Dreams.....	264
42.4	The Home Town French Class.....	264
Unit 43	Travelling.....	266
43.1	Kuka and Tembila Plan a Trip.....	266
43.2	The Train Trip to Bobo.....	266
43.3	Poko Will Also be in Bobo.....	267
43.4	We Pass Some Construction.....	267
Unit 44	The Neighborhoods of Ouagadougou.....	269
44.1	Kulba, Dapoya, Laglè.....	269
44.2	How Big Is Laglè?.....	269
44.3	The Extent of Laglè?.....	270
44.4	Many People Live There.....	270
44.5	The Church at Kolg-Naaba.....	270
44.6	The Dam at Kolg-Naaba.....	271
44.7	Tampuy.....	271
44.8	The Ouagadougou City Limits.....	271
	Questions for the Unit.....	272
	Translations.....	273
Unit 45	Childhood Memories.....	276
45.1	My Home Town.....	276
45.2	It's a Small Town.....	276
45.3	Not My Birth Place.....	276
45.4	My Uncle's House.....	277
45.5	The Six of Us.....	277
45.6	Our Activities.....	277
45.7	Evenings.....	278
	Questions for the Unit.....	278
	Translations.....	280
Unit 46	Hunting.....	282
46.1	Hunting, Old Style.....	282
46.2	Pedestrians and Riders.....	282
46.3	The Hunting Dogs.....	283
46.4	Hunting on Horseback.....	283

MORE BASIC COURSE

46.5	Our Ancestors Were Excellent Hunters.....	284
46.6	Guns.....	284
46.7	Hunting Today.....	285
46.8	The Lone Hunter Has Less Endurance.....	285
46.9	Nowadays Hunters Are Not Organized.....	285
	Translations.....	285
Unit 47	The Cat and the Bugs.....	288
47.1	Bugs.....	288
47.2	Bugs at Night.....	288
47.3	The Dead Cat.....	289
	Translations.....	289
Unit 48	Independence Day.....	291
48.1	Independence Day.....	291
48.2	Independence Day in Ouagadougou.....	291
48.3	Travelling by Car.....	292
48.4	Horseback Riders.....	292
48.5	From Horses to Bicycles to Feet.....	292
48.6	Two Groups in Laglè.....	293
48.7	The Spirit of Unity.....	293
48.8	The Parade.....	294
48.9	The Long Celebration.....	294
48.10	The Band, Children, Soldiers and Workers.....	295
48.11	The Army and the Parties,.....	295
48.12	Athletes.....	296
48.13	Different Colored Uniforms.....	296
48.14	School Children and Cyclists.....	296
48.15	The Spectators.....	297
48.16	Why the Joy?.....	297
48.17	The Dancers.....	298
48.18	The Masked Dance.....	298
48.19	Fireworks.....	299
48.20	The Cannon Sounds.....	299
48.21	Happiness.....	299
	Translations.....	299
GLOSSARY.....		304
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....		335
INDEX.....		336

INTRODUCTION

Speakers of Moré

The Moré language is spoken by the Mossi people who live, along with Bambara and Fula speaking people, in the central part of Upper Volta. There are about two million native speakers. Unofficially there are estimated to be from 1,700,000 Mossi (Europe-France Outremer, March, 1964) to 2,200,000, (Skinner, E., The Mossi of the Upper Volta). Approximately one million more people also use the language regularly although it is not their first or native language.

Language Family

Moré belongs to the Niger-Congo family, a very large family of languages spoken south of the Sahara. It is surrounded by a number of very closely related languages, the closest being Dagomba, Kusasi, Nankanse, Talensi, Mamprusi, Wala, Dagari, Birifor and Namnam which are spoken south and southwest of Ouagadougou in Upper Volta and northern Ghana. (Greenberg, Joseph H., The Languages of Africa, International Journal of American Linguistics, Volume 29, Number 1, Part II, January 1963.)

The Language of this Manual

This book is based on the speech of Adamã Balima, a Mossi from Upper Volta. He lived in Tenkodogo during his childhood, and moved to Ouagadougou in his early teens. His speech, therefore, must be considered as a mixture of the Moré spoken in Tenkodogo and Ouagadougou.

Mr. Balima's speech is, of course, represented with complete accuracy only on the accompanying tape recordings of which the printed text is merely a transcription. The student, user of this manual, should follow his instructor's example even when his pronunciation, choice of vocabulary, or turn of phrase differs from what appears on these pages. It is hoped that the general format will, nevertheless, prove suggestive, and that, with appropriate substitutions to fit local usage, the dialogs, drills and narratives may be used with instructors speaking different dialects.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

A LEARNER'S SYNOPSIS OF MORÉ STRUCTURE

The following synopsis of Moré structure is, in no way, an exhaustive presentation of Moré sounds and grammar. It is, rather, a summary of the most important points. Its purpose is to provide orientation for the student, who, by knowing on which areas of the language he must lavish attention, can learn more quickly and easily. So that each point will be readily understood, the vocabulary of the examples has been kept small. The exercises are not intended to make this synopsis into an auto-instructional program, but only to give the reader an opportunity to participate if he desires to do so, and to keep constant check on his understanding.

General Characteristics of the Language

Moré can be considered to have four major characteristics.

1. It has lexically significant tones.
2. It has meaningful patterns of intonation.
3. It has a stem and suffix system.
4. 'Parts of speech' can be distinguished from each other only in context. In other words, although there are only a few varieties of word order, these nevertheless contribute a great deal to the meaning of the words used.

Basic Word Structure

Structurally, there are two kinds of words in Moré: major words and particles. Major words are nouns, verbs and long form pronouns. Particles are connectives and short form pronouns. All major words are two syllables long in their dictionary form. Particles are only syllable, or less, in length.

Examples:

Major Words: /wumá/ - understood
 /págà/ - woman
 /píndà/ - early
 /yámbà/ - you, master
 /pélgà/ - white

Particles: /m/ - I
 /né/ - and, with, also
 /ti/ - that (clause connective)

Major Words

Nouns and verbs are composed of stems and suffixes. These component parts can be identified, listed, and usually defined.

Structural Formation of Stems: A stem always consists of a single consonant followed by a vowel. Vowels are long, short or nasalized. The entire

stem has a characteristic pitch, either high or low, in addition to its consonant and vowel. This lexically significant pitch is called tone. Thus all basic stem forms have the structure: consonant plus vowel plus tone.

Examples:

Stems: /ta/ - pertaining to reaching (low tone)
 /kéé/ - pertaining to movement (high tone)
 /ko/ - pertaining to selling (low tone)

Structural Formation of Suffixes: Every word is limited to one stem but may have several suffixes. One consonant plus a vowel is a suffix. Several consonants plus a vowel is a cluster of suffixes. Each suffix consonant serves to limit the wide range of meaning of the stem; the suffix vowel relates the word to the rest of the sentence.

The suffix has no characteristic tone of its own. Its pitch is not part of its own structure but is determined by the tone of the stem. In citation form, high tone stems are followed by suffixes with low pitch; low tone stems by suffixes with high pitch. Primarily these pitches are characteristic of vowels. They do, however, influence the adjacent voiced consonants.

Examples:

Suffix forms: /-d(a)/ - habit, state of
 /-t(a)/ - continuation
 /-g(a)/ - reversive (intransitive)
 /-s(a)/ - transitiviser

Stem-suffix combination: /tadá/ - have, state of having reached
 /tasá/ - reached something
 /tagsá/ - distracted from something
 /tata/ - is arriving
 /kéendà/ - is travelling
 /kéentà/ - is entering
 /kéengà/ - went away
 /kéengdà/ - is going away
 /kéēsà/ - put something inside

The above description applies to most major words. There are a few exceptions, however, which should be noted.

1. Some verbs, in the shortest form, appear without any suffix.
2. One lexically significant suffix is a vowel without any accompanying consonant.
3. Mass nouns do not end in a vowel but in /-m/.

Examples:

1. Verb without a suffix:
 /A wáa mè./ - He arrived.
 contrast: /A wátà mé./ - He is arriving.
2. Vowel without consonant as lexically significant suffix:
 /koo/ - selling, getting rid of, pulling out
 /koosá/ - sold something
 /koasá/ - merchant
3. Mass nouns:
 /kóòm/ - water
 /zóòm/ - flour

Test Yourself:

1. Label the following words: 'MW' for major word or 'P' for particle. The correct answer is given in square brackets at the right.
 /pélgà/ _____ [MW]
 /yámbà/ _____ [MW]
 /m/ _____ [P]
 /né/ _____ [P]
 /wéefò/ _____ [MW]
2. In the following examples, all of them major words, divide the stem from the suffix by drawing a slant line between them.
 / t a s á / [ta/sá]
 / p é l g à / [pé/lgà]
 / k ě ě s a / [kěě/sa]
 / p ó g l g à / [pó/glgà]
 / k o a s á / [ko/asá]
3. Label the following consonant - vowel combinations 'St' if they can only be stems, 'Su' if they can only be suffixes, and 'SS' if they might be either stem or suffix.
 /kěě/ [St]
 /glga/ [Su]
 /ta/ [SS]
 /koa/ [St]
 /gda/ [Su]
 /ba/ [SS]

The Syllable

The syllable consists of (a) a consonant with the vowels that follow it; (b) a consonant cluster with the one vowel that follows it or, (c) sometimes a consonant cluster with no vowel. This division is a useful one from a phonetic as well as a functional point of view. There are three phonetic-grammatical reasons for making this syllable division.

1. Individual consonants, members of a cluster, may be separated from each other by minimal vocalization, i.e. [ə], the last vowel in 'sofa'. This vocalization, however, has no lexical significance. It appears and disappears depending on the speed of speaking or the emphasis that the speaker wants to give the word. This minimal inter-consonantal vocalization can, therefore, be considered non-syllabic.

Examples of Consonant Clusters:

/póglgà/ - wounded
 /gúlsdà/ - writes
 /kadmá/ - taught
 /kéngdá/ - goes away

The Consonant clusters with vocalization marked:

[pó <u>g</u> əlgà]	[ka <u>d</u> əmə]
[gú <u>l</u> əsà]	[ké <u>ng</u> ədà]

2. Each suffix consonant carries meaning, and no suffix consonant is very limited as to the stems with which it can co-occur.

3. In various grammatical environments, the suffix vowel is lost. In these cases, the consonant cluster often carries the pitch of the lost vowel. Most consonants are voiced. The occurrence of the characteristic pitch on a consonant cluster or on another following vowel depends on speed and style of speaking.

Examples of the Lost Vowel:

/kéngdà/ - goes
 /M ká kéngd yè./ - I am not going.

The pitch usually drops on /-gd/.

/M ká kéng yè./ - I did not go.

The pitch drop on /-g/ is less apparent.

In summary then, because of the arrangement of the sounds and the roles that they play in the grammar, Moré major words are composed of a stem syllable and a suffix syllable.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

There are a few syllables consisting only of vowels. Their occurrence is very limited however. All major words, exclusive of words borrowed from other languages, have consonants. Only three particles begin with vowels. These particles are syllables when they begin an utterance. In other environments, they are parts of syllables.

The Three Moré Words that Begin with Vowels:

- /a/ - he, she, him, her, his
- /i/ - you, your (formal)
- /ub/ - they, them, their

Test Yourself:

Divide the following Moré words into syllables by drawing a line at syllable boundaries.

1. /p ó g l g à/ [pó/ɡlɡà]
2. /k é e n g d à/ [kée/ŋɡdà]
3. /A k á k á d m d y è/ [A/ká/ka/dmd/ye]

Functional Classification of Major Words

Nouns and verbs share stems, suffix consonants and some suffix vowels. Therefore the class of a word is not always apparent from its shape in isolation. The classification of major words into 'parts of speech' depends, rather, on the shape of the word in relation to its location in the sentence or in relation to a close derivative.

In this respect Moré shows partial similarities to some of the European languages. Many English words are both nouns and verbs. Some Moré words are also both nouns and verbs in isolation. In context, however, the suffix vowel and the position in the sentence determine the form class.

Examples:

Stems and Suffixes used for Both Nouns and Verbs:

- /daa/ - pertaining to acquisition
- /zá/ - pertaining to distance
- /-ga/ - action (sometimes reversive)
- /daagá/ - market, place of trading activity
- /záɡà/ - moved away

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

Moré Noun-Verb:

/kéě/	- pertaining to movement
/-da/	- habit, process, continuation
/kéěndà ya wóok wùsgò./	- <u>This trip</u> is very long.
/M kéěndà búdòě dád fáã./	- I <u>go</u> to the office every day.

In the Romance languages, one significant determiner or ending can be isolated which will identify nouns; another, which will identify verbs. Moré words, however, can be most efficiently classified by the association of the stem with pairs of suffixes. Thus a word can be identified as a noun when its singular and plural forms are known, and as a verb when its perfective and imperfective forms are known. One of the suffixes may be common to the two classes, but both suffixes together will not be.

Examples:

Pairs of Nouns and Verbs:

/págà/	- woman	/pagá/	- closed
/págbà/	- women	/pagdá/	- closes
/kéěngdà/	- traveller, dancer	/kéěngà/	- went away
/kéěng(d)bà/	- travellers, dancers	/kéěngdà/	- goes away

Test Yourself:

Label the underlined Moré words N for noun or V for verb.

(a) /A <u>kéěngà</u> mé./	___	He went away.	[V]
(b) /A <u>kéěngdà</u> mé./	___	He is going away.	[V]
(c) / <u>Kéěndà</u> ya wóokò./	___	This trip is long.	[N]
(d) / <u>Kéěngdà</u> bée ká./	___	A dancer is here.	[N]
(e) / <u>Kéěngbà</u> bée ká./	___	The dancers are here.	[N]

Inflection of the Suffix Vowel

Of the two criteria for classifying words, form (morphology) and environment (syntax), let us discuss form first. By way of review, nouns and verbs are made up of a stem, one to four suffix consonants, each limiting the meaning of the stem, and a vowel. Three different things happen to this final vowel under different conditions: it can be oral, as in citation form; it can be nasal; or it can disappear. Each of these three events indicates one type of relationship for nouns, and another type of relationship for verbs. The following tables, though not exhaustive, summarize these relationships.

Nouns

1. Oral vowel indicates
 - (a) citation or dictionary form,
 - (b) non-specific noun at end of phrase,
 - (c) specific or demonstrative before end of phrase.
2. Nasal vowel indicates
 - (a) a specific or demonstrative noun at end of phrase,
 - (b) the locative ending.
3. No final vowel indicates
 - (a) first noun of a compound noun,
 - (b) this is the subject; the verb follows,
 - (c) negation.

Examples:

Nouns, final vowel:

1(a)	/záabdè/	evening
1(b)	/Ub lóogdà <u>záabdè</u> ./	They are leaving in the evening.
1(c)	/ǃUb lóogdà <u>záabdà</u> bí?/	Are they leaving <u>this evening</u> ?
2(a)	/Ub lóogdà <u>záabdǎ</u> ./	They are leaving <u>this evening</u> .
2(b)	/A námsdà <u>mobíle</u> ./	She gets tired <u>in a car</u> .
3(a)	/kútù/	iron
	/wéefò/	horse
	/kút wéefò/	bicycle
3(b)	/A Kúkà/	proper name
	/A <u>Kúk</u> lóogdà záabdǎ./	Kuka is leaving this evening.
3(c)	/bumbu/	thing
	/ká <u>búm</u> yé./	<u>nothing</u>

Test Yourself:

Choose the best English translations for the underlined Moré words. All Moré words used below are found in the preceding examples.

(a) /Ub kéengdà <u>záabdǎ</u> ./	They are going (1) any evening, (2) in the evening, (3) this evening.	[3]
(b) /Ub ká kéengd <u>záabdà</u> yé./	They are not going. (1) in the evening, (2) any evening, (3) this evening.	[5]

MORE BASIC COURSE

(c) /Ub kéengdà <u>záabdè</u> ./	They are going (1) in the evening, (2) any evening, (3) this evening.	[1]
(d) /Ub námsdà <u>móbilè</u> ./	(1) They tire the car out. (2) They get tired in the car.	[2]
(e) /Ub ká lóogd <u>záabd</u> yè./	They are not leaving (1) this evening, (2) in the evening, (3) in the next few evenings	[2]

Verbs

There are three types of significant positions of the verb: independent, connected and surrounded.

1. Oral vowel occurs in affirmative questions, statements and commands. (Independent Position)
2. Nasal vowel occurs with the connective /n/ in verb plus verb constructions. (Connected Position)
3. No final vowel occurs when negative markers or subordinate conjunctions surround the phrase. (Surrounded Position)

Examples:

Verbs, final vowel:

1. /Ub lóogdà záabdà./ They are leaving this evening.
2. /Ub dátè n lóogà mé./ They want to leave.

contrast:

- /Ub dátà móbilì./ They want a car.
3. /Ub ká lóogd yè./ They are not leaving.

Test Yourself:

In the Moré sentences below, the verb is missing. Fill it in from the choices given.

- (a) /A _____ kút wéefò./ He wants a bicycle.
- (1) dátà
 - (2) dátè n
 - (3) dát
- [1]

(b)	/A _____ kéengà mé./	He wants to go away.	
	(1) dátà		
	(2) dátě n		
	(3) dát		[2]
(c)	/A ka _____ bùm yè./	He doesn't want anything.	
	(1) dátà		
	(2) dátě n		
	(3) dát		[3]

Syntax (Environment)

Although some words are usually used as nouns and some are usually used as verbs, the fact that a word ends in /-ě/, /-ã/, /-a/, /-e/, or no vowel at all does not identify this word as a noun or a verb. These endings, in relation to the place of occurrence in the sentence give the rest of the necessary information for this classification. The following tables of nominal and verbal environments further elaborate the noun phrase and the verb phrase as they occur within the sentence.

Verbs and Nouns

Either a noun or a verb may be preceded by: (1) a pronoun, (2) a noun, (3) the negative marker. In complete sentences, however, this marker regularly follows the subject and precedes the verb.

Examples:

Words which may precede either a noun or a verb:

(1)	/Ub lóogdà mé./	<u>They</u> are leaving.
	/ub móbilă/	<u>their</u> car
(2)	/Lógtòd lóogà mé./	The <u>doctor</u> left.
	/lógtòd yífidì/	hospital, <u>doctor's</u> house
(3)	/ká bùm yè/	<u>nothing</u>
	/Ub ká lóogd yè./	They are <u>not</u> leaving.

Markers standing between subject and verb:

- (1) the subordinate connective /sǎ/ - if, when
- (2) the relative connective /sě/ - that, which
- (3) the negative marker /ká/ - not, no ...
- (4) any verb ending in a nasal vowel plus /n/, /dátě/ - want, /tǒě/ - can, /nǎă/ - will
- (5) the past tense marker /dá/
- (6) the proximity marker /nă/ plus /n/.

Of the above markers, only (1) and (2) may not occur together. All of the others may occur together in the same sentence.

Examples:

Markers between subject and verb:

(1) /Ub <u>sǎ</u> lóogà mé.../	<u>If (when)</u> they leave...
(2) /Ub téngà, <u>sě</u> yá neede.../	their town, <u>which</u> is pretty...
(3) /Ub <u>ká</u> lóog ye./	They did <u>not</u> leave.
(4) /Ub <u>dátè n</u> lóogà mé./	They <u>want to</u> leave.
(5) /Ub <u>dá</u> lóogà mé./	They had left.
(6) /Ub <u>nǎ n</u> lóogà mé./	They have <u>just</u> left.

Markers occurring together:

/Ub <u>sǎ ká nǎ</u> lóogà mé.../	<u>If</u> they have <u>not yet</u> left...
/Ub <u>dá nǎ n</u> lóogà mé./	They had <u>just</u> left.

There are no adjectives and adverbs in Moré. Some words which must be translated by English adjectives behave just like verbs in Moré; others behave just like nouns. Words which must be translated by English adverbs, behave just like nouns. That is, Moré words are here separated into different classes on the basis of form and location within the sentence.

Examples:

Adjectives and Adverbs:

/A <u>zàdà</u> mé./	It <u>is</u> far away. (verb - to be far)
/Yá <u>súngò</u> ./	That is <u>good</u> .
/A yá <u>súngò</u> ./	It is a <u>good thing</u> .
/pélgà/	<u>white flower</u>
/pélg fúgù/	<u>white</u> item of clothing
/Píndà a <u>dágè</u> n kéengdà táǎsgò./	<u>Formerly</u> , he used to go hunting.
/pínd <u>zliga</u> /	<u>the former</u> place

Test Yourself:

In the following sentences, write S over the subject and V over the main verb. Subject and main verb can be recognized by the words that occur between them.

(1) /Lógtòd ká lóog yè./	S	V
The doctor has not left.	[lógtòd]	[lóog]

MORE BASIC COURSE

(2) /A dá nǎ n wáa mé./	S	V
He had just arrived.	[A]	[wáa]
(3) /A sǎ wa,...../		
When he comes, ...	[A]	[wa]
(4) /Ub ká tóě n tum yé./		
They cannot work.	[Ub]	[tum]

There are, then, two major form classes in Moré: particles and major words. The major-word class has two subdivisions based on endings and environment: verbs and nouns.

Summary of General Characteristics

The student of Moré then has two major mental occupations. (1) He learns major words and tries to understand the component parts. (2) He tries to find the common denominator of stems and suffixes as they occur in different environments. Thus he memorizes some rules and some translations, but he is constantly adapting his impressions to new combinations. The questions which he will often ask himself are 'How does this familiar suffix affect this familiar stem, and how does this familiar stem affect this familiar suffix?' In short, 'What do new relationships do to old ideas?'

Many of the suffix consonants and stems have been isolated and identified in this text. Some work remains to be done in this area, however. Two questions to which the student of Moré might address himself are:

- (1) Can the nasalization of the stem vowel be isolated and defined? Does this nasalization have the same kind of effect as the suffix consonants?
- (2) Similarly is the tone of the stem vowel also definable, thus being the equivalent of a suffix consonant?

The Sounds of Moré: List of Symbols

In the five column chart given below, column I gives the symbols used in this manual; column II gives the letters used in various orthographies; column III gives all the symbols representing all the sounds which comprise one meaningful unit i.e. the phonetics; column IV summarizes this variety in one cover symbol, the phoneme; and column V illustrates the sounds as accurately as possible by giving the nearest American English or French equivalent.

I	II	III	IV	V
<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Orthography</u>	<u>Phonetics</u>	<u>Phoneme</u>	<u>Approximation</u>
p	p	[p]	/p/	spool
t	t	[t]	/t/	stool
k	k	[k]	/k/	school

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

I	II	III	IV	V
<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Orthography</u>	<u>Phonetics</u>	<u>Phoneme</u>	<u>Approximation</u>
k	ky	[ᵀ^h , t^y , k^y , č]	/k/ ¹	simultaneous <u>k</u> and <u>y</u>
b	b	[b]	/b/	<u>b</u> e
d	d, r	[d, r]	/d/ ²	<u>d</u> o, <u>ladder</u>
g	g	[g]	/g/	<u>g</u> o
g	gy	[ᵐ , d^y , g^y , y]	/g/ ¹	simultaneous <u>g</u> and <u>y</u>
g	gh	[Ḡ , g]	/g/ ³	<u>mare</u> (French for ocean)
f	f	[f]	/f/	<u>f</u> ee
s	s, sh	[s, (š)]	/s/ ¹	<u>s</u> ee
h	h	[h]	/h/	<u>h</u> e
v	v	[v]	/v/	<u>v</u> an
z	z	[z]	/z/	<u>z</u> ebra
m	m	[m]	/m/ ¹	<u>m</u> e
n	n	[n, ṇ]	/n/ ⁴	<u>n</u> o, <u>sing</u>
y	y, ny	[y, ṇ , ṽ]	/i/ ⁵	<u>y</u> es, <u>y</u> e with nasal onset, <u>canyon</u>
l	l	[l]	/l/	<u>l</u> et
w, u, o	w, w	[w, ṽ]	/w/ ⁶	<u>w</u> e, <u>lui</u> (French - him)
	ı	[ʔ]	/ / ¹¹	<u>button</u> (when no tongue contact is made)
i	i	[i, ɪ] ¹²	/i/	<u>seat</u> ⁹
e	é	[e, ɪ] ¹²	/e/	<u>bait</u> ⁹
e	è	[ɛ, e]	/e/	<u>bet</u>
	e ⁷	[ə]	/ /	<u>sofa</u>
a	a	[a]	/a/	<u>not</u>
o	o, ao ⁸	[u, o, ɔ] ¹²	/o/	<u>boat</u> ⁹
u	u, ou	[u, u] ¹²	/u/	<u>blue</u> ⁹
ı	î, ĩ, in, ĩ ¹⁰	[ĩ, ɪ]	/ĩ/	<u>lean</u> ¹³
ě	ê, ě, en ě	[ě, ɛ , æ]	/ě/	<u>bain</u> (French - bath)
ă	â, ă, an, ä	[ă]	/ă/	<u>banc</u> (French - bank)
õ	ô, õ, on ö	[õ, ɔ]	/õ/	<u>bon</u> (French - good)

MORE BASIC COURSE

I	II	III	IV	V
<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Orthography</u>	<u>Phonetics</u>	<u>Phoneme</u>	<u>Approximation</u>
ǻ	û, ũ, un, ü	[ǻ, ʊ]	/ǻ/	dune ¹³
.	.		/#/	end of sentence ¹⁴
,	,		/ /	pause, pitch level or slight rise.
ǻ...?	?	/ /	/ /	last vowel has descending pitch.

A number of special symbols are also used as explained below:

- () enclosed Moré elements may or may not occur.
- () enclosed English elements are literal translations of the Moré.
- / / In the chart above, this symbol means Moré phonemics; elsewhere, it means the Moré symbolization used in the text when inserted in an otherwise English selection.
- [] enclosed English elements are words not occurring in the Moré but needed for accuracy of translation or clarity in English.

Notes

0.1 The phonemes /k/, /g/, /m/ and /n/ have postpalatal or prevelar allophones [ɟ], [j], [my] and [ɲ] respectively before front vowels. Specifically, when preceding /i/, /e/, /ɪ/ and /ẽ/, /k/ is pronounced something like the fricative 'k' of 'keep' plus a simultaneous 'y'. /g/ is something like the fricative 'g' of 'geese' plus a simultaneous 'y'. /m/ is pronounced like the first consonant in 'mean' plus a simultaneous 'y'. /n/ is pronounced like the first consonant in 'yeah' with 'n' onset, e.g. *'nyeah!'. Some speakers also have /š/, the first sound of 'she', as a variation of /s/ before front vowels.

0.2 The letter /d/ represents the sounds, [d] as in 'do' and [r] as in 'ladder'. In many environments, one variant or the other is used at random, both being interpreted as the same meaningful sound. Some rules, however, may be stated.

- (1) /d/ represents the sound [r]
 - (a) before /i/ and /e/. Examples: [ríibò] - food, [sórè] - road
 - (b) when this consonant is the first of a consonant cluster.
Example: [karmdá] - learns.
- (2) /d/ represents the sound [d]
 - (a) before /o/ and /u/. Examples: /dúndà/ - today, /doogó/ - house

(b) when this consonant is not the first of a consonant cluster. Example: [fǎǎgdà] - saves.

(3) Free variation occurs initially before /-a/ and medially when /d/ is the only consonant. Examples: [ráwà] or [dàwà] - man, [tadá] or [tará] - has, have.

0.3 The phoneme, /g/ sounds like [g] in some environments, like [j] in others and like [ʒ] in still others.

/g/ sounds like [g]

(a) after /i/ and /u/: [bífigà] - child, [zugú] - head,

(b) before /o/ and /u/: [gómà] - spoke, [gúlà] - grew up

(c) after a nasal consonant: [bángà] - found out.

/g/ sound like [j] or [ʃ]

(d) before /i/ or /e/: [gésà] - saw

/g/ sounds like [ʒ] everywhere else:

(e) [pooʒlʒá] - wounded

0.4 /n/ sounds like [ŋ], the last sound in 'sing' before the velar consonants /k/ and /g/: [kángà] - 'arm'. The sound that is sometimes written as a long nasalized vowel before a velar consonant is a vowel plus [ŋ]: /káǎngà/ and /kángà/ are the same word [kángà] - 'arm'.

0.5 /i/ sounds like [y] when it is combined with an oral vowel: [yáè] - 'where', written /yáè/, [sáyà] - 'ended', written /sáyà/, when /i/ is combined with a nasal vowel, it sounds like [ɲ]: /ɲǎmbà/ - 'you'. This is written /yǎmbà/. See also Note 0.1.

0.6 The sound /w/ is written as /o/ or /u/ to show relationships among words and to preserve the stem in one, unaltered form. The summary symbol /w/ stands for the sounds [w] and [ɥ], the semivowel of the French 'lui'. /w/ sounds like [ɥ] in non-initial position before /i/ and /e/: [kɥisa] - went home. This is written /kúisà/. /w/ sounds like [w] everywhere else: [wótò] - how.

Orthography: /w/ is written as /w/ in initial position. /w/ is written as /o/ or /u/ elsewhere to show derivation: /kó/ - selling, /koada/, [kwádà] - merchant.

0.7 Between any two consonants there is potential vocalization. This results in a vowel similar to the second vowel of 'sofa'. Technically it is called 'shwa', [ə]. This vocalization is sometimes written as /e/. This manual does not write it at all.

0.8 A meaningful distinction between [o] and [ɔ] is reported for some speakers in Ouagadougou. When this distinction is included in the orthography, one sound is written as /o/; the other as /ao/. The speaker used as a model for this manual did not distinguish [o] from [ɔ] significantly. Therefore, this manual recognizes only one significant sound /o/ which has a range from [ɔ] to [ʊ].

0.9 There is no *[-y] or *[-w] offglide on Moré vowels. The Moré vowels /i/ and /e/ are like the English vowels in the words 'seat' and 'bait' if the tongue rise to [-y] is eliminated. Likewise, the Moré vowels /o/ and /u/ are like the English vowels of 'boat' and 'blue' but without the glide to [-w].

There are vowel combinations with [-y] and [-w] in Moré. In these cases the semivowels form part of a diphthong. They are not an essential part of one vowel, but rather one part of two vowels appearing together.

0.10 Not all orthographies of Moré indicate nasalized vowels. This manual has attempted to do so. Generally '˜' is written over a nasalized vowel. All vowels followed by nasal consonants, however, are automatically nasalized. This automatic nasalization is not always indicated.

0.11 Some speakers of Moré have a glottal stop [ʔ] initially in words borrowed from Arabic. For the speaker who helped prepare this manual, however, these words begin with a vowel.

0.12 The sounds [ʊ], the first vowel in 'pudding', and [ɪ], the vowel in 'sing', present problems. At present we are not certain whether [ʊ] is a variant of /o/ or /u/, nor whether [ɪ] is a variant of /i/ or /e/. There is evidence for all four suppositions.

These doubts are based on the characteristics of Moré as described in the previous pages: (a) the stem system and (b) the allophones of the consonants.

- (a) If it is true that a stem is composed of a consonant and one unalterable vowel, then some stem vowels have been misspelled in this text. Some words which obviously have the same stem have been written with two different stem vowels.
- (b) /u/ and /i/ are always followed by the [g] allophone of /g/, but never by the [ʁ] allophone.

Examples:

Stems which have been written in two ways:

- /pú/ ~ /pó/ - having to do with interior
- /púgà/ - stomach

/póoglgà/ - wounded, cut
 /wí/ ~ /wě/ - sun, Almighty Power
 /wín tòogó/ - noon
 /wénà/ - God

Some of these same words written phonetically:

[púǎ] [wín toogó] [wínà]

0.13 English vowels followed by /n/ or /m/ have something in common with the Moré nasalized vowels. The vowel in the English words 'lean' and the 'dune' have nasal off-glides. The Moré vowels /ĩ/ and /ũ/ are nasalized throughout.

Sounds of Moré: Pitch Contour

The pitch contour of any Moré sentence is the resultant of two forces: tone and intonation. As previously stated, Moré stems have tones which influence the suffix vowels. A stem, in citation form, is either high or low. If it is high, it is followed by a low suffix. If it is low, it is followed by a high suffix. This is the basic pattern. It varies somewhat in context. The interplay of stems and suffixes within phrases characterizes the pitch contour of Moré.

Examples:

high tone root: /pá/ - addition, acquisition
 low tone root: /pa/ - opening
 high tone root plus suffix: /págà/ - woman
 low tone root plus suffix: /pagá/ - opened

Characteristics of the Two Tones

Central to the discussion of the behavior of tones in context is the description of the two tones themselves. High and low are, of course, relative terms. They can only be distinguished as they can be contrasted. Low tone contrasts with high tone in two environments:

1. in citation form
2. after a preceding high

Low tone and high tone do not contrast after a preceding low. They are both equally high in this environment.

Examples:

low and high tone contrasted:

1. /págà/ - wife	2. /yám págà/ - your wife
/pagá/ - closed	/yám pagá me./ - You closed.

low and high tone without contrast:

- /a págà/ - his wife
/a págà mé./ - He closed.

The previous description leads to the conclusion that the melody of Moré is a constant alternation of high and low. This is true. Yet there are two further considerations.

1. what is the behaviour of the word in context?
2. what effect does vowel loss have on the pitch contour?

In answer to the first question, the sequence, high plus high is relatively rare. High stems are regularly followed by low suffixes. Low stems are regularly followed by high suffixes unless another major word follows. When another major word follows, both the stem and the suffix of the first word are low, and the following major word is always high-low. Lows are always followed by a high. Only a high particle is followed by another high. The conclusion to be drawn from this explanation is the same as that cited above: The melody of Moré is a constant alternation of high and low, with some lows and some highs stretching over two syllables.

Examples:

Low roots in isolation and in context:

- /tumdá/ - working
/Yám tumda mé./ - You are working.
/Yám tumda wúsgò./ - You work a lot.
/A tumdà mé./ - He is working.
/A dátè n tumdà mé./ - He wants to work.

Mid Tone or Down Step

Even under conditions of vowel loss, the sequence, high plus high, is rare. It does not occur, contrary to expectation, on a sequence containing two high stems where the suffix vowel on the first stem (which is, of course, low in pitch) has been lost. The lost low pitch still makes its effect felt either as a low pitch on the now vowelless voiced suffix consonants on the first stem or as a slight lowering of the pitch of the following stem. This slight drop in pitch is the 'mid tone'. This 'mid tone' is thus a predictable variant of high stem tone lowered by the influence of lost low pitch on the preceding suffix syllable.

A sequence of two equally high pitches occurs only in the sequence high particle plus high stem. All other sequences of two high tones with no low pitch intervening will have the 'mid tone' variant of high on the second syllable.

Examples:

Down Step:

- /yámà/ - you /gěsà/ - saw
/Yám gěsà mé./ - You saw.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

/kéengdà/ - go /tǎǎsgò/ - hunting
/Ub sǎ kéengd tǎǎsgò.../ - If they go hunting...
[Ub sǎ kéengd tǎǎsgò...] - If they go hunting...

High plus high:

/M kéengdà né móbilì./ - I am going by car.

Test Yourself:

1. Mark the pitch on the second syllable of the following words for possible use in a dictionary. /' - high, /\ - low and /' - mid. An initial unmarked vowel is low.

pága	[à]
paga	[á]
deemda	[á]
gésa	[à]
wuma	[á]

2. Mark the contextual pitches in the sentences below for the words cited between slash lines.

/tumdá/	A tumda mé.	[túmdà]
	He is working.	
/tumdá/	Yám tumda mé.	[tumda]
	You are working.	
/yámbà, góm dà/	Yam gomda mé.	[Yám góm dà]
	You are speaking.	
/góm dà/	A gomda mé.	[góm dà]
	He is speaking.	

Symbols for Tones and Pitches

The tones and pitches described above are written in this manual in the following manner:

1. high /' /
2. mid /' /
3. low /\ /

These marks are not used over every syllable, however. Unmarked initial syllables are low. Unmarked syllables after low are low. Unmarked syllables after high or mid are high. In other words, initial high and mid are marked and, after the first vowel, only changes of significant pitch are marked. Word boundaries are indicated by spaces between words. The tone marking system begins anew after each space.

Intonation Patterns

Diagram one: Range of high to low pitch in one sentence.

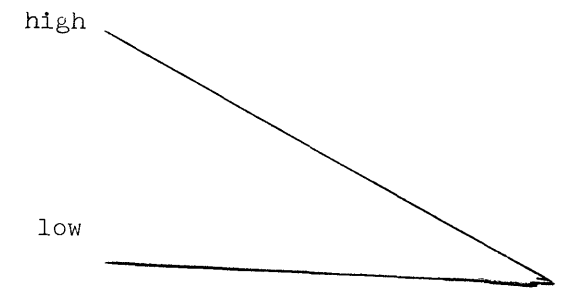
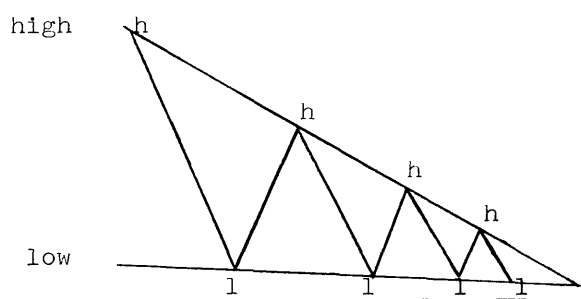


Diagram two: Low and high in alternation.



- (1) end of affirmative statement: last vowel drops to low level.
- (2) end of question which has no question word: last vowel lengthened with accompanying downward glide.
- (3) end of negative statement: last two words are low and level.
- (4) non final item of a series: last vowel rises slightly.

- (1) /A kéengdà mé./ He is leaving.
 — — — — —
- (2) /ɛA kéengdà mé?/ Is he leaving?
 — — — — —
- (3) /A ká kéengd zaabd yè./ He is not leaving in the evening.
 — — — — —
- (4) /M gómɔ̀dà Móde, Bámbadandè, la Silmiidi./ I speak Moré, Bambara,
 — — — — — and Fula.

Many foreign words, especially of French origin, are used in Moré. Whereas French and English words have characteristic stress in their original environments, they have characteristic pitch when transferred to a Moré utterance. The first syllable, of course, is the most important since it is interpreted to be the Moré stem syllable. Therefore, an initial stressed syllable is interpreted as high tone, and an initial weak syllable is interpreted as Moré low tone. Examples: The French capital, 'Paris', is in Moré /Paɖi/. The United States' capital, 'Washington', is in Moré, /Wásɪnton/. An effort is generally made, however, to pronounce foreign words as they occur in the source language.

There is no official or standard orthography for Moré. Various missionaries have used a number of different orthographies. In 1959 a meeting of several missionary groups and representatives of L'Institut Français d'Afrique Norie was held for the purpose of establishing orthographies for a number of African languages. Suggestions were put forward to create writing systems based on the symbols of the standard French typewriter keyboard. It was thought that this inventory of symbols could easily be adapted to a number of West African languages. The system used in this manual follows, for the most part, the guidelines laid down at this conference.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

In the same word:

1. single short vowel occurs as well as long or double vowel e.g. /kéngà/ ~ /kéengà/ - went,
2. nasalized vowel occurs as well as vowel plus /N/. e.g. /téndà/~ /tédà/ - think,
3. used as subject, final vowel occurs as well as no final vowel. e.g., /Dáwà Kámpaodè kéngà mé/~ /Dáwà Kámpaod kéngà mé/ - Mr. Campaode went away.
4. used as the first element of a compound, a space sometimes occurs and sometimes does not occur between it and the following word. e.g. /kút wéefò/~ /kútwéefò/ - bicycle.

Other inconsistencies:

5. Across word boundaries, in vowel plus vowel environments, one vowel is sometimes dropped and sometimes written. e.g. /ti a/ /t a/ - that he..
6. The verbal connective /n/ is written /m/ before bilabial consonants only. The pronoun /m/, however, is always written /m/.
7. The same word is written with the stem vowel /e/ in some places and the stem vowel /i/ in others. The same inconsistencies exist for the stem vowels /o/ and /u/.
8. Tones are marked with some inconsistency.

THE ORGANIZATION OF THIS MANUAL

This manual is organized into three sections, called cycles. Cycle One, Units One through Fifteen, is an introduction to the language; Cycle Two, Units Sixteen through Thirty-seven, is the detailed study of the structure, and Cycle Three is listening and conversation practice. Units One through Fifteen have the following format:

1. Basic Sentences, which are made up of set, unchanging conversations. They are mostly unalterable.
2. General Notes on structure and linguistic custom. They are usually not related to the drills.
3. Drills which accentuate the basic sentences. They call attention to the sounds and structures and they give added practice in the use of set expressions.

Units Sixteen through Thirty-seven are also composed of these three sections, but with the following differences:

1. The basic sentences are examples of informative conversation. Therefore they illustrate points of structure.
2. There are general notes on the basic sentences as in Cycle One.

3. The drills are presented in series. Each series is designed to illustrate a point, first of all, and then to guide the student gradually to the independent use of this point. A typical series might contain the following items: (a) repetition, (b) explanation, (c) substitution, (d) response, (e) transformation response, (f) comprehension drill.

Units Thirty-eight through Forty-eight are comprehension units, organized by topics.

In all three cycles each explanation and each drill has a number. These numbers are used in the table of contents and the index. General notes are indicated by the unit number and a letter, e.g. 3A - The Verb System; drill series are indicated by the unit number, a decimal point, and another number, e.g. 18.1 - Negation. Separate sections within a series are indicated by letters, e.g. 18.1A - Repetition. Comprehension drills also are indicated by the unit number, a decimal point and another number.

Suggestions for the Use of this Manual

This manual purports to be a scientific study of the Moré language. All notes are assumed to be scientific statements; all dialogues and exercises, evidence. A scientific statement, however, is not an ultimate truth but a hypothesis to be tested. It is the student's job, therefore, to master the materials here presented so that he can effectively test the hypotheses.

Although each student will develop his own methods of study, a few suggestions accompanied by more specific descriptions of the term 'mastery' might prove to be useful. The material in this course is based on spoken Moré. A reading knowledge of it is useful only as a crutch to the spoken language. The student's goal, then, is to understand and be able to respond to sequences of the language at conversation speed. To achieve this goal it is wise to

- (1) memorize the basic sentences, and
- (2) be able to recite them as a conversation with a native speaker, each taking one of the roles of the dialogue;
- (3) respond, without hesitation, to the drills. 'No hesitation' means a response almost as fast as a native speaker's or, using the tapes, a correct response in the pause provided without stopping the machine; and
- (4) achieve understanding of the short comprehension drill at the end of every unit without the need for repetition.

The material of the course is limited; mastery can approach the optimum outlined above.

We believe that the description in this manual is scientifically accurate. It is a synthesis, however, of many individual ideas. Each example of Moré structure gives an analyst (the student) an impression about usage. A descriptive note is a composite of all the relevant grammatical impressions within the analyst's experience. Its purpose is to shorten the process of impressionistic synthesis for the student. It cannot substitute for this process. Thus, when the student's idea about any particular descriptive note comes into conflict

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

with the data, his job is to reconcile them to each other. A complete rejection of either the description or the data hinders the learning process. The student's job, therefore, is a cultivation of certain thought processes: awareness of the relationships between items and receptivity to new data. Successful thinking about relationships and data is produced by (1) mastery of the available material and (2) flexibility in the comprehension of structure.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

INTRODUCTION TO CYCLE ONE

UNITS 1 - 15

A general notion about a language need not be entirely intellectual. One can have an impression of the language in the ear and the speech muscles as well. An introduction to a language is a brief exposure to all of it: the grammar, sound system and social usage - by way of all the relevant abilities: understanding, hearing, and speaking.

The first fifteen units of this course are designed to be a balanced introduction to the Moré language. The notes are a survey of socially correct greetings and forms of address as well as of the grammar and phonology.

The dialogues, drills and comprehension exercises offer the practical examples of the sounds, grammar and usage. The drills are illustrations of some of the important sound distinctions. The comprehension drills are designed to develop a little bit of flexibility in the ears and the mind. They consist of the dialogue material slightly varied.

By the end of these fifteen units, it is hoped that the student of Moré

1. will have an idea about and an experience with the major characteristics of the language,
2. will be able to use the most common greetings and expressions of courtesy, and
3. will have a few expressions pertaining to basic tourist needs at his disposal.

UNIT 1

Basic Sentences-DÁWA-MAN-

né	with, and
i	you, your
yíbeogò, -tò, -dò	morning
Né i yíbeogò.	Good morning. (sunrise until 11:00 a.m.)
ya	be, exist, become
laafí	peace, tranquility, health
¿I yíbeog ya laafí?	How are you this morning? (Your morning is in peace?)

-PÁGA-WOMAN-

balá	only, just
Laafí balá.	Just fine.
la	and, and also, but
yámbà	you, your
yé	self
¿La yám yé?	And you? (And yourself?)

-DÁWA-

Laafí balá.	Just fine.

USEFUL PHRASES

Né i wíntoogo.	Good morning/afternoon. (11:00 a.m. until 1:00 p.m.)
Né i zaábdè.	Good afternoon. (1:00 p.m. until sundown)
Né i yúngò.	Good evening. (after sundown)
¿I wíntoog yá laafí?	How are you this noon?
¿I zaábd ya laafí?	How are you this afternoon?
¿I yúng ya laafí?	How are you this evening?

GENERAL NOTES

1A Greetings.

To be able to use Moré greetings, one has to know both the grammatical and social situations. Greetings often take five, ten, or more minutes, asking about various members of the family. Often mention is made in the greetings of what the persons being addressed are doing, e.g., one might say something like, 'Hello to you people sitting there talking'. Various pronouns and titles of respect are used according to the persons involved. However, a fairly small number of much simpler greetings will take care of the needs of a foreigner quite adequately.

1B Pronouns

Moré pronouns are somewhat different from English pronouns. Each Moré pronoun has three different forms. These forms can be conveniently described as short, medium and long.

<u>Person</u>	<u>Singular Forms</u>			<u>Plural Forms</u>		
	<u>short</u>	<u>medium</u>	<u>long</u>	<u>short</u>	<u>medium</u>	<u>long</u>
1st	m	mam/mǎ		(i)d	tond	tóndò
2nd	f	fo	fom	i	yǎm/yǎ	yǎmbà
3rd	a	yén	yéndà	(u)b	bám	bámbà

The parenthesis of /(i)d/ and /(u)b/ above mean that these pronouns sometimes occur with the vowel and sometimes without it.

In terms of general meaning, Moré pronouns are classified in two dimensions: (1) number; that is singular and plural and (2) person; that is first, second and third. The first person refers to the speaker (I, me, my); the second person refers to the person addressed (you, your); and the third person refers to people and things talked about (he, she, it, they). This much is familiar from English and European languages, but there are other complications. These have to do with the fact that for each person and number, there are three different pronominal forms which do not correspond with pronominal forms in European languages.

All three forms of the pronoun are more or less identical in meaning. The selection of the short, medium or long form of a pronoun is describable on the basis of two further dimensions: stylistic and social. The stylistic dimension has to do with degree of emphasis; the social dimension, with social prominence and degree of familiarity.

1C Pronouns, the Stylistic Dimension.

Short and medium forms are grammatically connected to the word which immediately follows them. They are subjects and possessive pronouns. Medium and long forms are grammatically connected to the word which immediately precedes them. They are objects of verbs and prepositions.

/mam gómɔda mé/	<u>I</u> speak
/ub zoa/	<u>their</u> friend
/né tónd/	with <u>us</u>
/ya yǎmbà/	it is (really) <u>you</u>

The shorter form in both cases is unemphatic; the longer form is emphatic. Before verbs and nouns the medium form is emphatic; after verbs and prepositions the medium form is unemphatic. In other words, to emphasize a pronoun, one moves up one degree in pronominal length: from short to medium in the case of subjects and adjectives, and from medium to long in the case of objects.

/né tónd/	with us
/né tóndò/	with us indeed
/m gómɔla mé/	I am speaking
/mam gómɔda mé/	I am the one who is speaking

A given pronoun is emphasized only once in one continuous stretch of speech.

/iYám waa né i pág bí?/	Did you come with your wife?

The above stretch of speech begins with an emphatic form and continues with an unemphatic form. We do not say: */iYám waa ne yám pág bí?/.

The medium forms /mam/, /bam/, /yén/ and /yám/ lose their consonants and end in nasal vowels in phrase final position.

/Mam gomda né yǎ./	I am talking to you.

As we have seen in the above explanation, there is no equivalent in Moré of the case differentiation common to European languages. There is no nominative, no possessive, no objective, no dative, no accusative or other case ending. The grammatical relationship which these endings express in other languages are expressed in Moré by the location of the pronoun in the sentence: A pronoun before a noun expresses possession. A pronoun before a verb is the subject of the verb. A pronoun (not followed by a noun) following a preposition is the object of the preposition. A pronoun following a verb is the object of the verb. A verb can have only one object. Therefore the distinction of 'direct' and 'indirect' object, so important from the point of view of a European

language, is as much a function of the verb as of the pronoun. (See Unit 20).

1D Pronouns: The Social Dimension

The selection of singular vs. plural pronouns in any conversation indicates the social relationship the speakers have with one another. Is one of higher social standing than the rest? Are they close friends? Is there a significant difference in age? etc. All of these social questions fall into three categories: the familiar, the polite, and the honorific.

All pronouns, singular and plural, are used in the 'familiar' situation. All pronouns, except the second person singular /f, fo, fom/, are used in polite situations. In polite situations /i, yám, yámbà/ take over the singular and plural uses of 'you'. In honorific situations, only the plural pronouns are used.

The student has probably come into contact with a familiar-polite distinction previously in one of the European languages. The familiar-polite distinction in Moré resembles that of some other languages in that (1) it is expressed in the second person of the pronoun and (2) it is an indication of socially organized relationships. The following rules deal with the use /f, fo, fom/ in the singular and the use of only /i, yám, yámbà/ for both singular and plural. One must use:

The Familiar

1. with one's offspring,
2. with younger siblings and most other younger members of the family,
3. with one's wife,
4. with very good friends,
5. with any child of less than seven or eight years of age except a chief's child.

The Polite

1. with older members of the family,
2. with older siblings and parents' siblings even though they may be younger than the speaker,
3. with one's husband,
4. with acquaintances,
5. with strangers.

Since honorifics do not permit the use of the singular pronouns, they are similar to the 'royal we', adding also a 'royal they'. Honorifics are used when a chief, a member of his family or another government official is present. At such a time, everyone uses honorifics even though intimates may also be included in the conversation. The 'honored' person may drop the use of honorific pronouns after the initial greetings. The 'ordinary' person, however, continues to use honorifics until invited to do otherwise by the official.

Official: /ɿYám waa láafi?/	Did <u>you</u> arrive in peace?
Ordinary man: /Ngée, <u>tond</u> waa láafi./	Yes, <u>I</u> arrived in peace.
/ɿYám yáo waa láafi?/	Did <u>your</u> brother have a good trip?
Official: /Ngée, <u>ub</u> waa láafi./	Yes, <u>he</u> arrived well.
Ordinary man: /ɿLa yám yě?/	And you?
Official: /M waa láafi./	Fine, thank you.

Practice in the socially correct use of pronouns can be found in Unit 29.

1E Elision of Word-Final Vowels

All native Moré nouns and verbs are two syllables long. They are composed of one consonant plus vowel(s) and a second consonant or consonant group plus a vowel. This second vowel always occurs at the end of a sentence. It may be dropped, however, in the middle. Some places where it is dropped are: (1) before the verb /ya/, (2) after the first noun in a noun-noun construction (3) before interrogative words.

(1) /yíbeogo/	/ɿI yíbeog ya laafi?/
(2) /kútù/ /wéefò/	/kút wéefò/ - bicycle
(3) /ɿA gómɔd Mod bí?/	Does he speak Moré?

1F Instructions for Use of 1.1A and 1.1B Substitution Drills

Practice: Familiarization with greetings.

Directions: The instructor reads the first sentence of each drill. The student repeats. The instructor then reads the next item. The student fits this word into the previous sentence.

1.1A Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Né i yíbeogò.	Né i yíbeogò.
zaábdè.	Né i zaábdè.
yúngò.	Né i yúngò.
wíntoogo.	Né i wíntoogo.

1.1B Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
ɿI yíbeog ya laafí?	ɿI yíbeog ya laafí?
zaábdè	ɿI záabd ya laafí?
yúngò	ɿI yúng ya laafí?
wíntoogo	ɿI wíntoog yá laafí?

UNIT 2

Basic Sentences

	-Dáwa Sékù-	
yeelá, -bá		welcome, greetings
dáwa, -pá		man, male, Mister
Dáwa Tembila		Mr. Tembila
I yeelbá, Dáwa Tembila.		Welcome, Mr. Tembila.
	-Dáwa Tembila-	
naaá, -bá		acceptance, approval
Naabá.		Thank you. ((I) accept (your greetings.))
	-Dáwa Sékù-	
waa		arrived, came
Yám waa mé		you arrived
¿Yám waa láafi?		How was your trip?
	-Dáwa Tembila-	
Laafí balá.		Just fine.
bee		be located at; be in a certain condition; exist
¿La laafí bee yámbà?		And how are <u>you</u> ?
	-Dáwa Sékù-	
Laafí balá.		Fine, thank you.
	-Dáwa Tembila-	
yíidì, -yà		house, compound
yíiddàmbá		family, household
fǎǎ		all, every, entire
¿Yíiddàm fǎǎ?		How's all the family?
	-Dáwa Sékù-	
Id fǎǎ ya láafi balá.		We are all fine.

USEFUL PHRASES

I yeelbá.	Welcome, Sir/Madam
I yeelá.	Welcome.
I bielbá.	Welcome, Sir/Madam
I bielá.	Welcome.
Naabá.	Thank you, Sir/Madam
Naaá.	Thank you.
Saambá.	Thank you, Sir/Madam
Mbá.	Thank you.
¿Laafí bee yǎmbà?	How are <u>you</u> ?
¿Laafí bee yǎm?	How are you?
¿I yíiddàm yá laafí?	How is the family?
¿I zakdám ya láafi?	How is the family?

NEW WORDS

yíidì, -yà	house, compound
yíiddàmbá	family, members of a household
zaká, -sé	house, quarters, apartment
zakdamba	family, members of a household

GENERAL NOTES

2A Welcoming Greetings: Informal/Polite.

FAMILIAR

I yeelá.
Naaá.
Áíí.

POLITE

I yeelbá.
Naabá.
Áíí.

The familiar forms are used only between persons on intimate terms, i.e., /I yeelá/, 'Welcome!', and the response /Naaá/, would be used only by or for those persons described in Note 1D as using familiar pronouns with each other. Other persons use the formal forms /I yeelbá/ and the response /Naabá/, as in the dialogue. Only men use the responses /Naaá/ and /Naabá/. Women use /Áíí/ as the response to both /I yeelá/ and /I yeelbá/.

2B Regional Variations of the Welcoming Greeting.

FAMILIAR

I bielá,

Mbá.

POLITE

I bielbá.

Saambá.

There are varieties in the welcoming greetings in various areas. East of Ouagadougou, /I bielbá/ and /I bielá/ are used with the same meanings as /I yeelbá/ and /I yeelá/. The responses, however, are just like those of Ouagadougou. West of Ouagadougou /Saambá/ and /Mbá/ are used by both men and women as responses to /I yeelbá/ and /I yeelá/ respectively. Only the Ouagadougou usage will appear in this course hereafter.

2C Greetings: Other Members of the Family.

¿Yíiddàm fáã?

¿Yíiddàm yá laafí?

After asking concerning the health of the person to whom he is talking, a stranger would not ask about particular members of the family but only concerning the family in general, e.g., /¿Yíiddàm fáã?/, 'And all the family?', or /¿Yíiddàm yá laafí?/, 'How is the family?'

Unless you really know the person to whom you are speaking very well, you would not ask concerning the health of his or her spouse. Persons who have grown up together might ask /¿F pagá yá laafí?/, 'How is your wife?', or /¿F sidá yá laafí?/, 'How is your husband?' To a brother, especially a younger brother, one would say /¿M pág yá laafí?/, 'How is your (sic) wife?' To an older brother or a long-time friend, in order to be polite, one would say /¿Tónd pagá ya laafí?/, 'How is your (sic) wife?' If you knew a person quite well, you could say, /¿I pága yá laafí?/ or /¿Madám ya laafí?/, 'How is your wife?' The latter is preferable.

2D ¿Yám waa láafi?

/¿Yám waa láafi?/ asks not only, 'How was your trip?', 'Did you have any trouble while travelling?', but also 'Did you arrive all right?', 'Are you feeling all right now that you have arrived?'

2E Collective Plural: /-damba/

Yíiddàmbá

Zakdámba

In addition to forming the plural of a class of nouns as explained in the introduction, /-damba/ also forms a collective plural with both the singular and plural of many nouns with the meaning, 'belonging to', 'members of', e.g., /yíiddàmbá/, 'family', i.e., 'those belonging to the house(hold)', 'members of the house(hold)'.

2F Obligatory /mé/ after verbs.

Yám waa mé.

It is very rare for a verb to end a sentence. Except for certain special constructions, the indefinite adverb /mé/, 'somewhere', occurs after a verb if there is no object, complement, or adverb, e.g., /Yám waa mé/, 'You arrived.'

UNIT 3

Seku and Tembila continue their conversation.

-Dáwa Sékù-

sódè, -yà	road, way, voyage
tugá	go to do, go get, go for
n, m	and (see Note 3B)
yi	was
néede	well, good, beautiful
¿Yám sod tugó n yi néede?	How was your trip? (Your trip went and was well?)

-Dáwa Tembila-

ngée, nyée	yes
wúsgo	much, many, very
Ngée, a tógó n yi néed wúsgo.	It went very well.

-Dáwa Sékù-

Ámedikà	America, U.S.A.
Ámedikdàmbá	Americans
¿Ámedikdàm fǎǎ ya láafi?	How is everybody in America?

-Dáwa Tembila-

Ub fǎǎ ya láafi balá.	They are all fine.

USEFUL PHRASES

A wáa Wágdùgě.	He came to Ouagadougou.
	He has come to Ouagadougou.
	He arrived in Ouagadougou.
	He has arrived in Ouagadougou.
A yíi Wágdùgě.	He came from Ouagadougou.
	He has come from Ouagadougou.
	He left (from) Ouagadougou.
	He has left (from) Ouagadougou.
A bée Wágdùgě.	He is at Ouagadougou.
	It is located in Ouagadougou.
A wǎě n la Bóboě.	He came to Bobo.
	He has arrived in Bobo.

A yíí n la Bóboě.

He left Bobo.

He has left from Bobo.

A béě n la Boboě.

He was at Bobo.

NEW WORDS

yíí

to be/come from; come back from;
become, get

Wagdúgò

Ouagadougou

Bobó

Bobo-Dioulasso

la

to be, exist, be the 'truth', be
the case that.....

3A The Moré Verb System

Moré has three types of verb constructions: (1) the single verb, (2) the verb plus verb construction and (3) the marker plus verb construction.

(1) The Single Verb

The single verb has the same general structure as the noun, that is the stem + additional consonant + final vowel. Verbs of action must indicate completion or incompletion of action. Their forms are:

stem + a

e.g. /goma/ - spoke

stem + d + a

e.g. /gomda/ - speaking

The verb form, stem + /a/, will be called perfective; the form, stem + d + a, will be called imperfective. The distinction of perfective versus imperfective action will be called aspect.

As of this writing, no exceptions have been found to this rule of the Moré verb system. Some action verbs, however, seem to be monosyllables in the perfective. These verbs, however, add /-ta/ instead of /-da/ to form the imperfective. The stems of these verbs end in /-d/ but this /-d/ is dropped in the perfective to avoid confusion.

/waa/ - arrived

/wata/ - arriving

/yí/ - left

/yita/ - leaving

Some verbs, like having and being, are not action verbs. Thus the question of completed or incompleted action is not applicable. These verbs do not have the option of adding or subtracting a /-d/. They are not marked for aspect; they have one constant form.

/tada/ - have

/yaa/ - be

*/ta/ and */yada/ do not exist.

There are two additional possible forms of the single verb:

stem + s + aspect

stem + g + aspect

/-s-/ indicates that a verb has an object; /-g/ indicates that the action is reversed.

/A kě mé./

- He entered.

/A kěsà válizdàmbá./

- He put the suitcases inside.

/A kěngà Bóbò./

- He went (away) to Bobo.

/A kěngdà mé./

- He is going away.

/A kěsdà válizdàmbá vwatúdè./

- He is putting the suitcases in the car.

(2) The Verb + Verb Construction

The verb plus verb construction involves nasalizing the final vowel of the first verb and adding the verbal connective /n/. The form is the following:

Single verb $\tilde{v}$ + n + Single verb

/A datě n goma me./ - I want to speak.

/A datě n gomda me./ - I want to continue speaking.

As will be seen later, many verbs, in fact almost all of them, can stand in the position of the first verb in a verb plus verb construction. Some of the most common ones, however, are /datě/ - want to, /nǎǎ/ - will, and /toě/ - can.

These constructions usually consist of two, occasionally three verbs, each being separated from the following verb by a nasal vowel and /n/.

/A toě n gómà mǒǒdè./ - He can speak Moré.

/A dátě n gómà mǒǒdè./ - He wants to speak Moré.

(3) Marker + Verb Construction

There are two verb markers in Moré: /da/ - past time and /nã/ proximity. These markers are not verbs; they cannot be used as single verbs, and they cannot be negated. Markers occur before the negator /ka/; verbs occur after the negator.

/A ká nã n gómà mé./ - He will not speak.

/A nã ká góm ye./ - He has not yet spoken.

(4) Occurrence of Verbal Constructions

The rich variety of Moré verbal expression is achieved by the co-occurrence of forms and construction. Roughly speaking, a Moré verbal stem may be preceded by two things and followed by two things. A stem may be followed by /s/ or /g/ and the aspect marker.

/M zám̥sda m̥óòdè./ - I am learning Moré.

/A kén̥gdà Bób̥dè./ - He is going to Bobo.

A stem may be preceded by another stem, the past tense marker and another stem, or the past tense and the proximity marker, or any one of the above items occurring singly.

/A nã gómà mé./ - He has just spoken.

/A dá nã gómà mé./ - He had just spoken.

/A dá to̥ n gómà mé./ - He was able to speak.

/A dá dát̥ n gómà mé./ - He wanted to speak.

/A nã n gómà mé./ - He will continue speaking.

This explanation is, of course, a thumbnail sketch. The details are presented throughout the course, specifically in the following units:

Perfective vs. Imperfective	- Units 17, 18, 19
Stative verbs like /yaa/ and /tada/	- Units 20, 21, 22, 26
Verb plus Verb Constructions	- Units 7, 20, 23, 26, 27
The past tense marker /dá/	- Units 23, 24, 25
The proximity marker /nã/	- Unit 8
The reversive consonant /-g-/	- Unit 23

It is hoped that the limitations of our English translations will become clear to the student after he has studied these units.

This study, hopefully, will lead to a comprehension of each Moré verbal unit within a context. Each item, which has been given many translations and much explanation, will be understood to have really one function within Moré.

3B Connective /n/.

Yám sod tugó n yi néede?

In many cases, two or more Moré verbs translate as a single verb or a verb plus a preposition or adverb. If the verbs have the same subject and there is a close relationship between the verbs, such as, 'to go to do', 'to do simultaneously', 'to use to do', 'to use for', the close connective /n/ occurs before the second verb and the subject is not repeated, e.g., /Yám sod tugó n yi néede?/, 'Your trip went and was well?', i.e., 'How was your trip?' The going and the being are closely related as parts of the trip.

Connective /n/ is homorganic with the first consonant of the following verb, i.e., is made in the same tongue position. Before /m, p, b, f, v/, connective /n/ is /m/. Elsewhere it is /n/, but before /k, g/ it is phonetically [ŋ], the last sound in 'sing'.

3C Locative: /-ě/

A wáa Wágdùě.

A yíi Wágdùě.

The suffix /-ě/ means, 'in/at a place or thing', e.g., the sentences above, 'He arrived in/at Ouagadougou', and 'He left from (in/at) Ouagadougou'. Younger persons who speak French tend to omit the /-ě/ ending after place names, especially the /-ě/ of foreign words.

3D Subject-Conditioned Tones of Verbs.

Words often have different tones in different grammatical environments. The tone of the first syllable of a word is often influenced by the preceding word. For example, the first syllable of a low-class verb is high after a low pronoun or noun (including a contracted noun that no longer ends in a high), but low after a high pronoun or noun or a contracted pronoun or noun that no longer has its final syllable, e.g., /A wáa me/, but /Yám waa mé/. The first syllable of a high-class verb is also high after a low pronoun or noun or a contracted noun that no longer ends in a high; but after a contracted pronoun or noun that no longer ends in a low tone, the first syllable is just a little lower than the high of the preceding pronoun or noun, i.e., it is mid tone, e.g., /A yíi mé/, but /Yám yíi mé/.

In the following drills, notice especially the tones of the first syllable of the verbs.

3.1A Repetition Drill

- a. A wáa Bóboě
 A yíi Bóboě
 A bée Bóboě
- b. Yám waa Bobóě
 Yám bee Bobóě
- c. Yám yíi Bóboě

3.1B Substitution Drill

Practice: tone of some verbs.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
A wáa Wágdùgě.	A wáa Wágdùgě.
Yám	Yám waa Wagdúgě.
yíi	Yám yíi Wágdùgě.
A	A yíi Wágdùgě.
bée	A bée Wágdùgě.
Yám	Yám bee Wagdúgě.

3.1C Substitution Drill

Practice of tone

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
A wáě n la Bóboě.	A wáě n la Bóboě.
Yám	Yám waě n la Bóboě.
yíi	Yám yíi n la Bóboě.
A	A yíi n la Bóboě.
béě	A béě n la Bóboě.
Yám	Yám beě n la Bóboě.

3.2A Question Intonation

Statements and questions answerable by yes or no may contain the same words and the same word order. Only the intonation distinguishes one from the other. The last vowel of the question is longer and lower than the last vowel of the statement.

3.2A Repetition Drill

Statement vs. Question intonation (Listen to the last vowel carefully.)

1. ¿A sód tugó n yi néede?	Did he have a good trip?
2. A sód tugó n yi néede.	He had a good trip.
3. ¿Ámedikdàm fǎǎ ya láafi?	How is everyone in America?
4. Ámedikdàm fǎǎ ya láafi.	Everyone in America is fine.
5. ¿Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé?	Has Mr. Tembila arrived?
6. Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé.	Mr. Tembila has arrived.
7. ¿A wáa láafi?	Did he arrive all right?
8. A wáa láafi.	He arrived all right.

3.2B Response Drill

Intonation Practice.

Cue

¿A sód tugó n yi néede?
 ¿Ámedikdàm fǎǎ ya láafi?
 ¿Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé?
 ¿A wáa láafi?

Response

Ngée, a sód tugó n yi néede.
 Ngée, Ámedikdàm fǎǎ ya láafi.
 Ngée, Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé.
 Ngée, a wáa láafi.

3.2C Transformation Drill

More intonation practice.

The instructor makes the statement. One student changes the statement to a question. Another student may answer this question.

Cue

A sód tugó n yi néede.
 Ámedikdàm fǎǎ ya láafi.
 Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé.
 A wáa láafi.

Response

¿A sód tugó n yi néede?
 ¿Ámedikdàm fǎǎ ya láafi?
 ¿Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé?
 ¿A wáa láafi?

Comprehension Drill 1

Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé.

A yá láafi.

A sód tugó n yi néede.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Tembíl wáa mé?

Ngée, a wáa mé.

2. ¿A wáa láafi?

Ngée, a wáa láafi.

3. ¿A sód tugó n yi néede?

Ngée, a sód tugó n yi néede.

Comprehension Drill 2

Dáwa Tembíl wáa á yíidè.

A pág yá láafi.

Yíidàm fáã ya láafi.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Tembíl wáa á yíidè?

Ngée, a wáa á yíidè.

2. ¿A pág yá láafi?

Ngée, a págà yá láafi?

3. ¿La a yíidàm fáã?

Ub fáã ya láafi.

UNIT 4

Basic Sentences

	-Dáwa Kúka-	
Dáwa Tembila!		Tembila, old friend!
pága, -bá		woman, wife, Mrs.
wotó		like, thus, so
ně		indeed
Yá Pága Mádía, lá wotò ně.		This is my very old friend Maria.
	-Pága Mádía-	
Áíí.		Thank you.
	-Dáwa Tembila-	
¿Laafí bee yǎmbà?		How are <u>you</u> ?
	-Pága Mádía-	
Laafí balá.		Just fine.
¿La yǎm yě?		And you?
	-Dáwa Tembila-	
Laafí balá.		Just fine.
¿La Ámedikdàmbá?		And /how's/ everyone in America?
	-Pága Mádía-	
Ub fǎǎ ya láafi.		They are all fine.
	-Dáwa Tembila-	
zamsa		taught, learned, studied
Mǒǒdé		the Moré language
gómdè, *góamà		speech, talk, discussion, language
yae		where
¿Yǎm zamsá Mǒǒd góam yǎe?		Where did you learn Moré?

-Pága Mádía-

Kúlga
M zámàsà á la Ámedikè né Dáwa Kúlga.

Kulga (proper name)
I learned it in America with my
friend Kulga.

-Dáwa Tembila-

dě, dëndà, dénnà
sumdé, -á
Dě ya súnà.

that
thing which is good, fitting,
proper
That's very good.

USEFUL PHRASES

Yá m ma.	This is my mother.
Yá m bá.	This is my father.
Yá m ma Mádía.	This is 'Aunt' Mary.
Yá m bá Kúka.	This is 'Uncle' Kuka.
Yá m bílga.	This is my child.
Yá m koambá.	These are my children.
A zámàsà Fídāsé.	He studied French.
A zámàsà Ánglèsì.	He studied English.
A zámàsà Bámbadande.	He studied Bambara.
A zámàsà Sílmíidi.	He studied Fula.

NEW WORDS

ma, -dámà	mother; maternal aunt; lady; old friend
bá, -dámá	father; paternal uncle; sir; old friend
bílga, *koambá	child
Fídāsé	French
Ánglèsì	English
Bámbadande	Bambara
Sílmíidi	Fula, Fulani

GENERAL NOTES

4A Titles of Respect: Titles of Familiarity

Dáwa Tembíl

Yá Pága Mádía, lá wótò ně.

Yá m ma Mádia.

Yá m bá Kúka.

In addition to the showing of respect and familiarity by pronouns, there are also numerous titles of respect and familiarity. /Dáwa/ and /Pága/ plus a family name corresponds very closely to our 'Mr.' or 'Mrs.' plus a family name. But /Dáwa/ or /Pága/ plus a given name shows a great deal of familiarity. If the two persons involved are more or less the same age, then it is understood that they have grown up together, i.e., /Pága Mádia/ translates 'my very old friend Mary'. If the person addressed is a good bit older than the person speaking, /Dáwa/ or /Pága/ plus a given name means 'old friend of the family', e.g., /Pága Mádia/, 'Maria, a long-time friend of the family'. This last usage is not too different from our custom of calling elderly, long-time friends of the family, 'Aunt', or 'Uncle'.

To address such long-time friends as described above, one uses /Dáwa/ or /Pága/ plus the first name if the other person is about the same age as the speaker, but one usually uses /m ma/ 'my mother' or /m bá/ 'my father', to address older persons, e.g., /M ma Mádia/, 'Aunt Mary', 'Maria, my dear old friend'.

All the names introduced thus far are given names.

4B Tones of initial /ya/. Before complements.

Yá Pága Mádia.

Ya mám.

Initial /yá/ before a noun complement is high but low before a pronoun. In the sentences above, /yá/ is high before the noun /pága/ in 'This is my old friend Maria', but /ya/ is low before the pronoun complement /mám/ in, 'It's me'. /yá/ is high before a short possessive pronoun, e.g., /Yá m pága/, 'It's my wife', but /ya/ is low before a long possessive pronoun, e.g., /Ya tónd biigá/, 'It's our child'.

4C Tones of Verb Objects.

Yám zamsá Móòdè.

The tone of the first syllable of a verb object is just the opposite of the tone of the last syllable of the verb if there is no word between the verb and its object, e.g., /Yám zamsá Móòdè/, 'You learned/studied Moré', the last syllable of /zamsa/ is low and the first syllable of /Móode/ is high.

4D A Vowel Changes in Stems

gómde góamà gwámà

The noun suffixes which have the shape /-a/, when occurring after a stem containing an /o/ or an /e/, may also occur with an /a/ after the stem vowel, e.g., the stem /góm-/ plus /-a/ is /góamà/ or /gwámà/ 'languages'.

There are various changes in different stems, e.g., the stem /pog-/ plus /-a/ is /pága/, 'woman', with neither /o/ nor /w/. Different dialects of Moré also handle this stem variation in a number of ways. In this manual /o/ is regularly written between a consonant and following vowel even though the speaker may vary between /o/ and /w/, e.g., /koambá/ 'children', always occurs in the text, but the tapes may vary between /koambá/ and /kwambá/.

The student should be aware that other speakers also say /kambá/ and /kombá/.

4E /la/ With Short Form of Pronouns.

M zámàsà á la Ámedikè.

If a short form of a pronoun occurs as the object of a verb, the pronoun is always followed by /la/, 'to be (really)', e.g., in the sentence above, 'I learned it in America', /á/, a short form of a pronoun, is followed by /la/.

4F Bambara and Silmiidi.

In the savanna area between the desert and the rain forest, there has been a lot of east-west communication for many centuries. Many languages, especially the larger ones, are well known outside of the area where they are the pre-dominant language. Bambara, which is centered in Mali, is well known from Upper Volta to the west coast. The dialect of Bambara spoken in Guinea and Senegal is usually called Malinke.

The Fula or Fulani, whose center is on the west coast, are now scattered along the savanna from Senegal to the Sudan. The Fula language is called Silmiidi in Moré.

4.1A Substitution Drill

Practice: tones

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Ya mám	Ya mám.
tóndò	Ya tóndò.
yě	Ya yě.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Ya bámbà	Ya bámbà.
fó	Ya fó.
yám	Ya yám.
tónd	Ya tónd.
bám	Ya bámb
yéndà	Ya yéndà.

4.1B Substitution Drill

Practice: tones

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Yá m pága.	Yá m pága.
ub sída	Yá b sída
i bá	Yá i bá
i ma	Yá i ma
id bíiga	Yá d bíiga
a pága	Yá a pága
a sída	Yá a sída
m bá	Yá m bá
id bá	Yá d bá
ub ma	Yá b ma

4.1C Substitution Drill

Practice: tones

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Ya tónd biigá.	Ya tónd biigá.
yám pagá.	Ya yám pagá.
bám biigá.	Ya bám biigá.
yám sidá.	Ya yám sidá.
tónd bà.	Ya tónd bà.
tónd ma.	Ya tónd ma.
yám bà.	Ya yám bà.
yám ma.	Ya yám ma.
yám biigá.	Ya yám biigá.
bám biigá.	Ya bám biigá.
bám bà.	Ya bám bà.

4.1D Substitution Drill

Practice: Tones of pronouns

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
M zám̃sà á la mé.	M zám̃sà á la mé.
I	I zám̃sà á la mé.
A	A zám̃sà á la mé.
Yám̃	Yám̃ zamsá' á la mé.
Tón	Tón zamsá' á la mé.
Bám̃	Bám̃ zamsá' á la mé.
A sída	A sída zamsa á la mé.
Yám̃ pagá	Yám̃ pagá zamsa á la mé.
Ub bá	Ub bá zamsa á la mé.
A ma	A ma zám̃sà á la mé.

Comprehension Drill 1

Dáwa Sékù né Dáwa Kúk wáa Ámedikè. Ub fǎǎ waa láafi. Ub zám̃sà Ángles gòam Haute Voltaè. Dè ya sùma.

Questions:

- ¿Dáwa Sékù né Dáwa Kúk wáa yae?
Ub wáa Ámedikè.
- ¿Ub wáa láafi?
Ngée, ub fǎǎ waa láafi.
- ¿Ub zám̃sà ánglesgòam yae?
Ub zám̃sà ángles gòam Haute Voltaè.

Comprehension Drill 2

Pága Mádía waa Haute Voltaè. A yá láafi balá. A zám̃sà Móòd gòam Ámedikè. A zám̃sà Móòd needé.

Questions:

- ¿Pága Mádía waa yae?
A wáa Haute Voltaè.
- ¿A wáa laafí?
Laafí balá.
- ¿A zám̃sà Móòdgòam yae?
A zám̃sà á la Ámedikè.
- ¿A zám̃sà Móòd needé?
Ngée, a zám̃sà Móòd needé.

UNIT 5

Basic Sentences

bí
¿Yá m bá Kúk bí?

-Sékù-

or; a question marker
Is it my esteemed Kuka?

Ngée.

-Kúka-

Yes.

kěě
Kěě yá waé.
zii

-Sékù-

enter
Come in please.
be seated, sit, live at/in,
dwell
Have a seat please.
How are you?

Zínde yá.
¿I yíbeoog ya láafi?

-Kúka-

Fine, thank you.

Laafí balá.

-Sékù-

How is all your family?

¿I zakdám fãã ya laafí?

-Kúka-

Fine, (thank you)

Laafí balá.

-Sékù-

Your wife and (her) children?

¿I pág né a koambá?

-Kúka-

Just fine
and you?

Laafí balá.
¿La yám yě?

-Sékù-

Fine, (thank you)

Laafí balá.

USEFUL WORDS

A zíí mé.	He is seated. He (has) sat.
A zíndà mé.	He has (just) sat down. He is (in the process of) sitting.
A kéé mé.	He (has) entered
A yíí mé.	He is out. He has gone out.
Paké yá i lívddàmbá.	Please open your books.
Pagé yá i lívddàmbá.	Please close your books.
Kelgé yá néede.	Please listen carefully.
Yeelé yá yaasa.	Please say it again.
Púglge yá mam n yeelé.	Please repeat after me. (Follow you me and say.)

NEW WORDS

paka	to open; let out
lívdè, -dàmbá	book
paga	to close, shut, lock, fasten
kelga	to listen, pay attention to, care for, look after, regard, observe, look at
yeela	to say, tell, affirm
yaasa	again
púglgà	to double; come/follow after; repeat

GENERAL NOTES

5A Question Marker /bí/.

¿Yá m bá Kúk bí?

One way of marking a question is to have /bí/, 'or!', at the end of the sentence, as in the sentence above, 'It's my friend Kuka or?', i.e., 'Is it my friend Kuka?'

5B Imperative:

Kéé yá waé.

Zínde yá.

The imperative singular is marked by the suffix /-é/, e.g., /zínde/, 'Sit

down' (talking to one person). This is the familiar form and should be used only under those circumstances as previously described in Note 1B for the use of familiar forms. The plural imperative is marked by the suffix /-e/ plus /yǎ/, 'you' (polite or honorific) e.g. /zínde yǎ/, 'Sit down' (talking to more than one person). The plural imperative is also the polite and honorific imperative for both singular and plural. In the lesson text, the polite form is translated 'please', as in /Zínde yǎ/, 'Please sit down'. Obviously the word 'please' does not occur in this construction in Moré, but this is about as close as we can come in English to the sense of the Moré. If there is more than one imperative verb, it is not necessary to repeat /yǎ/ since one has already shown the proper respect, e.g., /Kéé yǎ waé/, 'Come in please'.

5C Imperative after /i/.

Yíì yǎ.

The imperative ending after a stem ending in /i/ is /-i/, e.g., /Yíì yǎ/, 'Please leave', 'Please go out'.

5.1A Repetition Drill

Additional practice on the tonal features.

yǎm zaká	your house
a zaká	her house
yǎm pagá	your wife
a pága	his wife
yǎm koambá	your children
m koambá	my children
yǎm zamsa mé	you learned
Ub zámsà mé	they learned

5.1B Substitution Drill

More practice of tonal feature.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
a zaká	a zaká
yǎm	yǎm zaká
pága	yǎm pagá
a	a pága
koambá	a koambá
yǎm	yǎm koambá

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
yám zamsa mé	yám zamsá mé
mam	mam zámsà mé
ub	ub zámsà mé
yám	yám zamsá mé
wáa mé	yám waa mé
A	A wáa mé

5.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Formal Commands

Zamsé yǎ.	Learn!
Waé yǎ.	Come here!
Paké yǎ.	Open it!
Pagé yǎ.	Close them!
Kelgé yǎ.	Listen!
Yeelé yǎ.	Speak!
Púglgè yǎ.	Continue!
Yíì yǎ.	Leave!

5.2B Substitution Drill

Practice: Command forms.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Zamsé yǎ.	Zamsé yǎ.
Waé	Waé yǎ.
Paké	Paké yǎ.
Pagé	Pagé yǎ.
Kelgé	Kelgé yǎ.
Yeelé	Yeelé yǎ.
Púglgè	Púglgè yǎ.
Yíì	Yíì yǎ.

Comprehension Drill

M koambá zamsa wúsgo.
 Ub zámsà ángles gòamà.
 Ub yá sùrà.

Questions:

1. ¿Yám koambá zamsa wúsgo bí?
Ngée, ub zámsà wúsgo.
2. ¿Ub zámsà ánglesgòama bí?
Ngée, ub zámsà ánglesgòamà.
3. ¿La b yá sùrà bí?
Ngée, ub yá sùrà.

UNIT 6

Basic Sentences

-Sékù-

wāna	how, how much/many
pindá	before(hand), early
¡Yá wāna?	What is going on?
¡Yá wán né yíbeoog pindá?	What brings you here so early in the morning?

-Kúka-

áyò	no
ká, pá	not
búmbù, *bǒǒgà	something
yé	one, any, some; once, yet
Áyò, ká búm yé.	Oh, nothing.
gésà	to see, look, examine; visit
nǎǎ	to be going to do, have the intention of doing, (See Note 6B)
Mam wáa mé balá, n nǎǎ n gés yām.	I just came to see you.

-Sékù-

Dě ya sùma.	That's nice.

-Kúka-

súúdi, -yá	heart; interior; sentiment, affection
noogó, -dó	good, agreeable
sě	that, who, which, what, where, when, while
ká	here
káe	right here
sě...wǎ	that, which
M súúd yá noog wúsgo, m sě wa káe né wǎ.	I am happy to be here.

USEFUL PHRASES

A wáa pindá.	He came early. He came on time.
A ká wá pind yé.	He came late. He didn't come on time.
Id náã n wa, n yě taab yíbeoogò.	We'll see each other in the morning.
Id náã n wa, n yě taab yíbeoogà.	We'll see each other this morning.
Id náã n wa, n yě taab béoogò.	We'll see each other tomorrow.
Id náã n wa, n yě taab dúnda.	We'll see each other today.
Id náã n wa, n yě taab mwásmwasà.	We'll see each other in a minute.

GENERAL NOTES

6A Negative

Ká bùm yé.

Negative is marked by /ká/ or /pá/ before the noun or verb being negated and /yé/ at the end of the sentence, e.g., in the sentence above, 'It's nothing'. Final vowels of suffixes of negated nouns and verbs do not occur, e.g., /A ká wá yé/, 'He didn't come'.

6B Proximate Future: Purpose

Mam wáa mé balá n náã n gés yãm.

Id náã n wa, n yě taab yíbeoogò.

The auxiliary /náã/ plus the connective /n/ before a verb marks: (1) the proximate future and (2) purpose or intention.

(1) The proximate future most often means sometime within the next month after the moment of speaking, but it may refer to a more distant time if the speaker considers that the event will take place soon and usually translates 'going to (verb)', e.g., /Id náã n wa, n yě taab yíbeoogò/, 'I'll see you tomorrow', literally, 'We will come see two (both) tomorrow'.

(2) Purpose or intention means the translation is 'intend to (verb)', or 'in order to (verb)', e.g., /Mam wáa balá n náã n gés yãm/, 'I just (only) came to see you', or 'I just (only) came in order to see you'.

6C Relative Connective /sé/

M sũũd yá noog wúsg m sé wa káe né wã.

The relative connective /sé/ occurs after the subject of the relative

clause, as in the sentence above, 'I am happy to be here', /sé/, 'that', occurs after the subject /m/, 'I'. /sé/ translates a number of English relatives, e.g., 'that', 'who', 'which', 'what', 'where', 'while'. Clauses with /sé/ do not have a vowel suffix to the verb, e.g., /wa/, not /waa/, and often have /wǎ/ at the end.

6D Definiteness: /wǎ/, /-ǎ/

Any noun may be translated with 'a' or 'the'; but if a definite or particular thing is implied, the suffix /-ǎ/ is used. /-ǎ/ may translate, 'the', 'this', 'that', 'these', 'those'. After a stem ending in a vowel, /-ǎ/ is /-wǎ/, e.g., /vwatúudǎ/, 'the automobile', 'this/that automobile', or /m báwǎ/, 'my father over there'.

Also /-ǎ/ plus /-damba/ is very productive, i.e., makes many new words, in the formation of nouns, e.g., /vwatúudǎdamba/, 'those people in the automobile'.

Except in monosyllables /-ǎ/ and /wǎ/ have the same tone as the final vowel of the stem they occur with e.g., /vwátuudǎ/, 'the car', but /silgǎ/, 'the bird', 'the airplane'. After a monosyllable /wǎ/ is low, e.g., /m báwǎ/.

6.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Negation

Ká búmbù.	It's something.
Ká búm yé.	It's nothing.
Yám waa me.	You came.
Yám ká wá ye.	You didn't come.
M yá laafí.	I'm fine.
M ká laafí yé.	I don't feel well.
A túgǒ n yi néede.	He had a good trip.
A ká tugǒ n yi néed yé.	His trip didn't go well.
Yám zamsá wúsug.	You learned a lot.
Yám ká zams wúsg ye.	You didn't learn much.
M súúd yá noogó.	I am happy.
M súúd ká noog yé.	I am not happy.

6.1B Transformation Drill

Make the following expressions negative.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Ya búmbù	Ká bùm yé.
Mam wáa mé	Mam ká wá ye.
A yá laafí	A ká laafí yé.
A tógò n yi néede	A ká tógò n yi néed yé.
A zámsà wúsgo	A ká záms wúsug yé.
M sũũd yá noogó	M sũũd ká noog yé.

6.1C Response Drill

Answer each of the following questions negatively.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
¿A tógò n yi néed bí?	Áyò, a ká tógò n yi néed yé.
¿A pága ya laafí bí?	Áyò, a págà ká laafí yé.
¿A sũũd ya noog bí?	Áyò, a sũũd ká noog yé.
¿Yám zamsá wúsgo bí?	Áyò, m ká zams wúsug yé.
¿Yá m bá Kúk bí?	Áyó, ká m bá Kúk yé.

Comprehension Drill

Dáwa Kúlg ká wá ye.
 A ká laafí yé.
 A sũũd ká noog yé.
 A págà yí sódè.

Questions:

- ¿Dáwa Kúlg wáa mé bí?
 Áyò, a ká wá yé.
- ¿A yá laafí bí?
 Áyò, a ká laafí yé.
- ¿Yá wāna?
 A sũũd ká noog yé.
- ¿A págà yíi sód bí.
 Ngée, a págà yíi sódè.

UNIT 7

Basic Sentences

zoa, -dámà
Né i zaábdè, m zoa.

-Kúlga-

friend

Good afternoon, my friend.

¿I zaábd ya laafí?

-Sékù-

How are you?

Laafí balá.

-Kúlga-

Fine, thank you.

adé
Ad á ya m zoa Kúka.

-Sékù-

here

This is my friend, Kuka.

¿Laafí bee mé, m zoa?

-Kúlga-

How are you, my friend?

Laafí balá.

-Kúka-

Fine, thank you.

nǎ
Fídǎsé
A Kúk nǎ n yi mé.
A Kúk nǎ n yi Fídǎsé.

-Sékù-

to have just (verb) (see Note 7B)

France, French; a French (woman)

Kuka has just left.

Kuka has just come from France.

ohóò
Ohóò.
banga
Mam súüd yá noogó.

-Kúlga-

yes, O.K.

Is that so?

to know, come to know, make the acquaintance of

I am happy.

-Kúlga- (continues)

Mam súúd yá noog wúsgo m sɛ bang yámbà. I am pleased to meet you.

USEFUL PHRASES

A ná m pagá búdò.	He has just locked up the office.
A ná m pagá dóogò.	He has just closed the door.
A ná m paká dágnoodà.	He has just opened the door.
A ná m paká fínetdè.	He has just opened the window.
Bám lá Dáwa Wedáoogò.	This is Mr. Ouedraogo.
Bám lá Pága Wedáoogò.	This is Mrs. Ouedraogo.
Bám lá Président.	This is the President.
M míi b lá mé.	I know him/them.
M míi Wáyguia.	I'm acquainted with Ouahigouya.
M míi daagà sódè.	I know the way to the market.
M míi Ámèdiké.	I know an American.
A gésà á lá mé.	He saw her.
A yíi a lá mé.	He left there.
¿A ká pag a lá?	He closed it, didn't he?
¿A ká keng a lá?	He went there, didn't he?
¿A ká wum a lá?	He understood it, didn't he?

NEW WORDS

búdo	office
doogó, -tó, -dó	room; cabin
dagnódè, dignóodè, dognóodè, -ya	door, opening
fínetdè, -a, -dàmbá	window
mii	to know, know how to, be familiar with
Wayugíà	city of Ouahigouya
daagá, -sé	market, marketplace; purchase
Amediké, dàmbá	an American
wuma	to hear, understand, know a language

GENERAL NOTES

7A /a/ Before Proper Names

Ad á ya m zoa Kúka.

A Kúk nǎ n yi Fídǎsě.

If a proper name occurs without a title preceding it, the proper name is preceded by /a/, e.g., the sentences above, 'This is my friend Kuka', and 'Kuka has just returned from France.' /zoa/ is a title.

7B The proximity marker /nǎ/

A Kuk nǎ n yi Fídǎsě.

The proximity marker /nǎ/ can be easily translated into English by the expression: 'to have just'. Thus the above sentence in English is 'Kuka has just come from France.'

7C Ohǒǒ: ngée

Both /ohǒǒ/ and /ngée/ translate, 'yes!'; but /ohǒǒ/ is much more uncertain and vague than /ngée/. /ngée/ means, 'Yes, it's true!', 'Yes, I accept/concur/agree!'. /ohǒǒ/ means, 'Well, O.K., if you say so!', 'Well, I accept, but I can't personally guarantee that this is the case.'

7D yíidì: zaká: doogó

A typical Mossi house is a square, rectangular, or round courtyard surrounded on all sides by a series of rooms which open on the courtyard. In general there is only one door to the outside. The whole structure is a /yíidì/. Two or more families, nearly always closely related, may live in the same /yíidì/, but each family has its own /zaká/, 'apartment', or 'quarters', in the /yíidì/. A /yíidì/ may consist of one or several /zaká/. A /doogó/ is a single room, or occasionally a one-room building. A /zaká/ may consist of one or several /doogó/. A European-style house is also called a /yíidì/.

7E Verb /lá/.

The verb /lá/ draws attention to the word that precedes it. It is an emphasizer. For practical purposes, we will distinguish three uses of /lá/: (1) main verb, (2) object pronoun marker, (3) secondary verb.

(1) /lá/ contrasts with /ya/ as the main verb of a sentence. When /ya/ is used the speaker does not guarantee that the statement is true or that he is totally familiar with the situation. When /lá/ is used the speaker asserts that the statement is true and that he is well acquainted with the situation.

- example: /Ad á ya m zoa Kúka./
translation: 'This is my friend Kuka whom I have not known for a long time.'
example: /Ad á lá m zoa Kúka./
translation: 'This is my friend Kuka with whom I grew up.'
example: /Bám ya Dáwa Wedáoogò./
translation: 'This is Mr. Ouedraogo whom I don't know very well.'
example: /Bám lá Dáwa Wedáoogò./
translation: 'This is Mr. Ouedraogo whom I know well.'
examples: /Ad á ya lá m pága./ /Ad á lá m pága./
translation: 'This is my wife.'

After /ad/ both /ya/ and /la/ may occur. The meaning of /lá/ takes precedence.

- example: /Ad á ya m pága./
translation: 'This is my brother's/cousin's wife.'

One only introduces government officials by their titles when one knows the correct one. Thus:

- /Bám lá Président./ 'This is the President.'

does not occur with /ya/.

(2) /lá/ marks the short object pronoun.

- /M gésà á la mé./ 'I saw her/him.'
/M gésa b la mé./ 'I saw them.'

(3) The main verb of a sentence is emphasized when /lá/ follows it.

- /A gésà mé./ He saw.
/A gesě n la mé./ He really saw.

Since /la/ in the above example is the second verb of a verb plus verb construction, it must be preceded by a nasal vowel and /n/.

7F Note, Negative or Affirmative?

/lá/ is a verb. Therefore it is usually followed by /me/, /ye/ or an object since verbs don't usually end a sentence.

/¿A ká pág a lá?/ seems to be an incomplete sentence. It is neither affirmative, ending in /mé/, nor negative, ending in /yé/. It expresses doubt. Sentences of this type may be translated by the English tag question, 'He closed it, didn't he?'

7G Verb Object Replacement

Almost all Moré verbs may be directly followed by nouns.

/A gesa mobili./	He saw the car.
/A waa Bobo./	He arrived in Bobo.
/A waa Boboě./	
/A yi Fiděse./	He left France
/A yi Fiděsě./	

These nouns may be replaced by a pronoun: /a la me/ or /ub la me/.

/A gésà á lá mé./	He saw it.
/A wáa a lá mé./	He arrived there.
/A yíí á lá mé./	He left there.

Since these are short pronouns, which cannot end the sentence, the verb /la/ follows.

7.1A Repetition Drill

/á la/ and /la/ following the main verb.

A gésà móbilì.	He saw the car.
A gésà á la mé.	He saw it.
A págà zákà.	She closed the outside door.
A págà á la mé.	She closed it.
A yíí mé.	He went out.
A yíí á la mé.	He left there.
A wáa mé.	He arrived.
A wáa á la mé.	He arrived there.

7.1B Expansion Drill

Insert /á la/ after the verb.

A gésà mé.	A gésà á la mé.
A kélgà mé.	A kélgà á la mé.
A págà mé.	A págà á la mé.
A yéelà mé.	A yéelà á la mé.
A pákà mé.	A pákà á la mé.
A yíi mé.	A yíi a la mé.
A zámsà mé.	A zámsà a la mé.
A bángà mé.	A bángà á la mé.
A wúmà mé.	A wúmà á la mé.

7.1C Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
A yá m pága.	A yá m pága.
a pága.	A yá a pága.
Yám ya	Yám ya a pága.
a sída	Yám ya a sída.
A yá	A yá a sída.
ub bá	A yá b bá.
id ma	A yá d ma.
M yá	M yá d ma.
ub sída	M yá b sída.
Ub yá	Ub yá b sída.

7.1D Transformation Drill

Change unemphatic verb to emphatic form with /la/.

A gésà mé.	A gésè n la mé.
A kélgà mé.	A kélgè n la mé.
A págà mé.	A págè n la mé.
A yéelà mé.	A yéelè n la mé.
A pákà mé.	A pákè n la mé.
A yíi mé.	A yíè n la mé.
A zámsà mé.	A zámsè n la mé.
A bángà mé.	A bángè n la mé.
A wúmà mé.	A wúmè n la mé.

7.1E Transformation Drill

Insert /la/ in the following sentences. Make any necessary changes.

Bám waa mé.	Bám waa a lá mé.
A yá Amedikě.	A yá la Ámèdikě.
A yá m págà.	A yá la m págà.
A yíi Wágdugě.	A yíi la Wágdugě.
Tón zii mé.	Tón zii a lá mé.
Yám paká mé.	Yám paká á la mé.
Bám pagá mé.	Bám pagá á la mé.
A yéelà mé.	A yéelà á la mé.

7.1F Transformation Desponse Drill

Practice: Contrast between stressed and unstressed verbs.

Directions: The instructor asks a question. One student answers it negatively. Another student emphatically contradicts the first.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
¿Bám waa mé bí?	Áyò, ub ká wá ye.	Ngée, ub wáa a la mé.
¿A Kúk yá Ámèdikě bí?	Áyò, a ká Ámèdikě yé.	Ngée, a yá la Ámèdikě.
¿A yá yám pág bí?	Áyò, a ká m pág ye.	Ngée, a yá la m pága.
¿A yíi Wágdugě bí?	Áyò, a ká yí Wágdugě yé.	Ngée, a yíi la Wágdugě.
¿Bám pagá budó wă bí?	Áyò, ub ká pág budó wă yé.	Ngée, ub págě la búdo wă.

UNIT 8

Basic Sentences-Pogsádà-

dooga
;Yám doogá Bóboě bí?

to give birth; be born
Is Bobo your home town? Were you
born in Bobo?

-Kúlga-

Áyò, mam dóogà Wágduǵě.

No, my home is in Ouagadougou.

-Pogsádà-

yíkǎǎdm̃
;Yám yí yíkǎǎdm̃ bí?

marriage
Are you married? (You were/have
been married or?)

-Kúlga-

tada
tǎǎbó
Ngée, m táda pága né koamb á tǎǎbó.

to have, own, posses; use,
utilize
three
Yes, I have a wife and three
children.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY - NUMERALS

yémbò, yémbdè	1
yíibú	2
tǎǎbó	3
naasé	4
nǔǔ	5
yoobé	6
yopoe	7
níí	8
wáe	9
pííga	10

USEFUL PHRASES

A tádà dóog á yé.	It has one room.
A tádà dót á yíí.	It has two rooms.
A tádà dót pííga.	It has ten rooms.
A kélgà dádíó.	He listened to the radio.
A kélgà kíbàese.	He listened to the news.
A kélgà kíbàes dadíoè.	He listened to the news on the radio.
A yá Ámèdiké	He is American.
A yá Fídàsé	She is French.
A yá Vóltaik	He is Voltaic.
A yá Mǒagà	She is Mossi.
A yá Sílmííga	He is Fula.
A yá Bámbada	She is Bambara.

NEW WORDS

doogó, -tó, -dó	room, bedroom
dádíó, -dàmbá	radio
kibádè, *kibàesè	news, information
Fídàsé, -dàmbà	a French(wo)man
Vóltaik, -dàmbá	a Voltaic
Mǒagá, -sé	a Mossi
Sílmííga, -sé	a Fula(ni)
Bámbada, *Bámbadandàmbá	a Bambara

GENERAL NOTES

8A Some Special Expressions

ǃYǎm dooga Bóboè bí?

It is worthwhile to list the several translations of this sentence. 'Are you from Bobo?', 'Were you born in Bobo?', 'Is your home in Bobo?'. The verb of the sentence is /dooga/ - be born, give birth.

ǃYǎm yí yí kǎǎdm bí?

The verb of this sentence is /yí/ - became, (in the present tense: /yita/ - become). Thus the only way to ask if someone is married is to ask if he has become married. (See Unit 26.)

8B Numerals preceded by /á/.

A tádà dóog á yé.

The numerals 'one' through 'nine' are preceded by /á/, e.g., the sentence above, 'I possess house it one', i.e., 'I have one house.'

8.1A Substitution Drill

Insert the underlined portions in the preceding sentence.

A tádà dóog á yé.	It has one room.
A tádà dót á <u>yíí</u> .	It has two rooms.
A tádà dót á <u>tǎǎbó</u> .	It has three rooms.
A tádà dót á <u>naasé</u> .	It has four rooms.
A tádà dót á <u>núú</u> .	It has five rooms.
A tádà dót á <u>yoobé</u> .	It has six rooms.
A tádà dót á <u>yopoe</u> .	It has seven rooms.
A tádà dót á <u>níí</u> .	It has eight rooms.
A tádà dót á <u>wáe</u> .	It has nine rooms.
A tádà dót <u>pííga</u> .	It has ten rooms.

8.1B Substitution Drill

M tádà m pága Pádiè.	I have a wife in Paris.
M tádà <u>yííy á yíí</u> Bobóè.	I have two houses in Bobo-Dioulasso.
M tádà <u>kóamb á tǎǎ</u> Ámedikè.	I have three children in America.
M tádà <u>págb á naas</u> Wágdugeè.	I have four wives in Ouagadougou.
M tádà <u>lívdàmb á núú</u> m doogé.	I have five books in my room.
M tádà <u>zóadàmb á yoob</u> New Yorkè.	I have six friends in New York.
M tádà <u>bádàmb á yopoe</u> Wáyugiyè.	I have seven uncles in Ouahigouya.
M tádà <u>mádàmb á níí</u> Abigiǎè.	I have eight aunts in Abidjan.
M tádà <u>kóamb á wáe</u> Haute Voltaè.	I have nine children in Upper Volta.
M tádà <u>lívdàmb pííg</u> búdoè.	I have ten books at the office.
M tádà <u>m pága</u> Pádiè.	I have a wife in Paris.

Comprehension Drill 1

Dáwa Kúk ná n yí yíkǎǎdm.

A págà ya néede.

A dóogà Bóboě.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Kúk ná n yí yíkǎǎdm bí?

Ngée, a ná n yí yíkǎǎdm.

2. ¿A pága ya néed bí?

Ngée, a yá néede.

3. ¿A dóogà yae?

A dóogà Boboě.

Comprehension Drill 2

Dáwa Sékù né Pága Mádía yí yíkǎǎdm.

Ub tádà koamb á naasé.

Ub tádà zák néede.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Sékù yí yíkǎǎdm bí?

Ngée, a yí yíkǎǎdm né Pága Mádía.

2. ¿Ub tádà kóamb bí?

Ngée, ub tádà koamb á naasé.

3. ¿La b zak yá néede bí?

Ngée, ub zak yá néede.

UNIT 9

Basic Sentences

-M. l'Ambassadeur-

tuma
¿Yám tumdá mé bí?

work, employ, use
Do you work?

-Kúlga-

Áyò, m pá túmd yé.

No, I don't work.

-M. l'Ambassadeur-

maana
bwě
¿La yám maandá bwě?

do, make, prepare
what, what kind of
What do you do?

-Kúlga-

kadma
kadembííga, -sì
M yá kádèmbííga.

read, study, learn, go to
school, teach
student
I'm a student.

-M. l'Ambassadeur-

Ya sùmà.

That's a good thing.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Mam yá díplomatè.
Mam yá kóadà.
Mam yá tāmeta.
Mam yá sóddaagà.
Mam yá lógtodè.
Mam yá kádènambá.
Mam yá kóasà.

I am a diplomat.
I am a farmer.
I am a mason.
I am a soldier.
I am a doctor.
I am a teacher.
I am a merchant.

NEW WORDS

díplomatè, -dàmbá	diplomat
kóadà, -bà	farmer, planter
támèta, -bá	mason
soddáagà, -sè	soldier, policeman
logtódè, *logtódàmbá	doctor; shaman, medicine man
kadnēsambá, -dambá	teacher
koaasá, *koaasdbá	merchant, vender

GENERAL NOTES

9A Aspect: Perfective: Imperfective

There are two aspects: the perfective and the imperfective. There are several perfective and several imperfective tenses. The perfective is unmarked, i.e., there is no grammatical element to indicate perfective, but it is indicated by the lack of the imperfective suffix. The perfective aspect indicates that at the time referred to (1) the action referred to has already been completed, e.g., /A wáa mé/, 'He came (already)', 'He has (already) come', or (2) the state of being referred to has already been achieved, e.g., /A yá Ámèdiké/, 'He is (already) an American', 'He has (already) become an American'.

The imperfective aspect is marked by the suffix /-d/, which occurs before the final vowels /-a/ and /-ě/, and indicates that at the time referred to, the action referred to is (1) going on or continuing, e.g., /A gómà mé/, 'He is talking (now)', (2) repeated from time to time, e.g., /A zámà Mőòdè/, 'He studies Moré (from time to time)', or 'He is studying Moré (now)', or (3) engaged in habitually, e.g., /A gómà Mőòdè/, 'He speaks Moré.' Imperfective action is incompleted.

9B Present Tense: Immediate Present: Present Habitual

¿Yám tumdá mé?

The present tense is marked by the imperfect suffix /-d/ plus the /-a/ suffix and indicates that something (1) is going on or in the process at the present moment of speaking, (2) is done from time to time, or (3) is done habitually, e.g., /¿Yám tumdá mé?/, means not only, 'What do you do regularly', or, 'What is your occupation', but also 'What are you doing?', i.e., 'What activity are you engaged in right at this moment?'

9C Stem Irregularity in Imperfectives.

A number of stems that now end in a vowel in the perfective apparently ended in a /-d/ at one time, and the influence of this /-d/ can still be seen in imperfectives such as the present, and also in agent nouns (Note 9E). A /-d/ at the end of a stem followed by a /-d/ suffix occurs as /t/ (Note 9D), e.g., /A wátà mé/, 'He is coming', is the imperfective of the perfective /waa/, /A yítà mé/, 'He is leaving', 'He is coming from (somewhere)', is the imperfective of /yíi/, and /A métà mé/, 'He is building', is the imperfective of /mee/, 'build/construct of adobe'.

Verbs that end in /-s/ in the perfective have /-t/ in the imperfective, e.g., /A gètà mé/ 'He sees', 'He is looking', is the imperfective of /gésà/.

9D Voiced Consonant Plus Identical Voiced Consonant.

If a suffix beginning with a voiced consonant occurs after a stem ending in the same consonant, except as given below, a single voiceless consonant occurs, i.e., /bb/ is /p/, /dd/ is /t/, and /gg/ is /k/, e.g., /zag/ plus /-gá/ is /zaká/, 'house'. The stem can be seen in the plural /zagsé/ 'houses'. /wb/ or /ob/ is also /p/ after a vowel, e.g., /dáv/ plus /-bá/ is /dápa/ 'men'.

Some words have a plural in both a voiceless and a voiced consonant, e.g., /doogó/, 'room', has both /dotó/ and /doodó/, both meaning, 'rooms'. In such cases, there is a single vowel before the voiceless consonant, as in /dotó/, but a long or double vowel before the voiced vowel, as in /doodó/.

If a stem that ends in an /-nd/ is followed by a /-d/ suffix, both /d/'s occur, e.g., /A zínddà mé/, 'He is (in the act of) sitting down'. Between these two /d/'s, there is usually a [ə], i.e., the second vowel in English 'sofa'.

If a stem ending in /-d/ is followed by /-damba/, either a flapped 'r' or a voiceless palatal fricative [ç] plus a flapped 'r' may occur.

9E Agent Nouns.

Agent nouns, i.e., actor nouns derived from verbs, also have the imperfective suffix /-d/, e.g., /góamdà, -bà/, 'speaker', i.e., 'one who talks regularly or habitually'. The irregularities given in Note 9C are also reflected in agent nouns, e.g., /tǎmeta/, 'mason', is from /mee/, 'build with adobe or mortar'. (/tám/ is from /tándo/, 'wet earth', 'mortar'.) /tǎmeta/ then means 'one who builds with mortar or adobe', i.e., 'mason'.

Stems that end in /-s/ have the /-d/ suffix only in the plural, e.g., /koaasá/, 'vender', vs. /koaasdbá/, 'venders'.

9.1A Repetition Drill

Review Note 3E. Practice: Tone of first syllable of verb.

Yám wata' mé.	You arrived.
Yám tumdá mé.	You arrived.
¿Yám maanda' bwě?	What are you doing?
Yám gètà mé.	You saw.
A gètà me.	He saw.
A wáa mé.	He arrived.

9.1B Substitution Drill

Practice: Tone of first syllable of verb.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Yám waa mé	Yám waa mé.
maanda' bwě?	¿Yám maanda' bwě?
A	¿A maanda' bwě?
túmdà mé	A túmdà mé.
Yám	Yám tumda mé.
wáa mé	Yám waa mé.
gètà mé	Yám gètà mé.
A	A gètà mé.
wáa mé	A wáa mé.

Comprehension Drill 1

Dáwa Sékù yá kádnsambá.
 A táda kádmíbíis píiga.
 A táda kádnđoogó.
 Kadnsamb né kadembíis túmdà wúsgo.

Questions:

- ¿Dáwa Sékù máanda' bwě?
A yá kádnsambá.
- ¿A táda kádmíbíis bí?
Ngée, a táda kádmíbíis píiga.

3. ¿Dáwa Sékù tádá kádndoog bí?
Ngée, a tádà kádndoogó.
4. ¿Ub túmdà wúsgo bí?
Ngée, ub túmdà wúsgo.

Comprehension Drill 2

Dáwa Kúk yá koaasa, la a ká máand bum yé. A ká tád bum yé, la a sũũd yá noogó.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Kúk yá koaas bí?
Ngée, a yá kóaaasà.
2. ¿La a máandà bwě?
Áyò, a ká máand bum yé.
3. ¿A tádà bwě?
Áyò, a ká tád bum ué.
4. ¿A Kúk sũũd yá noog bí?
Ngée, a sũũd yá noogó.

UNIT 10

Basic Sentences

-Dáwa Tembila-

kosa	beg, ask, entreat
súgdì	pardon, excuse
M kótà yám súgdì.	I beg your pardon. Pardon/Excuse me.
túmde, -á	work, job
tao	fast, quick
dúnda, dúнна	today
M ká wá tumdè, taotao dúnda yé.	I didn't get to work very early today.

-Dáwa Sékù-

sídà	truth
Yá sídà.	That's true.
¿Ya wánā?	Why is that?

-Dáwa Tembila-

kútu	iron
weefó, *wíldí	horse
kútweefo, -dí	bicycle
sǎāmà	damage, hurt, injure, spoil
dá, dágè	Past tense marker (see Note 10A)
Mam kútweef dágè n sǎāmà mé.	My bicycle was broken down.

-Dáwa Sékù-

nto	yes, O.K.
Nto, dè pá sǎām yé.	O.K., it doesn't matter. O.K., no harm done.

USEFUL PHRASES

Bám kèndà tumdè.

They are going to work.
 They are on the way to work.
 They go to work.
 They walk to work.

Bám kèngdà túumdè.

They are leaving for work.
 They are on the way to work.
 They are going to their jobs.
 They walk to work.

A báodà bòè tumdé.

He's looking for a job as a house-boy.

A báodà póst dòogó.

He's looking for the post office.

A báodà dáagà,

He's looking for the market.

NEW WORDS

kèngà

leave, go away

bao

search, look for

bòè, -dàmbá

houseboy, servant, maid, governess

bòètuumdé, -á

job for/as a houseboy/maid

póstdòogó, -tó, -dó

post office

daagá, -sé

market(place)

GENERAL NOTES

10A Reduplication for Intensity.

M ká wá túmdè taotao dúnd yé.

Adverbs are often reduplicated to show intensity, e.g., /tao/, 'fast', in the sentence from the dialogue, 'I didn't get to work today very early/quickly'.

10B The Past Tense Marker

Mam kútweef dagè n sǎàmà mé.

/dá/ and /dagè/ are alternate forms of the past tense marker. There are many translations into English for this marker. This does not mean that the marker has many functions, but rather that English has several ways of indicating past time. The Moré past tense marker /dá/ and /dagè/ does one thing: it marks past time.

/Mam kútweef sǎàmà mé./

My bicycle was wrecked. (and it is still wrecked.)

/Mam kùtweef dágè n sǎàmà mé./	I had an accident with my bicycle.
/Mam tádà kùtweefò./	I have a bicycle.
/Mam dá tádà kùtweefò./	I used to have a bicycle.

10C /nto/

/nto/ also translates, 'yes', but it is rather vague and means something like 'well, o.k.', or 'Well, if that's the way it is, we'll just have to make the best of the situation'.

10D Reversive

Bám kèngdà túumdě.

Paké yǎ i lívddàmbá.

The reversion suffix /-g/ has two functions: (1) negative, and (2) directive. The negative reversion indicates the opposite or negative of the verb base, e.g., /paga/, 'close', vs. /paka/, 'open', as in the second sentence above, 'Please open your books.' (/pákà/ is from /pág/ plus /-ga/). The directive reversion indicates direction away from or off of, e.g., /kèndà/, 'go', vs. /kèngdà/, 'go away', as in the first sentence above, 'They are leaving for work', or /maanaga/, 'do away', 'do work', i.e., 'fix (up)', 'repair', 'arrange'.

10.1 Expansion Drill

Change to past with /dá/.

M kótà yǎm sùgdì.

Yǎm ká wá tumdè yé.

¿Ya wánǎ?

Tónd kùtweef sǎàmà mé.

Dě pá sǎam yé.

Bám kèndà túumdě.

Ub báodà bõe túumde.

M kèngdà póst dòogè.

A bée dáagè.

M dá kótà yǎm sùgdì.

Yǎm dà ká wá tumdè yé.

¿Dá ya wǎna?

Tónd kùtweef dà sǎàmà mé.

Dě dà pá sǎam ye.

Bám dà kèndà túumdě.

Ub dá baoda bõe túumde.

M dá kèngdà póst dòogè.

A dá bee dáagè.

10.2 Substitution Drill

M túumdà né bàm.	I work for/with him.
<u>A</u> túumdà né bàm.	He works for/with him.
A <u>kéngà</u> túumdě.	He has gone to work.
<u>Ub</u> kéngà túumdě.	They have left for work.
Ub <u>kéndà</u> túumdě.	They are on the way to work.
Ub <u>kéngdà</u> túumdě.	He is leaving for work.
Ub <u>bée mám</u> tuumdě.	He is in my employ.
<u>Yám</u> bee mám tuumdě.	You are in my employ.
Yám <u>kéndà</u> túumdě né kútweefò.	You ride your bike to work.
Yám kéndà tuumdě <u>né móbilì</u> .	You come to work by car.

10.3 Transformation Drill

Answer the questions negatively.

- ¿A dá kèngà tuumdě bí?
 Áyò, a dá pà kèng túumdě yé.
- ¿A dá maanaga kútweef bí?
 Áyò, a dá pà maanag kútweef ye.
- ¿Ub dágè bao lívddám bí?
 Áyò, ub dágè ká báo lívddám yé.
- ¿A da bee póst doogě bí?
 Áyò, a dá kà bé póst dòogě yé.
- ¿A dá sǎǎmà mé bí?
 Áyò, a dá kà sǎǎm yé.
- ¿Yám dà kèngà dáagě bí?
 Áyò, m dá kà kèng daagě yé.
- ¿Ub dá bee lá b yíidě bí?
 Áyò, ub dá kà bée úb yíidě yé.
- ¿A dá ya kádembíig bí?
 Áyò, a dá kà kádembíig yé.
- ¿Bám dà gèsà kóaad bí?
 Áyò, a dá kà gès kóaad yé.
- ¿Yám dà maanaga i vwátuudǎ bí?
 Áyò, m dá kà maanag m vwátuudǎ yé.

Comprehension Drill

Dáwa Tembíl ká wá taotao túumdě yé.

A págǎ dágě n ká láafi yé.

A kútweefǎ dágě n sǎǎmà mé.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Tembíl wáa tuumdě taotao dúnda bí?

Áyò, a ká wá tuumdě taotao dúnda yé.

2. ¿A págǎ ya laafí bí?

Áyò, a pákǎ ya laafí yé.

3. ¿Yá á bwě n mà mé?

A kútweef dágě n sǎǎmà mé.

UNIT 11

Basic Sentences

	-John-	
boola	call, name	
tí	that, which; because	
Yám boondá wǎ tí bwě?	What do you call that?(You call that that/is/what?)	
	-Kúlga-	
kúmde, -bá	eggplant	
Tónd boondá wǎ tí kumba.	We call that eggplant(s).	
	-John-	
M ká wúm yé.	I don't understand.	
bílfu	little, a little	
Góme yǎ bílfbílful.	Speak much slower please.	
	-Kúlga-	
yaasá	again	
Ngée, yeelé yǎ yaasá.	Yes, say it again. /please, repeat/	
	-John-	
Nto.	O.K.	
	-John and Kúlga-	
Tónd boondá wǎ tí kumba.	We call that eggplant.	

USEFUL PHRASES

Boolé yǎ n kǒ má.	Please call (him) for me.
Yeelé yǎ n kǒ má.	Please say (it) for me.
Maané yǎ díibo n kǒ má.	Please fix the/some food for me.
Dá boolé yǎ bām n kǒ d yé.	Please don't call them for us.
Dá suké yǎ bām n kǒ d yé.	Please don't ask them for us.
Dá kóose yǎ b n kǒ d yé.	Please don't sell them for us.

NEW WORDS

kǒǒ	give; to, for
dííbo	food
dá...	Don't (verb)
suka	ask, question, ask for
kóosà	sell

GENERAL NOTES

11A /l/ plus /d/

bóolà bóondà

Stems ending in /-l/ plus a /-d/ suffix regularly have /nd/, e.g., /bool/ plus /-da/ is /boonda/.

11B /wǎ tí/

The sequence /wǎ/ plus noun is not permitted. Therefore /tí/ occurs between /wǎ/ and /bwě/. This is a special function of /tí/ different from its usual function. Thus it is best to consider the sentences containing /wǎ tí/ to be fixed, unalterable units.

/Yǎm boondá wǎ tí bwě?/	'What do you call this?'
/Tónd boondá wǎ tí kúmba./	'We call that eggplant.'

11C /n kǒ mã/ - 'for me'

Boolé yǎ n kǒ mã.

The indirect object in Moré is expressed by /kǒ/ + noun or pronoun. /kǒ/ is a verb. When it introduces the indirect object, it is, of course, the second verb of the sentence. Therefore it is preceded by the verbal connective /n/. (See Unit 20).

11D /Boole yǎ n kǒ mã./

The forms of the pronoun are interesting here. /Boole yǎ/ and /n kǒ mã/ both use medium forms of the pronouns. That is, they are unemphasized and follow the verbs with which they are associated. The form /mǎ/ is an alternate form of /mam/, and the form /yǎ/ is an alternate form of /yam/. In sentence final position either one may occur. In fact, in the recordings accompanying this course /mǎ/ alternates freely with /mam/, and /yǎ/ alternates freely with /yam/ in phrase final position.

Short forms of the pronoun do not end the sentence.

/A ká bóol bá m n kǒ m yé./

He didn't call them for me.

/A bóolà á la me./

He called her.

In the first sentence, the negative marker /-ye/ occurs finally, permitting unemphasized /m/ as the object pronoun. In the second sentence, /la/ and /me/ are added, thus marking /a/ as object pronoun. One exception to this rule is the occurrence of /a/ alone after /kǒ/ when /kǒ/ marks the indirect object.

/Boole yǎ n kǒ a./

Call him for her.

11E Negative Imperative

Dá boolé yǎ bá m n kǒ d yé.

The negative imperative is marked by /dá/ at the beginning of the sentence plus /yé/ at the end of the sentence, as in the sentence above, 'Don't call them for us.'

11.1 Repetition Drill

Dá boolé yǎ yé.

Don't call.

Dá kǎ yǎ yé.

Don't enter.

Dá kǎ yǎ yé.

Don't leave.

Dá suké yǎ yé.

Don't ask.

Dá waé yǎ yé.

Don't come.

Dá tumé yǎ yé.

Don't work.

Dá gǎ yǎ yé.

Don't watch.

Dá sǎ yǎ yé.

Don't ruin it.

11.2 Transformation Drill

Change to negative.

Waé yǎ mam yídè.

Dá waé yǎ mam yídè yé.

A wáa mām yídè.

A ká wá mam yídè yé.

Kǎ yǎ logtód yídè.

Dá kǎ yǎ logtód yídè yé.

A kǎ logtód yídè.

A ká kǎ logtód yídè yé.

Suké yǎ kádèsambá.

Dá suké yǎ kádèsamb yé.

Bám suká kádèsambá.

Bám ká súk kadèsamb yé.

Tumé yǎ dúndà.

Dá tumé yǎ dúnda yé.

Yǎm tumá dúndà.

Yǎm ká túm dúnda yé.

Gése yǎ i bá.

Dá gesé yǎ i bá yé.

Bám gètà i bá.

Bám ka gét i bá yé.

11.3 Substitution Drill

Boolé yǎ n kǒ má.

Call (him) for me.

Suké yǎ n kǒ má.

Ask (him) for me.

Koosé yǎ n kǒ má.

Buy (it) for me.

Maangé yǎ n kǒ má.

Fix (it) for me.

Yeelé yǎ n kǒ má.

Say (it) for me.

Tumé yǎ n kǒ má.

Do (it) for me.

Kadmé yǎ n kǒ má.

Read (it) for me.

Góme yǎ n kǒ má.

Speak/Talk for me.

Page yǎ n kǒ má.

Close (it) for me.

Paké yǎ n kǒ má.

Open (it) for me.

11.4 Transformation Drill

Answer questions affirmatively.

¿Yǎm dà boola bíga bí?

Ngée, m dá boola bígã.

¿Yǎm boondá wǎ tí kúmba bí?

Ngée, id bóondà wǎ tí kúmba.

¿A dá yeela mé yaas bí?

Ngée, a dá yeela mé yaasá.

¿A dá maaná díibo n kǒ d bí?

Ngée, a dá maaná díibo n kǒ dó.

¿Yǎm dà yeela dénd bí?

Ngée, tónd dà yeela dénda.

¿A báo bòè tuumd bí?

Ngée, a báo bòè tuumdé.

¿Yá síd bí?

Ngée, yá sídà.

¿Mam kútweef sããamá mé bí?

Ngée, yãm kútweef sããamá mé.

¿Bám dà bao póst dòog bí?

Ngée, bám bao póst dòogó.

¿Bám kèngà Pádiè bí?

Ngée, bám kèngà Pádiè.

UNIT 12

Basic Sentences

	-Pogsádà-	
yúudè, -yà		given name
¿Yám yúudè?		(What is) your name?
	-Kúlga-	
Mam yúud lá á Kúlga.		My name is Kulga.
	-Pogsádà-	
sonddé, -á		family/last name
¿La i sonddé?		And your last name?
	-Kúlga-	
Kampáooode		Campaore (proper name)
Mam sondd lá á Kámpàooode.		My last name is Campaore.
	-Pogsádà-	
¿Yám yítà yae?		Where are you coming from?
	-Kúlga-	
Mam yítà Bóboè.		I am coming from Bobo.

USEFUL PHRASES

¿Yám yúud lá á bwě?	What is your name?
¿Yám sondd lá á bwě?	What is your family name?
¿Yám yíid bee yae?	Where do you live?
¿Yám yíi téng bug Haute Voltaè?	What region of Upper Volta do you come from?
¿Yám waa dábudè?	When did you arrive?
¿Yám waa wákat bugo?	When did you arrive?
¿Ya ándà n wáa záamè?	Who arrived yesterday?
¿Ya ándà n wáa dábitě?	Who arrived the day before yesterday?
¿Ya ándà n wáa ká?	Who came here?
¿Ya ándà n wáa bé?	Who came there?

NEW WORDS

ténga, * téěse, * témse	country, region, village
bugo	what, which
dáade, -yá'	day, daytime
dabúde	when, what day
wákat	time, hour
ánda, áнна, -dàmbá	who
zaamé	yesterday
dábitě	day before yesterday
ká	here
bé	there

GENERAL NOTES

12A pogsádà: pága: dáwa

/pogsádà, -bà/ means 'young woman', 'young human female'. It applies to both married and unmarried women up to about the age of twenty-five. /pága/, 'human female', and /dáwa/, 'human male' apply to all members of the appropriate sex without regard to age.

12B /yítà/: /yíi/

¿Yám yítà yae?

¿Yám yíi teng bug Haute Voltaě?

The imperfective /yítà/ is usually understood to mean very recent departure, e.g., /¿Yám yítà yae?/, 'Where are you coming from?', 'Where have you just arrived from?' The perfective /yíi/ is usually understood to mean origin, e.g., /¿Yám yíi teng bug Haute Voltaě?/, 'What region of Upper Volta do you come from?', 'What is your home region in Upper Volta?'

12C Stem of /ténga/: /témse/

Before the velars (k,g), /m/ is /n/, and as given in Note 3C /n/ is [ŋ] before velar stops. The stem of /ténga/ is /tém-/ , as can be seen in the plural /témse/, 'regions', 'villages'.

12D Alternation of Vowel plus Consonant with Long Nasal Vowel.

témse téése

Stems ending in a vowel plus a nasal consonant (m, n) that are followed by the ending /-se/ have an alternate shape with a long or double nasal vowel and no nasal consonant, e.g., /témse/ has the alternate shape /téése/ both meaning 'regions', 'villages'.

It is reported that some speakers also have the same type of alternation before /-ga/, e.g., /ténga/ has the alternate shape /tééga/, but the speaker on whose speech these materials are based uses only /ténga/, 'region', 'village'.

12.1 Substitution Drill

M wáa <u>záamè</u> .	I arrived yesterday.
M wáa <u>dábitě</u> .	I arrived the day before yesterday.
M wáa <u>yíbeoogă</u> .	I arrived this morning.
M wáa <u>dúnda</u> .	I arrived today.
M wáa <u>zaábdă</u> .	I arrived this afternoon.
M wáa <u>wíntoogă</u> .	I arrived this noon.
M wáa <u>yúngă</u> .	I arrived this evening.

12.2 Transformation Drill

Answer the questions according to the cues. Note: Strangers use honorifics.

Yám yúud lá á bwě?	Tónd yúud lá á <u>Sékù</u> .
Yám sondd lá á bwě?	Tónd sondd lá á <u>Weddaoogo</u> .
Yám ylid bee yae?	Tónd ylid bee <u>Wágdugě</u> .
Yám yli téng bug Haute Voltaě?	Tónd yli <u>Wayùgiyě</u> .
Yám waa dábudě?	Tónd waa <u>záamè</u> .
Yám waa wákat bugo?	Tónd waa <u>zaábdă</u> .

¿Yám tumdá bwě?

Tónd ya díplomatè.

¿Ya ándà n wáa záamè?

Ya tónd Ambassadeur waa záamè.

¿Ya ándà n kénga Pádíè?

Ya Pogsádà Mádía n k'èngà Pádíè.

¿Ya ándà n dágè n ya yám kadnsambá?

Ya Dáwa Kampáooode dágè n ya tónd kadnsambá.

12.3 Substitution Drill

M kútweef sǎǎmá mé.

My bicycle won't work.

M móbil sǎǎmá mé.

My car has broken down.

M móbil ká bé ká yé.

My car isn't here.

M síd ká bé ká yé.

My husband isn't here.

M síd yuud la á Kúlga.

My husband's name is Kulga.

M bíig yuud la á Kúlga.

My child's name is Kulga.

M bíig dóogà Wágdugè.

My child was born at Ouagadougou.

M bá doogá Wágdugè.

My father was born at Ouagadougou.

M bá yítà Wágdugè.

My father is coming from Ouagadougou.

M zoa yítà Wágdugè.

My friend is coming from Ouagadougou.

Comprehension Drill 1

Mam yúud la á Kúka la m sondd lá á Wedáooogò. M yá díplomatè. M túmdà Wágdugè la m dóogà New Yorkè.

Questions: Answer the questions as if the information given in the Comprehension Drill pertained to you.

1. ¿Yám yuud lá á bwě?

Mam yúud la á Kúka.

2. ¿La yám sondd lá á bwě?

Mam sondd lá á Wedáooogò.

3. ¿Yám tumdá bwě túumà?

Mam yá díplomatè.

4. ¿Yám tumdá yae?

Mam túmdà Wágdugè.

5. ¿La yám doogá téng bugo?

M dóogà New Yorkè.

UNIT 13

Basic Sentences-Kúlga-

bananá, -dám̀bà, *bananá̀dám̀bá
 ǃYám̃ koosdá́ b́anana wǎ́ wánwana?

banana

For how much do you sell these bananas?

-Pogsáda-

wakídè, -yà
 Bananá wǎ́ yá tǎǎb wakídè.

five-franc coin or bill

These bananas are three for five francs. These bananas are three for a wakire.

-Kúlga-

bii
 wae

be ripe, grown, adult

really; question marker. (see Note 13C).

ǃUb b́íi m(é) wae?

Are they really ripe?

-Pogsáda-

Ngée, ub b́íi mé.

Yes, they are really ripe.

USEFUL PHRASES

A kóodà pápaidám̀bá.

He grows papaya.

A kóodà góayavdám̀bá.

He grows guava.

A kóodà mángòdódám̀bá.

He grows mango.

Lembúyà lígd yá tóog wúsgo.

The oranges are too expensive.

Síbà lígd yá tóog wúsgo.

The grapes are too expensive.

Táamà lígd yá tóog wúsgo.

The karités are too expensive.

A kóosdà mé.

He sells (it).

It is for sale.

A kóodà mé.

He is cultivating.

It is being cultivated.

A b́útà mé.

He is planting (them).

It is being planted.

A b́údà mé.

He planted (them)

It has been/is planted.

A dáadà mé.

He is buying (it).
It is available for purchase.

A daa mé.

He sold (it).
It was sold.

NEW WORDS

pápayà, -dàmbá	papaya
góayavà, -dàmbá	guava
mángòdó, * mǎngòdódàmbá	mango
lembúdi, -yà	orange
ligdi	money
tóogo, -dó	hard, difficult, strong, painful
síbde, -á	grape
táamà, -sè	karité
kóo	cultivate, weed
mée	build with adobe or mortar
buda	plant
daa	buy, purchase

GENERAL NOTES

13A Noun plus Adjective.

Bánana wǎ yá tǎǎb wakíde.

Bánana wǎ yá yímd wakíyà á tǎǎbó.

Adjectives follow their nouns. In the first sentence above, 'These bananas are three for a wakire', /tǎǎb/, 'three', does not modify /wakíde/ since it precedes /wakíde/. In the second sentence above, 'These bananas are one for three wakide', /tǎǎbó/ follows /wakíyà/.

13B ǃUb bí m(é) wae?

The vowel of /mé/ often does not occur if there is another word after it. However, almost never would /m/, 'I', 'me', be confused with /m/, 'somewhere', because the /m/ of /mé/ is always followed by an interrogative adverb such as /wae/ or a conjunction such as /tí/, whereas /m/, 'I', 'me', always precedes a noun or verb or is followed by /la/.

13C /wae/

/wae/ is a question marker which occurs at the end of a sentence and means, 'Is it really true that...?'

13D Alternate Translations of Some Verbs

/A kóosdà mé./

/A dáadà mé.

Some verbs may be translated as active or passive depending on the context. Thus /A kóosdà mé/ may be 'he sells', 'he is selling', or 'it is for sale'. /A dáadà mé/ may be 'he is buying', 'it is being bought', or 'it is available for purchase'.

This is not the only method for expressing the passive in Moré. There is also an 'impersonal they'. The relative clarity in context governs the choice.

/Ub kóosdà lembúya./

They sell oranges. Or: Oranges are sold.

13E Alternation of /i/ and /y/.

A kóodà pápaidàmbá.

Before another vowel /i/ is [y] and is /y/ in this manual, e.g., /pápaya/; but /i/ is [i] as the second member of a diphthong, e.g., /pápaidàmbá/, 'papayas'.

13.1 Substitution Drill

Pápaidàmbá bíi la mé.

These papaya are ripe.

Mángòdòdàmbá bíi la mé.

These mangos are ripe.

Mángòdòdàmbá buda mé.

These mangos have been planted.

Táamsà búda mé.

These karité have been planted.

Táamsà kóosà mé.

These karité have been sold.

Lembúyà kóosà mé.

These oranges have been sold.

Lembúyà lígd yá tooóg wúsgo.

The oranges are too expensive.

Síbà lígd yá tooóg wúsgo.

These grapes are too expensive.

Síbà kóosdà mé.

These grapes are in salable condition.

Bananádàmbá koosda mé.

These bananas are in salable condition.

13.2 Transformation Drill

Answer the questions, fitting the cues into the questions.

¿Yám koosdá bánana wã wánwana?

Bananá wã ya tããb wakídè.

- ¿Ub bíí mé wae?
Ngée, ub bíí la mé.
- ¿Ub kóosdà bánandámá ká bí?
Áyò, ub ká kóosd bánándám ká yé?
- ¿Ub búdá pápaydám bí?
Ngée, ub búdá pápaydám.
- ¿Yám yíi teng bug Ámèdiké?
Tónd yíi New Yorké.
- ¿Yám waa Wágdugé dábudé?
Tónd waa Wágdugé záamè.
- ¿Ya ándà n waa zaame,
Yá Dáwa Smith n waa záamè.
- ¿Yám yíid bee yae?
Tónd yíid bee Washingtoné.
- ¿Yám yuud lá á bwé?
Tónd yuud la a John Jones.
- ¿M vwátuudà máanagà mé bí?
Áyò, yám vwátuudà ká máanagà yé.

13.3 Transformation Drill

Answer the questions, fitting the cues into the questions.

- ¿Lembúdà bíí m(é) wae?
Áyò, a ká bíí yé.
- ¿A waa m(é) wae?
Ngée, a waa la mé.
- ¿Yám boondá wá tí bwé?
Tónd boondá wá tí taama.
- ¿Yám wumá mé bí?
Ngée, m wumà mé.
- ¿Yám kéndà yae?
Tónd kéndà Padíè.
- ¿Yám maandá bwé?
M yá kádèmbííga.
- ¿Logtódylid bee yae?
Logtódylid bee bé.
- ¿Yá sídà?
Ngée, yá sídà.

¿M bòè bée yae?

Yám bòè bee dáagè.

¿Kúmba wǎ dá bíi m(é) wae?

Áyò, ub ká ká bíi yé.

Comprehension Drill 1

Pogsádà Elízabet tada pápai néede.

A kóosda b la á yí wakídè.

A pápaidàmbá bíi wúsgo.

Questions:

1. ¿Pogsádà Elízabet tada bwě?

A táda pápai néede.

2. ¿A pápaidàmbá ya néed bí?

Ngée, ub yá néede.

3. ¿A kóosda b la wánwana?

A kóosda b la á yí wakídè.

4. ¿A pápaidàmbá bíi mé bí?

Ngée, ub bíi wúsgo.

13F Alternation of /-ǎ/ and /-à/.

Táamsà búda mé.

Lembúyà kóosà mé.

M pága waa mé.

In Note 1E it was shown that final vowels of most words are elided, and in Note 6D /-ǎ/ was given as the definite suffix for nouns. After a consonant /-ǎ/ often is an oral vowel, i.e., /-à/. This is most readily apparent in nouns that don't end in /-a/, such as /táamsè/, 'karités', vs. /táamsà/, 'these karités', as in the first sentence above, 'These karités have (already) been planted'; but it is also apparent in /Lembúyà kóosà mé/, 'These oranges have been sold', because 'The oranges have been sold', is /Lembúíi koosa mé/. Nouns preceded by possessive pronouns also have /-à/ or occasionally the alternate form /-ǎ/, e.g., the third sentence above, 'My wife has arrived', literally 'That wife of mine has arrived'.

UNIT 14

Basic Sentences: Kulga still at the market

-Kúlga-

díkà
M nǎǎ n dík ub la mé.
Ad wákiyà tǎǎb déndà.

take
I'll take them.
Here are fifteen francs. Here are
three wakires.

-Pogsádà-

lénga, * lémse

Adé i lénga.

matabiche, tip, gratuity
something extra given as an
incentive to buy
Here's something extra for you.

-Kúlga-

púusà

bádkà
M púusà yǎm bádkà.
Wénǎm
Wénǎ kǒ d béeogo.

greet, salute, show honor
or respect
thanks, blessing
Thank you very much.
God
Good bye. (May God give us to-
morrow.)

-Pogsádà-

Wénǎ kǒ d béeogo.

Good bye.

USEFUL PHRASES

I bádkà.
Naabá
I kábdè.
Áyò, ká búm yé.

Thank you.
You're welcome
Excuse me.
I beg your pardon.
Don't mention it.
It's nothing.

Yǎm tǒǒ m peká fút bí?
Yǎm tǒǒ n depasá fút bí?
Yǎm tǒǒ m maaná díib bí?

Can you do washing?
Can you do ironing?
Do you know how to cook?

NEW WORDS

kábdè	excuse, pardon
tóógà	be(come) master of; be capable of, be able to, can
peka	wash
fúugu, -tú	cloth; (pl.) clothes
dépasà	iron
díibo	food

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

píig la á yimbé	11
píig la á yilibú	12
píig la á tããbó	13
píig la á naasé	14
píig la á nú	15
píig la á yoobé	16
píig la á yopoe	17
píig la á níi	18
píig la á wae	19
písi	20
písi la á yimbé	21

GENERAL NOTES

14A Saying Thanks.

I bádkà

Naabá

M púusdà yãm bádkà

The usual way of saying, 'Thank you' is /I bádkà/, and the response is /Naabá/. One can say /I bádk wúsgo/, 'Thank you very much', but if one wishes to be especially polite, one can say /M púusdà yãm bádkà/, 'I greet/honor your thanks/blessing.'

14B I kábdè

Áyò, ká búm yé.

To excuse oneself for a social blunder such as stepping on another person's foot or bumping into another person, one says /I kábdè/, 'Excuse me', and the

response is /Áyò, ká búm yé./. To ask another person to move out of the way so one can pass, one also says /I kábdè/, but usually there is no verbal response in this case. To interrupt someone, one also says /I kábdè/ plus an appropriate greeting. The response will usually be /Waé yǎ/, 'Come (in)', or /Kéé yǎ/, 'Enter', plus an appropriate greeting.

14C /toě n/ plus another verb

/toě/ is an auxilliary verb like /nǎǎ/ in Unit 6. All auxilliary verbs end in nasal vowels. All are followed by /n/ and another verb in its perfective form. (See Unit 26.)

/Yǎm <u>tóě n</u> peka fút bí?/	Can you do washing?
/Mam wáa mé balá, n <u>nǎǎ</u>	I just came to see you.
<u>n gés</u> yǎm./	

14.1 Substitution Drill

M táda wákii píig la á yimbde.
M táda wákii píig la á yiibú.
M táda wákii píig la á tǎǎbó.
M táda wákii píig la á naasé.
M táda wákii píig la á nú.
M táda wákii píig la á yoobé.
M táda wákii píig la á yopoe.
M táda wákii píig la á níi.
M táda wákii píig la á wae.
M táda wákii písi.

14.2 Substitution Drill

A sǎǎmà a fúugù.	He tore his clothes.
A sǎǎmà <u>túumde</u> .	He bungled the job.
A sǎǎmà <u>díibo</u> .	He ruined the food.
M <u>maaná</u> díibo.	I fixed the food.
M <u>maaná</u> <u>fútù</u> .	I made the clothes.
<u>Bám nǎǎ</u> n daa fútù.	They are going to buy some clothes.
<u>Bám nǎǎ</u> n daa <u>kútweefò</u> .	They are going to buy a bicycle.
<u>Ub nǎ</u> m maanga <u>kútweefò</u> .	They have just repaired the bicycle.
<u>Ub nǎ</u> m maanga <u>d vwátuudǎ</u> .	They have just repaired our car.
<u>Péke yǎ</u> d vwátuudǎ.	Wash our car please.

14.3 Transformation Drill

¿Yám tǒǒ m kengá yíbeooga bí?

Ngée, m tǒǒ m kengá.

¿Yám tǒǒ n depasá fút bí?

Áyò, m ká tǒǒ n depas fút yé.

¿A tádà wákíí písí bí?

Áyò, a ká tád wákíí pís yé.

¿Ub náǎ n dík ub la me?

Ngée, ub náǎ n dík ub la mé.

¿Yám dà daa bwě?

N dá daa lémbuyà.

¿A dá tumda bwě.

A dá butá kúmba.

¿Yám dík ub la mé bí?

Áyò, m ká dík ub yé.

¿Yám dà boadá bóè bí?

Ngée, m dá boadá bóè.

¿Ya ándà n wáa zaamé?

Yá m bá la m ma wáa zaamé.

¿Yám kèngà yae dúnda?

M kèngà dáagě dúnda.

14D The past tense marker /dá/

/¿A dá tumda bwě?/

/Dá/, preceded by a subject, marks the past tense. It has no other function. Past tense verbs, however, have a variety of translations into English depending on the possible verbal endings. Some of these are:

/A tuma mé./

He worked.

/A dá tuma mé./

He had worked.

/A tumda mé./

He is working.

/A dá tumda me.../

He was working...

The possible combinations of /dá/ plus a verb are treated in Units 23 through 25.

Comprehension Drill 1

Dáwa Sékù díkà bánana á nú, kúmb píig, lembúyà á yoobe, la mǎngòdódambá á tǎǎ. Pogsádà Elizabet sũũd yí noog wúsgo, t(í) a kǒ Dáwa Sékù lénga.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà bánana á nú bí?
Ngée, a díkà bánana á nú.
2. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà bánana wǎna?
A díkà bánana á nú.
3. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà kúmb píig bí?
Ngée, a díkà kúmb píiga.
4. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà kúmb wǎna?
A díkà kúmb píiga.
5. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà lémbui á yoobe.
Ngée, a díkà lémbui á yoobe.
6. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà lémbui wǎna?
A díkà lémbui á yoobe.
7. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà mǎngòdó á tǎǎ bí?
Ngée, a díkà mǎngòdó á tǎǎbó.
8. ¿Dáwa Sékù díkà mǎngòdó wǎna?
A díkà mǎngòdó á tǎǎbó.
9. ¿Pogsada Elizabet sũũd yí noog bí?
Ngée, a sũũd yí noog wúsgo.

UNIT 15

Basic Sentences

	-Kúlga-	
taksí, -dàmbá		taxi
sóo		own, possess
Taksí soabà!		Chauffeur!
dálgà		want; require; intend; about to
ótel, -dàmbá		hotel
M dátě n kengá ótelě.		I want to go to a hotel.
	-Taksísoabà-	
¿Ótel bugò?		Which hotel?
	-Kúlga-	
Indépendance Hòtelě.		Independence Hotel.
	-Taksísoabà-	
valízè, -dàmbá		suitcase, valise
¿Yám tadá válizdám wána?		How many suitcases do you have?
	-Kúlga-	
Mam tádà válizdám á yilibú.		I have two suitcases.
kéěsà		put in
púga, -sé		inside, interior
Kéěse yá fãã móbila pugě.		Put them all in the car.
	-Taksísoabà-	
bí		after that; well then
kénà		go, travel, walk
Bí d kéne.		O.K., let's go.

(Arriving at the Independence Hotel)

	-Kúlga-	
¿A lígd yá wána?		How much (money) is it?

-Taksísoabà-

Wakíi pís náasè.

200 francs.

-Kúlga-

Adé i lígdi.

Here's your money.

USEFUL PHRASES

Tónd sígà m ma yíidè.

I'm staying at my mother's.

Tónd sígà m bá Jones yíidè.

We are staying with our friends the Jones.

Tónd sígà Central Hôtelè.

We are staying at the Central Hotel.

M básà m téed gádè.

I left my things at the station.

M básà m válizdàmbá a silg yíidè.

I left my luggage at the airport.

M básà m yíiddàm Dákadè.

I left my family in Dakar.

Bám dátè n kengá mé.

They are about to leave.

Bám dátè n gusá mé.

They are about to go to bed.

Bám dátè n yiká mé.

They are about to get up.

NEW WORDS

sígà

descend, come down; stay/put up at

basa

leave, permit, abandon

teogo, * teedo

thing, something; affair

gádè, -dàmbá

station, terminal

gusa

go to bed/sleep

yika

get/stand up; leave

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

pístà

30

pístà la yímbdè

31

písnaasè

40

písnaas la yimbde

41

písnu

50

písnu la yimbde

51

písyobé

60

písyopoe	70
písniì	80
píswàe	90
koabgá	100

GENERAL NOTES

15A Verb + Verb Constructions

M dátě n kenga otelě.

/datě/ may occur as the first verb in a verb + verb construction.

/datě/ corresponds roughly to the English verb, 'want', including also the idea of immediate action on the desire. Thus /M dátě n kenga otelě./ may be translated as: 'I want to go to the hotel', or 'I am about to go to the hotel.'

15B Transitivevizer /-s/.

Kěese yǎ b fǎǎ móbilà púgě.

Intransitive verbs such as /kěě/, 'enter', 'come in', can be transitivized by the suffix /-s/, e.g., /kěěsà/, 'put in/at', 'make/cause to come in /approach', e.g., the sentence above, 'Put them all in the car', and /M kěěsà á la mé/, 'I had him come in.' This is one of several ways of forming causatives in Moré.

15C Location

Kěese yǎ b fǎǎ móbilà púgě.

The locative suffix /-ě/, 'in', 'at', is a bit vague. To specify location more exactly, a compound noun with a second element such as /púga/, 'inside', 'interior', is used, as in the sentence above, 'Put them all in(side) the car.' Compare /séaaga, -sé/, 'side', in /Kěese yǎ b fǎǎ móbilàséaagě/, 'Put them all in/at the car-side.'

15D Cohortative: /Bí/.

The cohortative or first person imperative is marked by a short form of the first person plural pronoun /-d/ plus the imperative ending /-è/. /Bí/, 'then', always with the cohortative, e.g., /Bí d kéne/, 'Let's go'. Usually there is no point in translating /Bí/.

With a second person imperative, /Bí/ would not be used the first time, e.g., if someone asked permission to enter but was asked to wait, one would then say /Bí i kěě yǎ/, 'Please come in now'. Also if giving a series of commands, one can use /Bí/, 'after that', 'then', with the second and following commands.

15.1 Substitution Drill

Bám tadá válizdàmb á tããbó.
 Bám tadá b válizdàmb yíidě.
 M basà m válizdàmb yíidě.
 M basà m yíiddàm Dákadě.
 M basà m pág m ma yíidě.
 M basà m téed gádě.
 Tónd sigà m ma yíidě.
 Tónd sigà Wágdugě.
 Tónd sigà m bá Weddáoog yíidě.
 Tónd sigà Indépendance Hôtelě.

They have three suitcases.
 They have their suitcases at home.
 I left my suitcases at home.
 I left my family in Dakar.
 I left my wife at my mother's house.
 I left my things at the station.
 We are staying at my mother's place.
 We are staying in Ouadougou.
 We are staying with our friends the Ouedraogo's.
 We have put up at the Independence Hotel.

15.2 Transformation Drill

¿Yám sigà yae?
 Tónd sigà Indépendance Hôtelě.
 ¿Yám dátě n kengá mé bí?
 Ngée, tónd dátě n kengá mé.
 ¿Yám basá i téed yae?
 Tónd basá id téed gádě.
 ¿A dátě n gusá mé bí?
 Áyò, a ká dátě n gus yé,
 ¿A kěēsà téedà yae?
 A kěēsà téedà móbilà púgě.
 ¿Yám tadá válizdàm wána?
 Tónd tadá válizdàmb á naasé.

¿Taksiwà kèngà yae?

Taksiwà kèngà a silg yíidè.

¿Bám dátè n yiká mé bí?

Ngée, báám dátè n yiká mé.

¿A sígà Central Hôtelè wae?

Ngée, a sígà Central Hôtelè.

¿A nǎǎ n kèngà dúnda bí?

Ngée, a nǎǎ n kèngà dúnda.

Comprehension Drill 1

Taksiwàdám dátà lígd wúsgo.

Yíbeogǎ m zóa Sékù kèngà Indépendance Hôtelè.

La a kǒǒ taksiwà sóab wákíí pístǎ la yopoe.

Questions:

- ¿Taksiwàdám dátà lígd wúsgo bí?
Ngée, taksiwàdám dátà lígd wúsgo.
- ¿Yíbeogǎ m zóa Sékù kèngà Indépendance Hôtelè bí?
Ngée, yíbeogǎ m zóa Sékù kèngà Indépendance Hôtelè.
- ¿A Sékù dátè n kengá ótel bugo?
A dátè n kengá Indépendance Hôtelè.
- ¿La kǒǒ taksiwà sóab wákíí wána?
A kǒǒ taksiwà sóab wákíí pístǎ la yopoe.

Comprehension Drill 2

Yíbeogǎ yaasá Dáwa Kúk dákà táksì nǎǎ n tugǒ n gés Pogsádà Elizabet.

La a kǒǒ taksiwà sóab wákíí písi la yímbdè.

Dáwa Kúk ká táad lígd wúsgo yé.

Questions:

- ¿Yíbeogǎ Dáwa Kúk díkà táksì bí?
Ngée, a díkà táksì.
- ¿Yíbeogǎ Dáwa Kúk tugǒ n gesà Pogsádà Elizabet bí?
Ngée, yíbeogǎ Dáwa Kúk tugǒ n gésà Pogsada Elizabet.
- ¿La a kǒǒ taksiwà sóab wákíí wǎǎ?
A kǒǒ taksiwà sóab wákíí písi la yímbdè.
- ¿Dáwa Kúk táad lígd wúsgo bí?
Áyò, Dáwa Kúk ká táad lígd wúsgo yé.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

INTRODUCTION TO CYCLE TWO

UNITS 16 - 37

Cycle 2 presents the major grammatical points of the language. There are extensive drills relating to every note in this section. These drills are designed to illustrate the possibilities of expression so that the student of Moré can use the language beyond memorized expressions.

With that end in mind, each grammatical point is presented as a repetition drill to illustrate it. The subsequent drills are designed to put the student on his own using the one particular structure. Wherever possible, the sentences of the drills are contextually related to facilitate comprehension and to further clarify the function of the grammatical point. The comprehension drills at the end of each unit represent the greatest student independence that can be written into a course. The student should work through it so carefully that he can retell it in his own good use of Moré.

We believe that any student has only mastered those things which he has used independently. Therefore, the grammatical points and the vocabulary are put to immediate use in the comprehension drills. Difficulty in this last drill of every unit indicates the need for review.

It is fondly hoped that the units of this cycle are so carefully organized that the student will feel free to use all the material in his own conversation once he has mastered it. He should, of course, restrict himself to the lesson material. An unquenchable thirst for knowledge of Moré should lead to 100% mastery per unit followed by advancement to further units. It should not lead to research in a dictionary or request for words from other sources. Too great a burden of supplementary information leads to imperfect mastery of all information. Thorough control of a small amount is the solid foundation to build on.

UNIT 16

Basic Sentences

-John-

Yám gòmdà mé	you speak
¿Yám gòmdà bwě?	What do you speak?
¿Yám gòmdà bwě góamà?	What languages do you speak?
¿Yám gòmdà bwě góam yám ténga?	What languages do you speak in your country?

-Kúlga-

Tónd gòmdà mé	we speak
Tónd gòmdà Móòdè.	We speak Moré.
Bámbadande	Bambara
Bámbadande la Sílmìidi	Bambara and Fula
Tónd gòmdà Móòdè, Bámbadande la Sílmìidi.	We speak Moré, Bambara and Fula.

-John-

Yám gòmdà Fídàse.	You speak French.
¿Yám gòmdà Fídàs mé bí?	Do you also speak French?

-Kúlga-

Ká wúsg ye	not much
M gòmdà Fídàse.	I speak French.
Ngée, m gòmdà Fídàse, la ká wúsg ye.	Yes, I speak French but not much.

-John-

¿Yám gòmdà Anglès mé bí?	Do you also speak English?

-Kúlga-

m gòmdà Fídàse	I speak French
la ká Angles ye	but not English
Áyò, m gòmdà Fídàse la ká Ángles ye.	No, I speak French but not English.
¿Yám zamsá Móòd yae?	Where did you learn Moré?

-John-

M zàmsà Mòòd Amédika.

I learned Moré in America.

La m pá gomd Mood wúsg ye.

But I don't speak Moré much.

-Kúlga-

Yám góm̃da Mòòd needé!

You speak Moré well!

-John-

nédà

person

Yám ya né sungo

You are a nice person.

Yám ya né sung wúsgo.

You are a very nice person.

16.1A Repetition Drill

Practice: A feature of tone

Directions: All of the following words are like /gésà/ of Unit 9.

Yám gésa mé.

You saw.

Tónd góm̃da mé.

We speak.

A díka mé.

He took.

Ub kéndà mé.

They are going.

m yíidì

my house

Yám kóotà mé.

You beg.

A dátà mé.

She wants.

Yám yuudè?

Your name?

Tónd yíta mé.

We are leaving.

16.1B Repetition Drill

Practice: Tonal feature.

Directions: All of the following words are like /waa/ of Unit 9.

Yám boondá mé.

You are calling.

A bóondà mé.

He is calling.

Tónd koosdá mé.

We sell.

A kóosdà mé.

She sells.

Yám sǎǎmá mé.

You had an accident.

M sǎǎmà mé.

I had an accident.

Tónd wumá mé.

We understand.

Ub wúmà mé.

They understand.

Yám zamsá mé.	You taught, learned.
Mam zamsà mé.	I taught, learned.
Tónd míi mé.	We know.
A míi mé.	He knows.
Tónd logtódè.	Our doctor.
Mam lógtòdé.	My doctor.

16.10 Note: tones

All Moré words belong to either one of two tone classes: the high class or the low class. Moré function words (conjunctions, tense markers, noun markers) have one vowel sequence and consequently one tone. Lexical words (nouns and verbs) have two vowel sequences: the stem vowel(s) and the ending vowel(s). The tone class is part of the stem-vowel sequence.

The following notations are used in this text:

// high pitch
 /\ low pitch
 /' mid pitch

The tone class will not be marked in this text. The pitch variations as described below are marked:

The low class

After low pitch, a low class word sounds high. After high pitch, a low class word sounds low.

/Ub wúmà mé./ - They understand.

/Tónd wuma mé./ - We understand.

The high class

After low pitch, a high class word sounds high. After high pitch, a high class word sounds high, level with the previous high pitch.

/Ámadu gésà mé./ - Amadu saw.

/Ub gésà mé./ - They saw.

The distinction between high-class and low class is evident after high pitch but not after low pitch.

The mid tone

In some positions in the sentence, words of two vowel sequences are shortened to one vowel sequence. The second sequence is lost. This vowel loss alters pitch occurrence in the phrase under the following conditions only:

1. If the shortened word originally had the pitches high plus low,

2. If the next word, immediately following the shortened word, belongs to the high tone class,

3. then the second high is slightly lower than the first high.

/yǎmbà/ - you /gésà/ - saw

/Yǎm gésà mé./ - You saw.

16.1D Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Yǎm gésà mé.	Yǎm gésà mé.
a	A gésà mé.
yíidì	a yíidì
tónd	tónd yíidè
díkà mé	Tónd díkà mé.
ub	Ub díkà mé.
kóotà mé	Ub kóotà mé.
kéndà mé	Ub kéndà mé
mam	Mam kéndà mé.
gómdà mé	Mam gómdà mé.
dátà mé	Mam dátà mé.
yǎm	Yǎm dátà mé.
yúudè	Yǎm yúudè
gómdà mé	Yǎm gómdà mé.
gésà mé	Yǎm gésà mé.

16.1E Substitution Drill

Practice: Tonal features in random order.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Yǎm gésà mé.	Yǎm gésà mé.
boondá mé	Yǎm boondá mé.
mam	Mam bóondà mé.
dátà	Mam dátà mé.
tónd	Tónd dátà mé.
koosdá mé	Tónd koosdá mé.
ub	Ub kóosdà mé.
díkà mé	Ub díkà mé.

Yám	Yám díkà mé.
maandá mé	Yám maandá mé.
a	A maándà mé.
kéngà mé	A kéngà mé.
tónd	Tónd kèngà mé.
sǎǎmá mé	Tónd sǎǎmá mé.
mam	Mam sǎǎmà mé.
yíidì	mam yíidì
yám	yám yíidì
wumá mé	Yám wumá mé.
ub	Ub wumà mé.
yítà mé	Ub yítà mé.
tónd	Tónd yíta mé.
zamsá mé	Tónd zamsá mé.
a	A zámsà mé.
gésà mé	A gésà mé.
yám	Yám gésà mé.

16.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Short forms of nouns

¿Yám gòmdà mé bí?	Are you talking?
¿Yám gòmdà Móòd bí?	Do you speak Moré?
Ngée, mam gòmdà Móòdè.	Yes, I speak Moré.
¿Yám díkà lémbùd bí?	Did you take the orange?
¿Yám díkà mé bí?	Did you take it?
Ngée, m díkà lembúdè.	Yes, I took the orange.
¿Yám kèngà mé bí?	Did you go?
¿Yám kèngà Fídàs bí?	Did you go to France?
Ngée, m kèngà Fídàse.	Yes, I went to France.
Yám zamsá Móòd a Kúlg bí?	Did you teach Moré to Kulga?
Ngée, m zámsà Móòd a Kúlgà.	Yes, I taught Moré to Kulga.

16.2B Note: Lexical Words, long and short forms.

Nouns and verbs have long and short forms just as pronouns do. (See Unit 1.) The long form of nouns and verbs has two vowel sequences; the short form, has only one.

/gómɔ̀dà/ - speaks, long form

/gómɔ̀d/ - speaks, short form

The position in the sentence of long and short forms is the same for nouns, verbs and pronouns. Short forms indicate close connection between themselves and a following word. Short forms never end a phrase. Short forms always signal 'more to come'.

Short form positions are the following:

1. Subject in subject verb phrase,

/A Kúka/ - proper name

/A Kúk gómɔ̀dà Mòòdè./ - Kuka speaks Moré.

2. First noun of noun noun phrase,

/Mòòdé/ - Moré language

/M zámàsà Mòòd Amédikà./ - I learned Moré in America.

3. Between the /ká/ and /ye/ of negative sentences,

/gómɔ̀dà/ /Mòòdé/ /wúsgo/

/M pá gómɔ̀d Mòòd wúsg ye./ - I don't speak much Moré.

4. Between the /sǎ/ and /wǎ/ of conditional sentences (See Unit 22).

5. After the conjunction /la/ (See Unit 17.),

6. Nouns followed by question markers,

/ǃYǎm zámàsà Mòòd yae?/ - Where did you learn Moré?

/ǃYǎm gómɔ̀dà Mòòd bí?/ - Do you speak Moré?

The realization of the short form may be either loss of vowel or metathesis. /wúsg-/ and /wúsog/ are alternate pronunciations of the same short form.

16.2C Response Drill

Practice: Vowel occurrence.

Directions: Answer the questions affirmatively.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
ǃYǎm gómɔ̀dà Mòòd bí?	Ngée, m gómɔ̀dà Mòòdè.
ǃA Sékù gómɔ̀dà Anglès bí?	Ngée, a gómɔ̀dà anglésì.
ǃA Kúk kèngà Fídàs bí?	Ngée, a kèngà fídàsẽ.
ǃYǎm kèngà Amédik bí?	Ngée, mam kèngà Amédikà.
ǃUb díkà lémbùd bí?	Ngée, ub díkà lembúde.
ǃUb díkà lígd bí?	Ngée, ub díkà lígdì.
ǃA Kúk sǎàmà kútwèef bí?	Ngée, a sǎàmà kutwéefò.
ǃUb yítà Fídàs bí?	Ngée, ub yítà fídàsẽ.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
¿Yám koosdá banán bí?	Ngée, m kóosdà banánǎ.
¿Yám dátà lembúd bí?	Ngée, m dátà lembúde.

16.2D Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Vowel occurrence in questions and statements.

Directions: The instructor makes a statement. A student changes it to a question, and another student answers it.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
Mam díkà lígdì.	¿Yám díkà lígd bí?	Ngée, mam díkà lígdì.
Mam díkà lembúde.	¿Yám díkà lembúd bí?	Ngée, mam díkà lembúde.
Mam kèngà Amédikà.	¿Yám kèngà Ámedik bí?	Ngée, mam kèngà Amédikà.
Mam kèngà Fidǎsě.	¿Yám kèngà Fidǎs bí?	Ngée, mam kèngà Fidǎsě.
Mam gómà Mǒǒdè.	¿Yám gómà Mǒǒd bí?	Ngée, mam gómà Mǒǒdè.
Mam gómà Anglésì.	¿Yám gómà Ángles bí?	Ngée, mam gómà Anglésì.
Mam wáa Wágdugu.	¿Yám waa Wágdug bí?	Ngée, mam wáa Wágdugu.
Mam kóosdà kumbà.	¿Yám koosdá kumb bí?	Ngée, mam kóosdà kumbà.
Mam yũũd lá Kùkà.	¿Yám yũũd lá Kùk bí?	Ngée, mam yũũd lá Kùkà.
Mam sǎǎmà kutwéefò.	¿Yám sǎǎma kútweef bí?	Ngée, mam sǎǎmà kutwéefò.
Mam yítà Wágdugú.	¿Yám yítà Wágdug bí?	Ngée, mam yítà Wágdugú.
Mam dátà papàye.	¿Yám dátà papà bí?	Ngée, mam dátà papàye.
Mam gésà móbilì.	¿Yám gèsà móbil bí?	Ngée, mam gésà móbilì.
Mam zámà Mǒǒdè.	¿Yám zamsá Mǒǒd bí?	Ngée, mam zámà Mǒǒdè.

Comprehension Drill 1

A Jóhñ ká gómà Mǒǒd yé; a Kùlg ká gómà Anglés yé.

A Jóhñ zamsdá a Kùlg Anglésì ti a Kùlg zámà a John Mǒǒdè.

Questions:

- ¿A John gómà Mǒǒd bí?
Ngée, a John gómà Mǒǒdè la ká wúsg ye.
- ¿A Kùlg gómà Anglés bí?
Áyò, a Kùlg ká gómà Anglés ye.
- ¿A John zamsdá a Kùlg bwě?
A John zamsdá a Kùlg Anglésì.
- ¿La a Kùlg zámà a John bwě?
A Kùlg zámà a John Mǒǒdè.

Comprehension Drill 2

A John waa Wágdùgu la a ká gómd Sílmiíd wúsg ye. A John né a Kúlg zámshà Bámbadandè. La a Kúlg zámshà Dáwa John Sílmiídì.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa John waa Wágdùg bí?
Ngée, a waa mé.
2. ¿La a gómdà Sílmiíd wúsg bí?
Áyò, Dáwa John ká gómd Sílmiíd wúsg yè.
3. ¿A Jóhn né a Kúlg zámshà Bámbadand bí?
Ngée, ub zámshà Bámbadandè.
4. ¿La a Kúlg zámshà Dáwa John Móòd bí?
Ngée, a zámshà á la mé Móòdè.

UNIT 17

Basic Sentences: Seku has a new job. Kuka talks to him about it.

-Kúka-

Yám tumdá mé.
Yám tumdá wúsgo.
Yám tumdá wúsgò mwásà.
¿Yám tumdá wúsgo mwásà bí?

You work
You work a lot.
You work a lot now.
Do you work a lot now?

-Sékù-

Áyò.
Áyò, m túmdà mé.
Áyò, m túmdà bílfù.
M pákdà mé.
la m págdè.
M pákdà mé la m págd budó.

No.
No, I work.
No, I work a little.
I open up
and I close
I open and I close the office.

-Kúka-

Ohóhó
Ohóhó, dé podě
Ohóhó, dé podě yám kelgdá mé.
Ohóhó, dé podě yám kelgdá dadío,
la i kádmè
la i kádm sebdé.

Ah ha!
Ah ha! then
Ah ha! Then you listen
Ah ha! Then you listen to the
radio,
and you read
and you read the paper.

-Sékù-

¿La yám yě?
¿I déemdà mé?
¿I déemdà wúsgo?
¿I déemdà wúsgo dad fã?
¿I déemdà wúsgo dad fã bí?

And you?
Do you have a good time?
You enjoy yourself a lot?
Do you have a good time
everyday?
Do you have a good time very/all
day?

-Kúka-

ngée
Ngée, la m túmdà mé.

yes
Yes, but I also work.

17.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Review of tones. All of the following words are like /waa/ of Unit 1.

Yám waa mé.	You arrived
A wáa mé.	He arrived
tónd tenga	our country
m ténga	my country
yám doogó	your house
ub doogó	their house
Tónd deemdá mé.	We are having a good time.
A déemda mé.	He is have a good time.
yám ligdí	your money
ub lígdi	their money
tónd lengá	our gift
m lénga	my gift
Yám zamsá mé.	You learned.
A zamsà mé.	He learned.
Yám pagdá mé.	You open.
A págda mé.	She opens.
tónd kadnsaambá	our teacher
ub kádñsaambá	their teacher
Yám koosdá mé.	You sell.
M kóodsà mé.	I am selling.
Tónd wumá mé.	We understand.
M wumà mé.	I understand.
Yám yeelá mé.	You spoke.
A yéelà mé.	She spoke.
Tónd boondá mé.	We are calling.
A bóonda mé.	She/he is calling.

17.1B Note:

All of the nouns and verbs of this unit are low class. The first vowel or the stem vowel of all of them sounds very low in contrast to the high pronouns /yám/ and /tónd/. The stem vowels sound high in contrast to the low pronouns /ub/, /m/ and /a/.

17.1C Substitution Drill

Practice: Tonal feature.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Yám waa mé.	Yám waa mé.
a	a wáa mé
tenga	a ténga
tond	tónd tenga
doogo	tónd doogó
ub	ub dóogo
ligdi	ub lígdi
yám	yám ligdí
wumá mé	yám wumá mé
mam	mam wumà mé
kóosdà mé.	mam kóosdà mé.
tónd	tónd koosdá mé
koambá	tónd koambá
a	a koambá
bóondà mé	a bóondà mé
yám	yám boondá mé
kadensaambá	yám kàdensaambá
a	a kádènsàambá
zámàsà mé	a zámàsà mé
tónd	tónd zamsá mé
yeelá mé	tónd yeelá mé
yám	yám yeelá mé
waa me	yám waa mé

17.1D Substitution Drill

Practice: High and low tone classes in contrast.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Tónd boondá mé.	Tónd boondá mé.
gomda me	Tónd gòmdà mé.
a	A góm dà mé.
koambá	a koámbà
yám	yám koambá
yíidi	yám yíidí
mam	mam yíidi

lígdi	mam lídgi
tónd	tónd lígdí
díkà mé	Tónd díkà mé.
ub	Ub díkà mé.
wúmà mé	Ub wúmà mé.
yám	Yám wumá mé.
yúudè	yám yuudé
mam	mam yúudè
doogó	mam dóogo
Tónd	Tónd doogó
kéndà mé	Tónd kéndà mé
a	a kéndà mé
bóondà mé	a bóondà mé
Yám	Yám boondá mé.

17.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Verb Inflection, the Present Tense

Tónd tumdá wúsgo.	We work a lot.
M pákdà búdò dád fã.	I open the office every day.
A kélgdà dádìo.	He is listening to the radio.
M déemdà mé.	I am having a good time.
Ub wátà mé.	They are arriving.
Yám gómà Mòòdè.	You speak Moré.
A yítà mwásà.	He is leaving now.
Yám boondá wã tí bwě?	What do you call this?
M zámzdà Mòòdè.	I am learning Moré.
A kóotà búmu.	She is asking for something.
M dátà sébdè.	I want a paper.
Ub yítà Wágdùgú.	They are leaving Ouagadougou.

17.2B Note: Verb stem + /d/ + /a/

1. This is the imperfective form of the verb. Its parts can be analyzed as follows:

góm + d (or t) + a
 verb stem + imperfective marker + final vowel

2. Verb stem + /d/ + /a/ means that the action of the verb has not been completed or that it is usually in progress.

3. /d/ marks aspect, i.e. imperfective. The ending /a/ indicates the long form of the verb.

4. Verb stem + /d/ + /a/ has no tense marker. It functions as present tense.

5. The notes of Units 3 and 9 give additional information.

17.2C Response Drill

Practice: The imperfective form of the verb.

Directions: The student answers the questions affirmatively.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
¿Yám túmdá wúsg bí?	Ngée, m túmdà wúsgò.
¿Yám gòmà mòòd bí?	Ngée, m gòmà Mòòdè.
¿A Sékù kélgdà dádìò dád fǎ bí?	Ngée, a kélgdà dádìò dád fǎ.
¿A Sékù kámdà sébd dád fǎ bí?	Ngée, a kámdà sébd dád fǎ.
¿Yám zamsdá wúsg bí?	Ngée, m zámsdà wúsgò.
¿Ub págdà búdo dád fǎ bí?	Ngée, ub págdà búdo dád fǎ.
¿Ub déemdà wúsg bí?	Ngée, ub déembà wúsgò.
¿Ub kóosdà lémbùya bí?	Ngée, ub kóosdà lémbùyǎ.
¿Yám wumdá Mòòd bí?	Ngée, m wumdà Mòòdè.
¿A kóotà búu bí?	Ngée, a kóotà búu.
¿A dátà lígd bí?	Ngée, a dátà lígdì.
¿Ub yítà Fídǎs bí?	Ngée, ub yítà Fídǎsè.

17.3A Repetition Drill

Illustration: The short form after /la/.

Man pákdà mé la m págd budó.	I open and I close the office.
Yám kelgdá dádìò la i kámd sebdé.	You listen to the radio and read the paper.
Tónd gòmà mé la id wúmd Mòòdé.	We speak and understand Moré.
A wúmdà mé la a kámd Fídǎsé.	He understands and reads French.
Ub déemdà mé la ub túmdè.	They have a good time and they work.

17.3B Note: Verb forms after /la/.

1. After the connector, /la/, the following verb forms occur:
 stem + /d/ + /ě/.
 stem + /d/.
2. /La/ + verb stem + /d/ + /ě/ marks the end of the sentence.
 Ub déemdà mé la ub tumdě.
 The obligatory complement /me/ does not occur here.
3. /La/ + verb stem + /d/ indicates that the verb does not end the sentence.
 M pákdà mé la m págd budó.

Comprehension Drill

Dáwa Ámadu né Dáwa Sékù túmdà wúsgo ámbasadě. Ub kélgdà dadío la ub kádm sébà. Dáwa Sékù gómdà dad fǎǎ né a zóa Ámadù. Ub túmdà ya néedè. Ub ká déemd wúsg ye. A Ámadù yéelà mé tí á súúd ya nóogò né a túmdǎ.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Ámadu né Dáwa Sékù túmdà wúsg bí?
 Ngée, ub túmdà wúsg ámbasadě.
2. ¿Ub máandà bwě?
 Ub kélgdà dadío la ub kádm sébà.
3. ¿Dáwa Sékù gómdà dad fǎǎ né a Ámadu bí?
 Ngée, a gómdà dad fǎǎ né a Ámadu.
4. ¿Ub túm yá need bí?
 Ngée, ub túm yá neede.
5. ¿La ùb déemdà mé bí?
 Áyò, ub ká déemd wúsg yé.
6. A Ámadu yéelà mé yí a súúd yá nóog né a túmdà bí?
 Ngée, a yéelà mé tí a súúd yá noogo né a túmdǎ.

UNIT 18

Basic Sentences: Kuka has decided to go hunting.

-Sékù-

yám kèngdà...

you are going...

yám kèngdà táǎsgò

you are going hunting

yám kèngdà táǎsgò béoogò

you are going hunting to-morrow

¿Yám kèngdà táǎsgò béoog bí?

Are you going hunting tomorrow?

-Kúka-

Áyò

No.

ká kèngd ye

not going

m ká kèngd ye

I am not going

M ká kèngd béoog ye; m kèngdà
zaábdà.

I'm not going tomorrow; I am going
this evening.

-Sékù-

Áhà! zaábdà!

Oh! this evening!

-Kúka-

ngée, m lóogdà mé

yes, I am leaving

m lóogdà píndà

I am leaving early

Ngée, m lóogdà zaábdà píndà.

Yes, I am leaving early this
evening.

-Sékù-

yám díkdà mé

you are taking

¿Yám díkdà tídè bí?

Are you taking the train?

¿Yám díkdà tídè bí, bí móbilì?

Are you taking the train or the
car?

-Kúka-

M díkdà tídè.

I am taking the train.

m námsdà mé

I get tired

M námsdà móbilè.

I get tired driving.

GENERAL NOTES

18A Aspect

All the verbs of this unit are imperfective. They end in /-d/ or /-da/. They refer to imminent or habitual activity. The verbs of Unit 16 referred to action in progress. None of the verbs ending in /-da/ or /-ta/ refer to completed action. This is the present tense.

18B Tone Class

All the verbs presented in this unit are high class.

18C Metathesis

The short form of words ending in /-o/ and of words containing a cluster of three consonants before the final vowel often sounds like an inversion of final consonant and final vowel.

<u>long form</u>	<u>short form</u>
/wúsgò/	*/wúsòg/
/tǎǎsgò/	*/tǎǎsòg/
/kéngdà/	*/kéngàd/

18.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Negative contrasted to affirmative statements

Yǎm pakdá búdò.	You open the office.
Yǎm kà pákd budo yé.	You don't open the office.
Tónd kelgdá dádìo.	We listen to the radio.
Tónd kà kélgd dadío yé.	We don't listen to the radio.
Yǎm tumdá wúsgò.	You work a lot.
Yǎm kà túnd wusg yé.	You don't work very much.
Tónd koosdá lembúyà.	We sell oranges.
Tónd kà kóosd lembúy ye.	We do not sell oranges.
A gómà Mǎǎdè.	He speaks Moré.
A ká gómǎ Mǎǎd yé.	He doesn't speak Moré.
Ub lóogdà píndà.	They are leaving early.
Ub ká lóogd pínd yé.	They don't leave early.
Mam díkdà móbillì.	I am taking the car.
Mam ká díkd mobil yé.	I'm not taking the car.

18.1B Note: Negation

Negation is marked in the following ways:

1. /ká...ye/ or /pá...ye/
2. vowel loss
3. tone sequence

1. /ká/ or /pá/ occurs after the subject. /ye/ ends the sentence.
2. All words occurring between /ká/ or /pá/ and /ye/ are short forms except for borrowed words like /budó/.
3. The first word after /ká/ or /pá/ sounds high and is followed by a sharp drop. The onset of the drop occurs at the end of the above mentioned high word.

18.1C Transformation Drill

Practice: Affirmative and negative statements.

Directions: The instructor will take Role A and the student Role B; then vice versa.

Role A

Tónd kéndà béoogò.
 M kéndà tǎǎsgò.
 Ub lóogdà píndà.
 Yám díkdá tídě.
 Yám pakdá búdo.
 A kélgdà dádìo.
 A gómà Mǎǎdè.
 Tónd tumdá wúsgò.
 Tónd kadmdá sébdè.
 Tónd koosdá síbà.
 M táda sébdè.

Role B

Tónd kà kénd beoog yé.
 M ká kénd tǎǎsg yé.
 Ub ká lóogd pínd yé.
 Yám kà díkd tídě yé.
 Yám kà pákd budo yé.
 A ká kélgd dadío yé.
 A ká góm Mǎǎd yé.
 Tónd kà túmd wusg yé.
 Tónd kà kámd sebd yé.
 Tónd kà kóosd síb yé.
 M ká tád sebd yé.

18.1D Response Drill

Practice: Using negative statements in a controlled conversation.

Directions: The student will deny the instructor's statement.

Cue

M págdà búdo dád fǎǎ.
 Tónd pakdá búdo dád fǎǎ.
 Ub kélgdà dádìo.

Response

Áyò, yám kà págd budo dád fǎ yé.
 Áyò, yám kà pákd budo dád fǎ yé.
 Áyò, ub ká kélgd dadío yé.

Cue

Ub kélgdà dádìò dád fǎǎ.
 Mam gómdà Mǒǒdè.
 Mam gómdà wúsgò.
 Tónd tumdá bílfù.
 Ub kámdà sébdè.
 M lóogdà beoogò.
 M lóogdà beoog yíbeoogò.
 Tónd k'èndà tǎǎsgò.
 Ub lóogdà p'índà.
 Tónd díkdà móbilì.

Response

Áyò, ub ká kélgd dadìo dád fǎ yé.
 Áyò, yǎm ká gómd Mǒǒd yé.
 Áyò, yǎm ká gómd wusg yé.
 Áyò, yǎm ká túmd bílf yé.
 Áyò, ub ká kámd sebd yé.
 Áyò, yǎm ká lóogd beoog yé.
 Áyò, yǎm ká lóogd beoog yíbeoog yé.
 Áyò, yǎm ká kénd tǎǎsg yé.
 Áyò, ub ká lóogd pind yé.
 Áyò, yǎm ká díkd mobil yé.

18.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Noun Inflection.

M déemdà zaábdǎ.
 M ká déemd zaábdà yé.
 M déemdà zaábdè.
 M ká déemd zaábd ye.
 Ub túmdà yíbeoogǎ.
 Ub ká túmd yíbeooga yé.
 Ub túmdà yíbeoogò.
 Ub ká túmd yíbeoog yé.
 Yǎm kadmdá sébdǎ.
 ¿Yǎm kadmdá sébdà bí?
 Yǎm kadmdá sébdè.
 Yǎm ká kámd sébd ye.
 Ub kélgdà dádìowǎ.
 ¿Ub kélgdà dádìowa bí?
 Ub kélgdà dádìo.
 Ub págdà búdòwǎ.
 Mam námsdà móbilè.
 Mam ká námsd móbilè yé.
 Mam díkdà móbilì.
 ¿Yǎm díkdà móbil bí?
 Ub túmdà búdòè.
 Ub pákdà búdò.

I'm having fun this evening.
 I'm not having fun this evening.
 I enjoy myself in the evening.
 I don't usually enjoy myself in the evening.
 They are working this morning.
 They are not working this morning.
 They work in the morning.
 They don't work in the morning.
 You are reading that paper.
 Are you reading that paper/book?
 You are reading a book.
 You are not reading a book/document.
 They are listening to that radio.
 Are they listening to that radio?
 They are listening to the radio.
 They are closing this office.
 I get tired in a car.
 I don't get tired in a car.
 I take a car. I go by car.
 Do you go by car?
 They work in an office.
 They are opening an office.

Ub ká túmd budoě yé.

They don't work in an office.

Ub kéndà téngà.

They walk on the ground.

Ub ká kénd teng yé.

They are not walking on the ground.

Ub kéndà ub tengě.

They are going to their country.

Ub ká kénd ub tengě yé.

They are not going to their country.

18.2B Note: Noun Inflection

1. The citation or dictionary form of a Moré noun usually ends in an oral vowel.

zaábdè - evening

sebde - a paper

2. The demonstrative ending is a nasal vowel, as is the locative ending.

zaábdǎ - this evening

sebdǎ - that paper

3. In a negative sentence and in a question with /bí/, this noun appears without final vowel.

M ká déemd zaábd ye.

I don't have a good time evenings.

¿Yám kadmdá sébd bí?

Are you reading a paper?

4. In a negative sentence and in a question with /bí/, the demonstrative appears without nasalization.

M ká déemd zaábdà yé.

I am not having a good time this evening.

¿Yám kadmdá sébdà bí?

Are you reading this paper?

5. Words borrowed from French do not have changes in the final vowel. The demonstrative endings are added to the entire word.

dadíó - a radio

dadíowǎ - that radio

budó - an office

budówǎ - the office

6. The locative ending /ě/ undergoes no changes.

18.2C Response Drill

Practice: Noun Inflection in statements.

Directions: The student answers the questions either negatively or affirmatively. Both answers are recorded.

Instructor

Student

¿Yám deemdá zaábdà bí?

Ngée, m deemdà zaábdà.

Áyò, m ká deemd zaábdà yé.

¿Yám deemdá zaábd bí?

Ngée, m deemdà zaábdè.

Áyò, m ká deemd zaábd yé.

¿Ub túmdà yíbeogà bí?

Ngée, ub túmdà yíbeogà.

Áyò, ub ká túmd yíbeogà yé.

¿Ub túmdà yíbeog bí?

Ngée, ub túmdà yíbeogò.

Áyò, ub ká túmd yíbeog yé.

¿Ub kámdà sébd bí?

Ngée, ub kámdà sébde.

Áyò, ub ká kámd sebd yé.

¿Yám kelgdá dádìò bí?

Ngée, m kélgdà dádìò.

Áyò, m ká kelgd dadìò yé.

¿Ub págdà búdò bí?

Ngée, ub págdà búdò.

Áyò, ub ká pádg budó yé.

¿Ub kámdà séebdà bí?

Ngée, ub kámdà séebdà.

Áyò, ub ká kámd séebdà yé.

18.2D Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Noun Inflection in questions.

Directions: The instructor makes a statement. A student turns it into a question. Another student answers it. Only 'student A' has been recorded.

Instructor

Student A

Student B

M deemdà zaábdà.

¿Yám deemdá zaábdà bí?

Ngée, m deemdà zaábdà.

Áyò, m ká deemd zaábdà yé.

M deemdà zaábdè.

¿Yám deemdá zaábd bí?

Ngée, m deemdà zaábdè.

Áyò, m ká deemd zaábd yé.

Ub túmdà yíbeogò.

¿Ub túmdà yíbeog bí?

Ngée, ub túmdà yíbeogò.

Áyò, ub ká túmd yíbeog yé.

Yám kámdá sébdà.

¿Yám kámdá sébdà bí?

Ngée, m kámdà sébdà.

Áyò, m ká kámd sebdá yé.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
Yám kadmdá sébdè.	¿Yám kadmdá sébd bí?	Ngée, m kádmà sébdè. Áyò, m ká kádm sebd yé.
Ub kélgdà dádíowǎ.	¿Ub kélgdà dádíowa bí?	Ngée, ub kélgdà dádíowǎ. Áyò, ub ká dadío wa ye.
Ub kélgdà dádío bí.	¿Ub kélgdà dádío bí?	Ngée, ub kélgdà dádío. Áyò, ub ká kélgd dadío yé.
Ub págdà búdòwǎ.	¿Ub págdà búdowa bí?	Ngée, ub págdà búdowǎ. Áyò, ub ka pagd búdowa yé.
Ub págdà búdò.	¿Ub págdà búdò bí?	Ngée, ub págdà búdò. Áyò, ub ká págd budó yé.

18.2E Response Exercise

Practice: Affirmative and negative patterns, noun inflections in conversation.

Directions: The student denies the instructor's assertion and submits another idea.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Suggestions for Student</u>
A Sékù kéndà tǎǒsg zaábdǎ.	Áyò, a ká kénd tǎǒsg zaábdà yé. . A kéndà béoogò.
A kéndà a Sablógò.	Áyò, a ká kénd a Sablóg yé. A kéndà Ábigeǎ.
A lóogdà muásǎ.	Áyò, a ká loógd muásǎ yé. A lóogdà béoogò.
A díkdà tídě.	Áyò, a ká díkd tídě yé. A díkda móbílì.
A námsdà móbilè.	Áyò, a ká námsd móbilè. A námsdà tídě.

18.3A Response Drill

Practice: Use of /bí, bí/, 'or'.

Directions: The student rejects the first choice and accepts the second.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
¿Yám kéndà né tídě bí, bí móbílì?	Áyò, m ká kénd né tídě yé, m kéndà né móbílì.

Instructor

Student

¿Yám tumdá mé bí, bí
deemdá mé?

Áyò, m ká túmd ye, m déemdà mé.

¿Yám kelgdá mé bí, bí
kadmdá mé?

Áyò, m ká kélgd mé, m kádmdà mé.

¿Yám gòmdà Mòòd bí, bí
Fídãse?

Áyò, m ká gòmd Mòòd yé, m gómdà
Fídãse.

¿Yám kèngdà zákè bí, bí
budóè?

Áyò, m ká kèngd zakè yé, m kèngdà
búdòè.

¿Yám pagdá móbil bí, bí
budó?

Áyò, m ká pagd mobíl yé, m pagdà
búdò.

¿Yám kelgdá dádiò bí, bí
deemdá mé?

Áyò, m ká kélgd dadíò yé, m déemdà
mé.

¿Yám díkdà móbil bí, bí
tídè?

Áyò, m ká díkd mobíl yé, m díkdà
tídè.

18.4A Comprehension: New Words for Repetition.

a Sablógò

name of a forest

bugdaogó

rifle

díibo

food

A Kúk né mam kéndà tãõsgo a Sablógè. Tónd loogdá zaábdã la ká pínd ye.
Tónd díkdà búgdaogó la díibo. A Kúk pagà kèngdà né tónd. A lóogdà búdò pind
wúsgo. M pagà ká kèngd ye. A ká déemd tãõsgè yé.

Questions:

1. ¿A Kúk né mam kéndà tãõsg bí?
2. ¿Tónd kéndà á Sablóg bí?
3. ¿Tónd kéndà Ámèdik bí?
4. ¿Tónd loogdá zaábdã bí?
5. ¿Tónd loogdá béoog bí?
6. ¿Tónd loogdá pind bí?
7. ¿Tónd díkdà búgdaog bí?
8. ¿Tónd díkdà díibo bí?
9. ¿Tónd díkdà bwè?
10. ¿A Kúk pagà kéndà mé bí?
11. ¿A lóogdà búdò pind bí?
12. ¿M pagà kéndà mé bí?
13. ¿A déemdà tãõsgè bí?

Answers to Questions:

1. Ngée, a Kúk né mam kèngdà tǎǎsgo.
2. Ngée, tónd kèngdà a Sablógò.
3. Áyò, tónd kà kèngd Àmèdik yé.
4. Ngée, tónd loogdá zaábdǎ.
5. Áyò, tónd kà lóogd beoog yé.
6. Áyò, tónd kà lóogd pind yé.
7. Ngée, tónd díkdà búgdàogó.
8. Ngée, tónd díkdà dííbo.
9. Tónd díkdà búgdàog la dííbo.
10. Ngée, a Kúk págà kèngdà mé.
11. Ngée, a lóogdà búdò pind wúsgo.
12. Áyò, yǎm págà ká kèngd ye.
13. Áyò, a ká déemd tǎǎsgǎ yé.

UNIT 19

Basic Sentences: Seku tells Kuka that he just heard the news broadcast.

-Kúka-

¿Yǎm kelgá dádìo dabùdè?

When did you listen to the radio?

-Sékù-

Dúnda.

Today.

-Kúka-

ya kíbaesè

It's the news.

¿Ya kíbaes bwě?

What news is there?

n lá a kǒ á yǎ

and it gave it to you

¿Ya kíbaes bwě n lá a kǒ á yǎ?

What news did it give?

-Sékù-

tí nasad silgá lui Dakad

that a plane fell in Dakar

Dakád né Marseilles

Dakar and Marseilles

Dakád né Marseilles súkà

between Dakar and Marseilles

A yéelà mé tí nasad silgá lui Dákàd né
Marseilles súkà.

It said that a plane crashed between
Dakar and Marseilles.

-Kúka-

m wúmà mé

I understand

M ká wúm ye!

I didn't know that!

-Sékù-

la nébà

but the people

pooglgá mé

hurt

La néb ká pógglg ye.

But the people weren't hurt.

Bató fáǎgà mé

a boat saved

Batǒò fáǎg nébà.

The boat saved the people.

-Kúka-

Yá súmà.

That's good.

-Sékù-

Ub wáa Dákad.
 Ub wáa Dákad zaamé.

They arrived in Dakar.
 They arrived in Dakar yesterday.

19.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Verb form and meaning.

A fáǎgà nébǎ.	He saved the people. (The people are saved.)
A kádà sébdǎ.	He read the document. (The document has been studied.)
Tónd waa Dákàd.	We arrived in Dakar. (We are in Dakar.)
M wúmà sébdǎ.	We understand the document. (The process of trying to comprehend has been completed.)
Néb pooglgá mé.	They people are hurt. (Have come to be hurt.)
Mam námsà mwásǎ.	I'm tired. (I got tired.)

19.1B Note: The perfective form of the verb is used as the simple past tense.

19.1C Response Drill

Practice: Use of simple past tense.

Directions: The student answers the following questions either negatively or affirmatively to familiarize himself with the forms of the past. All the sentences are related contextually to facilitate comprehension.

InstructorStudent

¿Avion lui zaam bí?

Ngée, avion lui zaamé.

¿Néb pooglgá mé bí?

Áyò, avion ká lúi ye.

Ngée, néb pooglgá mé.

¿Ub fáǎgà néba fáǎ bí?

Áyò, néb ká póoglg ye.

Ngée, ub fáǎgà nébǎ fáǎ.

¿Dádio yeelá fáǎ bí?

Áyò, ub ká fáǎg nebǎ fáǎ yé.

Ngée, dádio yeelá fáǎ.

¿Nébǎ waa Dákad bí?

Áyò, dádio ká yéel fá ye.

Ngée, nébǎ waa Dákàd.

Áyò, nébǎ ká waa Dákàd yé.

Instructor

¿Dáwa Kúk wáa Dákàd zaam bí?

¿Yám waa laafí bí?

¿Yám wumá mam bí?

¿Yám kelgá kíbaes bí?

Student

Ngée, Dáwa Kúk wáa Dákàd zaamé.

Áyò, Dáwa Kúk ká wá Dákàd zaam yé.

Ngée, m wáa laafí.

Áyò, m ká wá laafí yé.

Ngée, m wumà yám.

Áyò, m ká wum yám ye.

Ngée, m kélgà kíbaese.

Áyò, m ká kélg kíbaes yé.

19.1D Response Exercise

Practice: Sentence construction using the simple past tense.

Directions: The student answers the questions as he chooses. The questions are contextually related to facilitate comprehension.

¿Dáwa Kúk kégà yae?

¿A díkà tídè bí, bí avion?

¿A lóogà né tídè bí, bí avion?

¿A lóogà dábudè?

¿Avión waa mé bí?

¿Avión lui mé bí?

¿Avión lui yae?

¿Bató fǎǎgà Dáwa Kúk bí?

¿Bwě fǎǎg Dáwa Kúka?

¿Dáwa Kúk pooglgá mé bí?

¿A námsà mé bí?

¿Dáadio yeelá mé tí avión lui mé bí?

¿Dáadio yeelá bwě?

¿Yám kelga kíbaes bí?

19.2A Repetition Drill

Verbs whose imperfective form is -ta.

Nasad silga lui me.

Yám luitá mé.

A yíi Fídǎse.

Tónd yítà Fídǎse.

M gósà mé.

The airplane fell.

You are falling.

She left France.

We are leaving France.

I asked.

M gótà mé.

Dáadio kǒǒ kibáesè.

Dáadio kǒtǎ kibáesè.

I am asking.

The radio gave the news.

The radio is giving the news.

19.2B Note: Imperfective in -ta. See Note 9C.

19.2C Transformation Drill

Practice: Imperfective endings in -da and -ta.

Directions: The instructor gives the perfective form of a verb. The student repeats the verb in the imperfective form. Then vice versa.

Role A

Nasad silga lui mé.

M túmà mé.

A wáa mé.

A Kúk námsà mé.

Ub yíi Wagdugu.

A Sékù díkà tídè.

M gósà mé.

A kóosà lembúyà.

Dáadio kǒǒ kibáesè.

A Sékù gómà wúsgo.

Tónd kadma' Mǒǒdè.

Role B

Nasad silga luita mé.

M túmdà mé.

A wátà mé.

A Kúk námsdà mé.

Ub yítà Wágdugu.

A Sékù díkdà tídè.

M gótà mé.

A kóosdà lembúyà.

Dáadio kǒntà kibáesè.

A Sékù gómdà wúsgo.

Tónd kadmda' Mǒǒdè.

19.2D Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Contrast of perfective form to imperfective form.

Directions: The instructor makes a statement about what 'Kuka' has done. One student shows surprise at this news and inquires whether 'Kuka' does this every day. Another student answers. All sentences are related contextually to facilitate comprehension and to illustrate the use of the tense.

Instructor

A Kúk díkà díib dúnda.

Student A

Ohǒǒ! A díkà díib dúnda!

¿A díkdà díib dád fǎ bí?

Student B

Ngée, a díkdà díib dád fǎǎ.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
A díkà búgdaògó.	Ohǽǽ! A díkà búgdaògó! ¿A díkdà búgdaòg dád fǽ bí?	Ngée, a díkdà búgdaògò dád fǽǽ.
A kégà tǽǽsgò.	Ohǽǽ! A kégà tǽǽsgò! ¿A kéndà tǽǽsg dád fǽ bí?	Ngée, a kéndà tǽǽsg dád. fǽǽ.
A lóogà né móbilì.	Ohǽǽ! A lóogà né móbilì! ¿A lóogdà né móbil dád fǽ bí?	Ngée, a lóogdà né móbil dád fǽǽ.
A kégà a Sablógo.	Ohoo! A kégà a Sablógo. ¿A kéndà a Sablóg dád fǽ bí?	Ngée, a kéndà a Sablóg dád fǽǽ.
A lúi tengě.	Ohǽǽ! A lúi tengě! ¿A luítà téngě dád fǽ bí?	Ngée, a luítà téngě dád fǽǽ.
A yíí a Sablóg pindà.	Ohǽǽ! A yíí a Sablóg pindà! ¿A yítà a Sablóg pind dád fǽ bí?	Ngée, a yítà a Sablóg pind dád fǽǽ.

19.3A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Inverse word order. The second sentence of each of the following pairs means the same thing as the first.

1. ¿A kǽǽ bwě kíbaesè?	What news did he give?
2. ¿Yá kíbaes bwě la a kǽ á yǽ?	What was the news that he gave?
1. M díkdà móbilì.	I'm taking the car.
2. Yá móbil la m díkdà.	It's the car that I'm taking.
1. Ub kégà tǽǽsgò.	They went hunting.
2. Ya tǽǽsgo la ub kégě.	It was hunting that they went.

1. Ub wáa Dákad.	They arrived in Dakar.
2. Ya Dákad lá ub wáè.	It was in Dakar that they arrived.
1. Id túmà zaamé.	We worked yesterday.
2. Ya záamè la id túmè.	It was yesterday that we worked.
1. Id ká túm zaam yé.	We didn't work yesterday.
2. Ká zaam la id túm yé.	It wasn't yesterday that we worked.
1. M kéngà a Sablógo.	I went to Sablogo.
2. Ká a Sablóg la m kéng ye.	It wasn't Sablogo that I went to.

19.3B Note: Inverse Word Order

1. The second sentence of each pair has the same denotative meaning as the first.

2. The first sentence of each pair has the usual Moré word order. Therefore it is matter of fact, unaccented. This word order is subject - verb - object or complement.

<u>subject</u>	<u>verb</u>	<u>object</u>
A	kóó	bwě kíbaesè
M	díkdà	móbillì

3. In the second sentence, the complement precedes the main verb. In this way the speaker has drawn attention to it.

4. The grammatical mechanism for accenting the complement is the following:

/ya/ introduces the complement of an affirmative sentence.

/ka/ introduces the complement of a negative sentence.

/la/ introduces the subject and verb.

¿Ya kíbaes bwě la kóó á yǎ?

Ká móbil la m díkd ye.

19.3C Transformation Drill

Practice: Inverse word order and normal word order.

Directions: The instructor gives a sentence with emphatic word order. The student repeats the sentence using bland word order. After the entire exercise has been completed, student and instructor switch roles.

Role A

¿Yá kíbàes, lá á kǒ yǎ?
Yá móbil, lá m dík yǎ.
Ya tǎǎsgò, lá b kǎng yǎ.
Ya Dákàd, lá b wa yǎ.
Ya záam, lá d tum yǎ.
Ya Mǒǒd, lá m góm yǎ.
Yá dádíó, lá a kelg yǎ.
Yá sébd, lá d kadm yǎ.
Yá nébà, lá b fǎǎg yǎ.
Ya dád fǎ lá m tumdá.
¿Ya bwě lá i gómà?
Ya Mǒǒd, lá m wumdá.

Role B

¿A kǒǒ bwě kíbàesè?
M díkà móbilì.
Ub kǎngà tǎǎsgo.
Ub wáa Dákàd.
Id túmà záamè.
M gómà Mǒǒdè.
A kǎlgà dádíó.
Id kadmà sébdè.
Ub fǎǎgà nébà.
M túmdà dád fǎ.
¿Yǎm gómà bwě?
M wúmdà Mǒǒdè.

19.3D Transformation Drill

Practice: Emphatic word order in negative sentences.

Directions: Like 19.3C.

Role A

Ká záam lá d tum yé.
Ká Bóbo lá m kǎng yé.
Ká a Sablóg lá b wa yé.
Ká Mǒǒd lá m góm yé.
Ká móbil lá i dík yé.
Ká pind lá i lóog yé.
Ká záabdà la b kǎngd yé.
Ká móbilè lá b námsd yé.
Ká dádíó lá á kelgd yé.
Ká sébdà lá a kadmd yé.
Ká nébà lá i fǎǎg yé.
Ká Silmíid lá m wúmd yé.

Role B

Id ká túm zaam yé.
M ká kǎng Bobo yé.
Ub ká wá a Sablóg yé.
M ká góm Mǒǒd yé.
Yǎm ká dík móbil yé.
Yǎm ká lóog pind yé.
Ub ká kǎngd zaabdà yé.
Ub námsdà móbilè.
A ká kǎlgd dadíó yé.
A ká kadmà sébdà yé.
Yǎm ká fǎǎg nébà yé.
M ká wúmd Silmíid yé.

19.3E Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Use of emphatic word order in conversation.

Directions: The instructor asks a question involving a choice. The student indicates a strong preference for the first item and rejects the second.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
¿Yám díkdà tídè bí, bí móbilì?	Yá tídè lá m díkdà. M ká díkd móbil yé.
¿Yám gòmdà Mòòd bí, bí Anglèsì?	Yá Mòòd lá m gòmdà. M ká gòmdà Ànglès yé.
¿Ub wáa Àmèdik bí, bí Haute Volta?	Yá Àmèdik lá b wá yã. Ub ká wá Haute Volta yé.
¿A túnà búdoè bí, bí tengè?	Yá búdoè lá a tún yã. A ká tún tengè yé.
¿Yám waa né bató bí, bí né silga?	Ya né bató lá m wa yã. M ká wá né silgá yé.
¿A Sékù kóosdà síbà bí, bí lembúyã?	Yá síbà lá a kóosdà. A ká kóosd lembúy yé.
¿Yám dátà bánan bí, bí papáyà?	Yá bánan lá m dátà. M ká dát papáy yé.
¿Yám gésdà a Kúk bí, bí a Sékù?	Yá a Kúk lá m gésdà. M ká gésd a Sékù yé.
¿Ub sǎama kútweef bí, bí móbilì?	Yá kútweef lá b sǎam yã. Ub ká sǎam móbil yé.
¿A táda zàkà bí, bí ótel?	Yá zàk lá a táda. A ká tád ótel yé.
¿A yíí Fídǎs bí, bí Àmèdika?	Ya Fídǎs lá a yí yã. A ká yí Àmèdik yé.

19.3F Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Emphatic negative word order.

Directions: The instructor asks a question involving a choice. The student emphatically rejects the first item and accepts the second.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
¿Yám díkdà tídè bí, bí móbilì?	Ká tídè lá m díkd yé. M díkdà móbilì.

Instructor

¿A lóogà záabd bí, bí yíbeogà?

¿Ub túmdà zákè bí, bí búdoè?

¿Ub táa dúnda bí, bí zaamé?

¿Ub wáa Dákàd bí, bí Marseilles?

¿A Sékù zámà Mòòd bí, bí Silmíidi?

¿Yám wumda Fídàs bí, bí Ànglèsì?

¿Silgá lóogà dúnda bí, bí zaamé?

¿Yám dàtá lémbuyà bí, bí síbà?

¿A kóosdà bánan bí, bí pápayà?

Student

Ká záabd lá a lóog yé. A lóogà yíbeogà.

Ká zákè lá b tumd yé. Ub túmdà búdoè.

Ká dúnd lá b ta yé. Ub táa záamè.

Ká Dákàd lá b wa yé. Ub wáa Marseilles.

Ká Mòòd lá a zams yé. A zámà Silmíidi.

Ká Fídàs lá m wumd yé. M wúmdà Ànglèsì.

Ká dúnd lá a loog yé. A lóogà záamè.

Ká lémbuy lá m dát yé. M dátà síbà.

Ká bánan lá a kóosd yé. A kóosdà pápayà.

19.4A Repetition

M kóò á la mé.

M kóò á la sébdà.

M kóò yám.

M kóò yám sébdà.

Ub kóò íd la mé.

Ub kóò íd la sébdà.

Ub kóò tond.

Ub kóò tónd sébdà.

Yám kóò ub la mé.

Yám kóò ub la sébdà.

Yám kóò bam.

Yám kóò bàm sébdà.

A kóò m la mé.

A kóò m la sébdà.

A kóò mam.

A kóò màm sébdà.

I gave it.

I gave her the paper.

I gave you.

I gave you the paper.

They gave us.

They gave us the paper.

They gave us.

They gave us the paper.

You gave them.

You gave them the paper.

You gave them.

You gave them the paper.

He gave me.

He gave me the paper.

She gave me.

She gave me the paper.

M kóě á la a Kúka.

I gave it to Kuka.

M kóě a la a Kúka sébdǎ.

I gave Kuka the paper.

M kóě a la a nébǎ.

I gave it to the people.

M kóě nébǎ sébdǎ.

I gave the people the paper.

M kóě a Kúka sébdǎ.

I gave Kuka the paper.

19.4B Notes

In Note 4D it was shown that /o/ before another vowel is often /w/. The /óó/ of /kóó/ is /óě/ or /wé/ before /a/, e.g., /M kóó á la mé/ is /M kóě á la mé/ or /M kwé á la mé/, 'I gave it'. In this manual /óó/ before another vowel is written /óě/, though the speaker may vary between /óě/ and /wé/.

19.5A Comprehension Drill 1

Dáwa Kúk kégà Dákàd zaamé né nasad silgá. La dádio yeelá yíbeoogǎ tí nasad silgǎ lui Dákàd né Abigéǎ súkà. La Dáwa Kúk póoglg wúsg yé. Batóó fáǎgà á la mé.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Kúk kégà yae?
A kégà Dákàd záamé.
2. ¿A kégà Dákàd záamé né bwě?
A kégà né nasadsilgá.
La dádio yeelá yíbeoogǎ tí nasadsilgǎ lui mé.
3. ¿La dádio yeelá mé tí nasadsilgǎ lui yae?
A yéelà mé tí a lui Dákàd né Abigéǎ súkà.
4. ¿Dáwa Kúk póoglgà mé bí?
Ngée, a póoglgà bílf balá, batóó fáǎgà.

19.5B Comprehension Drill II

Dáwa Kúk lóogdà Bóbò dúnda. A kégdà né Dáwa Tembíl móbilǎ. A ká kégdà né tídè yé. Dáwa Kúk yéelà mé tí a ká náǎ n dík tídè yé.

Questions II

1. ¿Dáwa Kúk lóogdà yae dúnda?
A lóogdà Bóbò dúnda.
2. ¿A kégdà né bwě?
A kégdà né Dáwa Tembíl móbilǎ.
3. ¿A ká kégdà né tídè la?
Áyò, a yéelà mé tí a ká náǎ n dík tídè yé.

UNIT 20

Basic Sentences 1

-Kúka-
 ;Álò, yá logtód bí? Hello is this the doctor?

-Pága Pókò-
 Áyò, ya mám. No, it's me.

-Kúka-
 ;Ya ándà? Who is that?

-Pága Pókò-
 Ya mám a Pókò. I'm Poko.
 ;Ya wǎnǎ? What can I do for you?

-Kúka-
 M dátě n gómà ne logtódè. I want to talk to the doctor.

-Pága Pókò-
 Ntó. O.K.
 yaasé yǎ wait
 yaasé yǎ tí m bóola. wait while I call him
 Yaasé yǎ tí m bóolǎ n kǎe yǎ. Wait while I call him for you.

-Kúka-
 Í badká. Thank you.

-Pókò-
 Í badká. You're welcome.

Basic Sentences 2

-Pága Pókò-
 ;Yám mǐ a Pául bí? Do you know Paul?

-Dáwa Tembila-

ngée
m tédà mé
tí a ya tāmétà
Ngée, m tédà mé tí a ya tāmétà.

yes
I think
that he is a mason
Yes, I think he's a mason.

-Pága Pókò-

Áyò, a ya dáagà sóabà.
A ya wók wúsgo.

No, he's the administrator of the market.
He is very tall.

-Dáwa Tembila-

Ohóò! m mĩí á la mé.
A ya lígd soab mẽ.
A tádà zák bédde.
Wágdùg téngsukà.
A tádà zák bedde Wágdùg téng sukà.

Oh! I know him.
He is also rich.
He has a big house.
In the center of Ouagadougou.
He has a big house in the center of Ouagadougou.

-Pága Pókò-

Ya sídà.
A tádà yéelè
A tádà yéelè n dátě n góm né yám.

That's true.
He has something to say
He wants to talk to you.

GENERAL NOTES20A Stative Verbs

The verbs /tada/, /mĩí/, /ya/ and /bee/ have no distinction between the perfective and imperfective aspects. Their endings never change. They always occur as they are listed above. Because these verbs do not refer to any activity, but rather to a state of being, they will be called stative verbs.

20B Notice

/Ya sùrà./ - That is good.
/A ya sùrà./ - He is good.

20.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Commands.

Waé yǎ túuma béoogò.	Come to work tomorrow.
Yaasé yǎ bílfù.	Wait a moment.
Boolé yǎ n kǒ mǎm.	Call him for me.
Gomé yǎ bílfbílfù.	Speak slowly.
Kǒné yǎ mǎm.	Give it to me.
Kelgé yǎ mǎm.	Listen to me.
Da díki yǎ dádlowa yé.	Don't take the radio.
Da sǎǎme yǎ kút wèefa yé.	Don't wreck the bicycl .
Da kǒe yǎ lígdà yé.	Don't give him the money.
¿M yáas bí?	Should I wait?
¿M wá túmà béoog bí?	Shall I come to work tomorrow?
¿M mǎan bwě?	What should I do?

20.1B Note: Commands

1. The command form of the verb is stem + /é/ or stem + /d/ + /é/.
2. /yǎ/ is a form of the pronoun /yǎmbà/. It is a post verbal subject.
3. Thus formal affirmative commands are:

/Kelgé yǎ./	Listen.
/Góme yǎ./	Speak.
/Kelgdé yǎ./	Continue listening.
/Gómde yǎ./	Continue speaking.

4. The negative command is marked by /dá...yé/. This marker influences the pitch in the same way that /ká...yé/ does.

/Da góme yǎ yé./	Don't speak.
/Da gómde yǎ yé./	Don't go on talking.

20.1C Response Drill

Practice: Commands.

Directions: This drill should be done twice. The instructor asks the student for an order. The first time through the exercise the student gives the order affirmatively; the second time through, negatively.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
¿M yáas bí?	Ngée, yaasé yǎ. Áyò, da yaasé yǎ yé.
¿M góm né a Paul bí?	Ngée, góme yǎ né a Paul. Áyò, da góme yǎ né a Paul yé.

Instructor

¿M deem bí?

¿M wá tùmà béoog bí?

¿M pak búdò bí?

¿M loog mwàsà bí?

¿M kě bí?

¿M kěs válìzdàmbà bí?

¿M kadm sébdà bí?

¿M dík lígda bí?

¿M bool a Paul bí?

Student

Ngée, deemé yǎ.

Áyò, da deemé yǎ yé.

Ngée, waé yǎ tuma béoogò.

Áyò, da wáe yǎ tùm béoog yé.

Ngée, paké yǎ búdò.

Áyò, da paké yǎ búdò yé.

Ngée, loogé yǎ mwàsà.

Áyò, da loogé yǎ mwàsà yé.

Ngée, kěe yǎ.

Áyò, da kě yǎ yé.

Ngée, kěse yǎ válìzdàmbà.

Áyò, da kěse yǎ válìzdàmbà yé.

Ngée, kadmé yǎ sébdà.

Áyò, da kadmé yǎ sébdà yé.

Ngée, díke yǎ lígdà.

Áyò, da díke yǎ lígda yé.

Ngée, boolé yǎ a Paul.

Áyò, da boolé yǎ a Paul yé.

20.1D Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Commands and questions which elicit commands.

Directions: The instructor says that some one is doing something.

Student A asks Student B if he should do this thing. Student B gives Student A a command - negative or affirmative.

Instructor

A yáasà bílfù.

A díkdà lígdà.

M díkà kúmbà.

Ub págdà dóogà.

Tónd kelgdá dádìo.

A kóosà móbilà.

Student A

¿M yáas bílf bí?

¿M dík lígda bí?

¿M dík kúmbà bí?

¿Id pág doogá bí?

¿Id kélg dádìo bí?

¿M kóos móbilà bí?

Student B

Ngée, yaasé yǎ bílfù.

Áyò, da yaasé yǎ yé.

Ngee, díke yǎ lígdà.

Áyò, da díke yǎ lígda yé.

Ngée, díke yǎ kúmbà.

Áyò, da díke yǎ kumba yé.

Ngée, pagé yǎ doogá.

Áyò, da pagé yǎ doogá yé.

Ngée, kelgé yǎ dádìo.

Áyò, da kelgé yǎ dádìo yé.

Ngée, koosé yǎ móbilà.

Áyò, da koosé yǎ móbilà yé.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
A bóondà a Paul.	¿M bóol a Paul bí?	Ngée, boolé yǎ a Paul. Áyò, dá boolé yǎ a Paul yé.
A gómà né a Paul.	¿M góm né a Paul bí?	Ngée, góme yǎ né a Paul. Áyò, da góme yǎ né a Paul yé.
Tónd kadmá sébdǎ.	¿Id kadm sébdà bí?	Ngée, kadmé yǎ sébdǎ. Áyò, dá kadmé yǎ sébaa yé.
Ub kěsǎ válìzdámà.	¿Id kěs válìzdámà bí?	Ngée, ké yǎ válìzdámà. Áyò, dá kěse yǎ válìzdámà yé.
A Kúlg pákdà búdò.	¿M pák búdòwa bí?	Ngée, paké yǎ búdòwǎ. Áyò, dá paké yǎ búdòwa yé.

20.2A Repetition Drill

Uses and pronunciation of kǒ.

M kǒě a yǎm sébdè.	I gave you a paper.
M kǒě a la sébdè.	I have him a paper.
M kǒǒ ub la sébdè.	I gave them a paper.
M kǒě a koambá sébdè.	I gave the children a paper.
A kǒǒ mam sébdè.	He gave me a paper.
A díkà sébdǎ n kǒ mǎm.	He took the paper and gave it to me.
A kádmà sébdǎ n kǒ mǎm.	He read the paper for me.
Ub kěsǎ válìzdámà móbilě n kǒ á.	They put the suitcases in the car for her.
¿Yǎm koosá móbilì n kǒ ándà?	For whom did you sell the car?
¿Yǎm tumdá n kǒ ándà?	For whom do you work?

20.2B Note: Uses of /kǒ/.

The verb /kǒǒ/, 'give' occurs as the main verb in a sentence, e.g., /M kǒě á la a Paul záamè/, 'I gave it to Paul yesterday'. /kǒǒ/ also occurs as the second verb in a sentence and means, 'to', 'for', 'on the behalf of', e.g., /M díkà dádìo n kǒ yǎm/, 'I got you a radio'. As the second verb of a subject, /kǒ/ is preceded by /n/. (See Notes 3C and 11C).

20.2C Response Drill

Practice: Use of /kǒ/ in simple sentences.

Directions: The instructor wonders out loud if the student has a particular object. The student says that he doesn't, that he gave it to Paul yesterday.

InstructorStudent

¿Yám tádà sébdà bí?

Áyò, m kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

¿Yám tádà i móbilà bí?

Áyò, m kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

¿A Kúlg kóosà a kúmba bí?

Áyò, a kǒě b la a Paul záamè.

¿Yám tádà i dádìowa bí?

Áyò, m kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

¿A Elizabet tádà lémbui bí?

Áyò, a kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

¿Yám tádà mángòdó bí?

Áyò, m kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

¿A tádà pápai bí?

Áyò, a kǒě a la a Paul záamè.

¿A Sékù tádà kútweef bí?

Áyò, a kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

¿A Paul tádà tomat bí?

Áyò, a kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

¿Ub tádà góyàv bí?

Áyò, ub kǒě á la a Paul záamè.

20.2D Response Drill

Practice: Use of /kǒ/ in complex sentences.

Directions: Answer the following questions.

InstructorStudent

¿Yám díkà dádìo n kǒ mam bí?

Ngée, m díkà dádìo n kǒ yām.

¿Yám díkà lémbui n kǒ tond bí?

Ngée, m dákà lémbui n kǒ yām.

¿Ub díkà góyàvǎ n kǒ a bí?

Ngée, ub díkà góyàvǎ n kǒ a.

¿A díkà mángòdó n kǒ bíigà bí?

Ngée, a díkà mángòdó n kǒ bíigǎ.

¿Yám díkà síbǎ n kǒ Dáwa Íssàk bí?

Ngée, m díkà síbǎ n kǒ Dáwa Íssàk.

¿Yám díkà kútweefǎ n kǒ i zoa bí?

Ngée, m díkà kútweefǎ n kǒ m zóa.

¿Yám díkà tomatǎ n kǒ Pága Elizabet bí?

Ngée, m díkà tomatǎ n kǒ Pága Elizabet.

¿Yám díkà kúmbǎ n kǒ i zoa bí?

Ngée, m díkà kúmbǎ n kò m zoa.

¿A díkà mángòdówǎ n kǒ yām bí?

Ngée, a díkà mángòdówǎ n kǒ mǎ.

¿A kádmà sébdǎ n kǒ yām bí?

Ngée, a kádmà sébdǎ n kǒ mǎ.

¿A kéndà válìzdámǎ n kǒ bam?

Ngée, a kéndà válìzdámǎ n kǒ bam.

¿Ub kóosà móbilǎ n kǒ Dáwa Sékù bí?

Ngée, ub kóosà móbilǎ n kǒ Dáwa Sékù.

¿A pákà búdówǎ n kǒ a Kúka bí?

Ngée, a pákà búdówǎ n kǒ a Kúka.

¿A sǎǎmà kútweefǎ n kǒ a Elizabet bí?

Ngée, a sǎǎmà kútweefǎ n kǒ a Elizabet.

Instructor

Student

¿Pága Elizabet maana díibò n kǒ
a Kúlg bí?

Ngée, a mánnà díibò n kǒ a Kúlgá.

¿A bóolà a John n kǒ a Antoine
bí?

Ngée, a bóolà a John n kǒ a Antoine.

20.2E Transformation Response Exercise

Practice: Use of /kǒ/, double verbs in questions with freedom in answering.

Directions: The instructor makes a statement. A student turns the statement into a question using /kǒ ándà/. Another student answers the question.

Instructor

Student A

M díkà dádío.

¿Yám díkà dádío n kǒ ándà?

M kǎsà válìzdámbà.

¿Yám kǎsà válìzdámbà n kǒ ándà?

A kóosà móbilì.

¿A kóosà móbilì n kǒ ándà?

Ub bóolà a Kúka.

¿Ub bóolà a Kúka n kǒ ándà?

A pákà búdò.

¿A pákà búdò n kǒ ándà?

M kádmà sébdè.

¿Yám kádmà sébdè n kǒ ándà?

A págà dádío.

¿A págà dádío n kǒ ándà?

Ub díkà kúmbà.

¿Ub díkà kúmbà n kǒ ándà?

M kǎsà kútweefò.

¿Yám kǎsà kútweefò n kǒ ándà?

A kóosà góyavà.

¿A kóosà góyavà n kǒ ándà?

20.3A Repetition Drill

/dátà/ + Noun, /dátě/ + Verb.

M dátà dóogò.

I want a house.

M dátě n gómà mé.

I want to speak.

A dátà kibáesè.

He wants news.

A dátě n wuma kibáesè.

He wants to hear some news.

Tónd dátà lígdì.

We want money.

¿Yám dátě n maana bwě zaábdà?

What do you want to do this evening?

20.3B Note /data/ + noun, /datě/ + /n/ + verb.

A verb followed by another verb ends in a nasal vowel, plus the connective /n/. A verb followed by anything else ends in an oral vowel.

20.3C Substitution Drill

Practice: Inflection of the verb /dátà/ when a noun follows and when a verb follows.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
M dátà dóogò.	M dátà dóogò.
goma me	M dátě n gómà mé.
kibaese	M dátà kíbaesè.
kadma me	M dátě n kadmá mé.
ligdi	M dátà lígdi.
tuma me	M dátě n tumá mé.
mobili	M dátà móbilì.
zamsa me	M dátě n zamsá mé.
lenga	M dátà léngà.
kě me	M dátě n ké mé.
yi me	M dátě n yí mé.
doogo	M dátà dóogò.

20.4A Repetition Drill

Yaasé yǎ, tí m bóolà mé.	Wait, while I call him.
Kelgé yǎ, tí m gómà mé.	Listen, since I am talking.
Deemé yǎ, tí m túmdà mé.	Have a good time while I work.
Kénde yǎ, tí m wátà mé.	Go away because I'm arriving.
Yám boondá wǎ tí bwě?	What do you call this?
Tónd boondá wǎ tí kumbà.	We call this 'eggplant'.

20.4B Note: Connective /tí/.

If two verbs in a sentence do not have the same subject, /tí/, 'that' occurs between the two clauses, e.g., /Yaasé yá tí m bóolà mé/, 'Wait while I call him.'

After /tí/, /ya/, 'is', usually does not occur, e.g., /¿Yám boondá wá tí bwě?/, 'What do you call this?'

If there is a subject change after a present usage of /dálgà/, /dátà/ occurs with /tí/, and the second verb does not have the /-a/ ending, e.g., /M dátà mé á wa/, 'I want him to come'.

Before a word beginning with a vowel /tí/ is usually /t/, as in the sentence above, and the following vowel is high.

20.5A Comprehension Drill

Zaamé zaábdà a Pókò dágè ká láafi yé. A námsà wúsgo la a ká maan búm yé. A Elizabet boolá logtódè. Logtód waa n díkà á la mé n kég logtód yíidì.

Questions:

1. ¿Zaamé zaábdè ya bwě dágè n tádà Pókò?
Zaamé zaábdè a Pók dágè ká láafi yé.
2. ¿La a máanà bwě?
A ká máan búm yé.
3. ¿A Elizabet boolá logtód bí?
Ngée, a bóolà logtódè.
4. ¿La logtód waa n díkà a la mé bí?
Ngée, logtód waa díkà a la mé.
5. ¿N kég yae?
N kég logtód yíidì.

UNIT 21

Basic Sentences

-John-

M bóosdà mé
 tí i tógsm
 tí i tógs m logtód yíidì

M bóosdà mé tí i tógsm logtód yíidì.

I beg (you)
 that you inform me
 that you tell me where the
 hospital is
 Please tell me where the hospital
 is.

-Kúlga-

A bée me.
 bánkà dóogò
 bánkà dóog sèaaga
 A bée bánka dóog sèaaga.

It is.
 bank
 next to the bank
 It is next to the bank.

-John-

¿Tónd bée yae mwásà?
 ¿Tónd bée yae mwásà wóto ne wã?

Where are we now?
 By the way, where are we now?

-Kúlga-

Ya Wágdug dáagà.
 Ya Wágdug dáagà méngà.
 Ya Wágdug dáagà méng púgě.
 la tónd sě bée wã
 Ya Wágdug dáagà méng púgě la tónd
 sě bée wã.

It is the Wagadougou market.
 It is exactly the Wagadougou
 market.
 It is inside the Wagadougou
 market itself.
 that we are in fact
 We are in the Wagadougou market.

21.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: /bee/ and /ya/.

¿Ya lógtòd bí?
 Ya mām.
 A yá dáaga soaba.

Is this the doctor?
 It's me.
 He is the administrator of the
 market.

A yá wók wusgo.

He is very tall.

Ya sídà.

That's true.

A bée bánkà dóog sèaaga.

It is next to the bank.

¿Tónd bee yae mwásà?

Where are we now?

...la tónd sè bee wã

...where we are

¿I yibeóog ya láafi?

Is your morning peaceful?

Laafi bee mé.

(There) is peace. (Peace is here.)

A Pók kutwéefà ya néede.

Poko's bicycle is pretty. (totally)

A Pók kutwéefà bee néede.

Poko's bicycle is pretty. (in part, somewhat)

21.1B Repetition Drill

Illustration: /bee/ and /ya/ in negative sentences.

A ká dáag soab yé.

He is not the administrator of the market.

A ká wók ye.

She is not tall.

Ká síd ye.

That's not true.

A ká bé bánk dòog sèaag ye.

It is not near the bank.

Tónd ká bé daagè yé.

We are not in the market.

21.1C Note: Distinction: /bee/ and /ya/.

1. /Bee/ and /ya/ are both translated into English as the verb, 'to be'.
2. /Bee/ is used for location.

/A bée bánkà dóog sèaaga./

It is next to the bank.

3. /Ya/ is used for description.

/A yá wók wusgo./

He is very tall.

4. /Bee/ is used for weak descriptions.

/Kútweefà bee néede./

The bicycle is somewhat pretty.

5. Negatively, /bee/ has the short form /be/ and /ya/ has the short form 'zero'.

21.1D Substitution Drill

Practice: Use of /bee/ for location. Use of /ya/ for everything else.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
A Kúk yá lógtodè.	A Kúk yá lógtodè.
dáagè	A Kúk bée dáagè.
kóaasà	A Kúk yá kóaasà.
bánkè	A kúk bée bánkè.
díplomàt	A Kúk yá díplomàt.
ótelè	A Kúk bée ótelè.
tǎmetà	A Kúk yá tǎmetà.
búdòè	A Kúk bée búdoè.
dáagà soabá	A Kúk yá dáagà soabá.
lógtòd yíidè	A Kúk bée lógtòd yíidè.
Móagà	A Kúk yá Móagà.
Wágdùgo	A Kúk bée Wágdùgo.

21.1E Response Drill

Practice: The use of /bee/ and /ya/ in controlled conversation.

Directions: The instructor reads a short narrative and asks questions on it. The student answers the questions with reference to the narrative.

A. A Kúk yá kád̀nsaambá. Mwásà a bée kád̀ndoogè.

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Answers</u>
1. ¿A Kúk yá bwè?	A Kúk yá kád̀nsaambá.
2. ¿A Kúk bée yae?	A Kúk bée kád̀ndoogè.

B. A Sékù yá lógtòde. A bée lógtòd yíid mwásà.

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Answers</u>
1. ¿A Sékù yá bwè?	A Sékù yá logtòde.
2. ¿A Sékù bée yae?	A Sékù bée lógtòd yíidì.

C. A Kúlg yá dáagà sóabà. Mwásà bée dáagà pùgè.

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Answers</u>
1. ¿A Kúlg yá bwè?	A Kúlg yá dáagà sóabà.
2. ¿A Kúlg bée yae?	A bée dáagà pùgè mwásà.

D. Tónd bee ótelè. La ótelà ya bílfù.

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Answers</u>
1. ¿Tónd bee yae?	Tónd bee ótelè.
2. ¿La ótelà ya wána?	La ótelà ya bílfù.

E. Tónd bee ambassáda púgè. La yá néedè.

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Answers</u>
1. ¿Tónd bee yae?	Tónd bee amabassáda púgè.
2. ¿La a yá wána?	La a yá néedè.

F. Tónd zoa a Kúk bee Bóbò. La yá téng bílfù.

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Answers</u>
1. ¿Tónd zoa a Kúk bée yae?	Tónd zoa a Kúk bée Bóbò.
2. ¿La yá téng wána?	La yá téng bílfù.

G. Lembúyà bée dáagè. La ub yá bílfù.

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Answers</u>
1. ¿Lembúyà bee yae?	Lembúyà bee dáagè.
2. ¿La ub yá wánà?	La ub yá bílfù.

21.1F Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Use of /bee/ and /ya/ in questions.

Directions: The instructor reads a short narrative. Then he mentions a question word. One student asks a question using that word. Another student answers it.

A. A Kúk yá kádn̄saambá. Mwásà a bée kádn̄doogè.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
bwě	¿A Kúk yá bwě?	A Kúk yá kádn̄saambá.
yae	¿A Kúk bée yae?	A Kúk bée kádn̄doogè.

B. A Sékù yá lógtòde. A bée lógtòd yíid mwásà.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
bwě	¿A Sékù ya bwě?	A Sékù ya lógtòde.
yae	¿A Sékù bee yae?	A Sékù bee lógtòd yíidì.

C. A Kúlg yá dáagà sóabà. Mwásà a bée dáagà púgè.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
bwě	¿A Kúlg yá bwě?	A Kúlg yá dáagà sóabà.
yae	¿A Kúlg bee yae?	A bée dáagà púgè.

D. Tónd bee ótelè, la ótelà ya bílfù.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
yae	¿Tónd bee yáe?	Tónd bee ótelè.
wana	¿Ótelà yá wána?	Ótelà yá bílfù.

E. Tónd bee ambassàdà púgè, la a yáa néedè.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
yae	¿Tónd bee yae?	Tónd bee ambassàdà púgè.
wána	¿A yá wána?	A yá néede.

F. Tónd zoa a Kúk bée Bóbò. La a yá teng bílfù.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
yae	¿Tónd zoa a Kúk bée yae?	A bée Bóbò.
wána	¿La yá wána?	La a yá teng bílfù.

G. Lembúyà bée dáagè. La ub yá bílfu.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
yae	¿Lembúyà bée yae?	Lembúyà bee dáagè.
wána	¿La ub yá wána?	La ub yá bílfù.

21.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: The particle /sé/ + /wǎ/.

Yá sébd la ub kámdà.

It's the paper that they are reading.

Yá sébd la ub sé kámdǎ.

It's the paper that they are indeed reading.

Yá dáagè la tónd sé be wǎ.

We are in the market.

M sũüd yá noogó m sé bé ká wǎ.

I am happy because I am here.

Ya dáagè la tónd sě be wǎ.
 M súũd yá noogó m sě bé ká wǎ.
 Tónd sě waã n taa Dapoy daaga seegě,
 a Kúk lui mé.
 Tónd dàtá néb sě nǎã n tuma.
 Mam yěě néb piig sě loogda.

We are in the market.
 I am happy because I am here.
 When we arrived near the Dapoy
 market, Kuka fell.
 We want some one who will work.
 I see ten people who are leaving.

21.2B Note: Relative connective /sě/.

The relative connective /sě/ occurs after the subject of a subordinate clause. See Note 6C. In a negative subordinate clause, /ká/, /pá/ occurs without /yé/ in most cases. Compare Note 6A. If /yé/ does occur it occurs finally.

21.2C Transformation Drill

Practice: The use of the particle /sě/.

Directions: The instructor will read two sentences. The student will combine them into one complex sentence using the particle /sě/.

Instructor

Student

M súũd yá noogó.
 M bé ká wǎ.

M súũd ká noogó, m sě be ká wǎ.

A Kúk lui mé.
 Tónd waã n taa dáagà séagè.

A Kúk lui mé, tónd sě waã n taa
 dáagà séagè.

M yěě néb piiga.
 Ub loogda mé.

N yěě néb piiga, ub sě loogda.

A Elizabet pooglgá mé.
 Nasad silgǎ lui wǎ.

A Elizabet pooglgá mé, nasad silgǎ
 sě lui wǎ.

M yíi la Kúk.
 M yíi tǎǎsgè wǎ.

M yíi la Kúk, m sě yí tǎǎsgè wǎ

Tónd dii né m zoa Sékù.
 Id kégà ótelè wǎ.

Tónd dii né m zoa Sékù, id sě kég
 ótelè wǎ.

Instructor

A gómà né díplomatǎ.
A kéě ámbasaděwǎ.

A kóosà lémbuyǎ.
A kégà dáagěwǎ.

Ub súúd yá noogó.
Ub táda kútweefǎ.

Pága Pók koosa síbǎ.
A kégà dáagěwǎ.

Tónd gómà Fídǎsé.
Tónd kégà Fídǎsé.

Student

A gómà né díplomatǎ, a sě ké
ámbasaděwǎ.

A kóosà lémbuyǎ, a sě kég dáagěwǎ.

Ub súúd yá noogó, ub sě tád kútweefǎ.

Pága Pók koosa síbǎ, a sě kég
dáagěwǎ.

Tónd gómà Fídǎsé, tónd sě kég
Fídǎsé.

21.3A Comprehension Drill 1

Pága Elizabet tumda Dáwa John bǎnkà púgě. Dáwa John lá bǎnkà sóaba.
Bǎnkà búdo bée dáagà séeaagě. Dáwa John né Pága Elizabet tumda bǎnkà púgě yíbeoog
la zaábd fǎǎ.

Questions:

1. ¿Pága Elizabet tumda yae?
A túmda Dáwa John bǎnkà púgě.
2. ¿Yá Dáwa John lá bǎnkà sóabà bí?
Ngée, yá Dáwa John lá bǎnkà sóabà.
3. ¿Bǎnkà búdo bée yae?
Bǎnkà búdo bée dáagà séeaagě.
4. ¿Dáwa John né Pága Elizabet tumda yae?
Ub tumda bǎnkà púgě.
5. ¿Ub túmda yíbeoog la zaábd fǎǎ bí?
Ngée, ub túmda yíbeoog la zaábd fǎǎ.

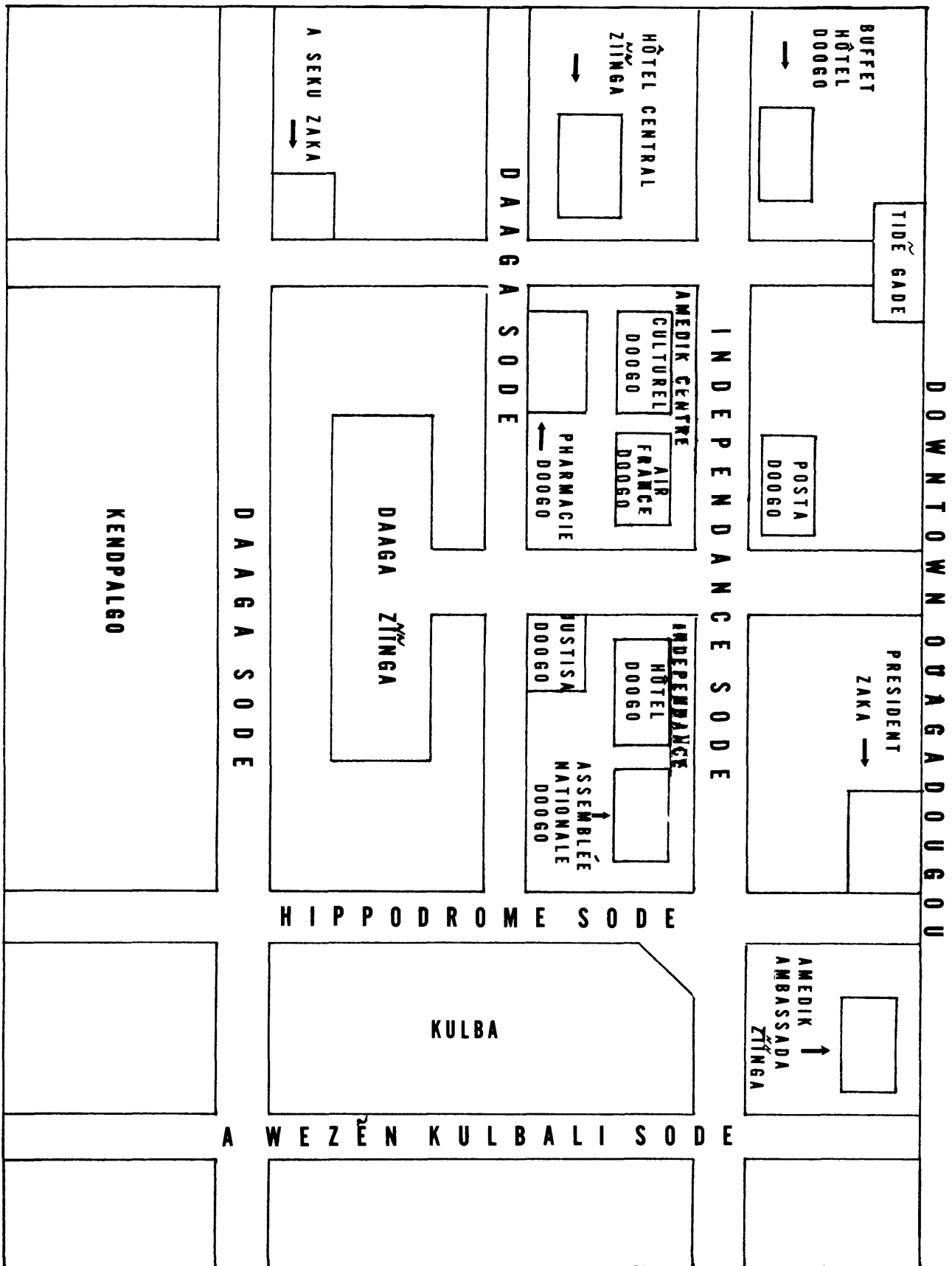
21.3B Comprehension Drill 2

Pága Elizábet yíidè bée tenga pùgè.
 A yíidè bée Ámèdík ambassáda séaagè.
 Pága Elizabet yíidà yá bílfù la a yá néede.
 A táda zénd bílf mé a zákà pugè.
 Zendá pugè, a táda kúmba, góyava, la tómato.

Questions

1. ¿Pága Elizabet yíidà bée yae?
 A yíidà bée tenga pùgè.
2. ¿A yíidà zíig bée yae tenga pùgè?
 A bée Ámèdík ambassáda pùgè.
3. ¿A yíidà yá bílf bí, bí bedde?
 A yá bílfù.
4. ¿A yá néed bí?
 Ngée, a yá néede.
5. ¿A táda zénd bílfù a zaká pugè bí?
 Ngée, a táda zénd bílf mé a zaká pugè.
6. ¿A táda bwè zéndà pùgè?
 A táda kúmba, góyavo, la tómato.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE



UNIT 22

Basic Sentences: John and Kulga continue their conversation.

-John-

A zǎdà mé.
¿A zǎdà ká?

It is far.
Is it far from here?

-Kúlga-

Áyò.
Kéngé yǎ taode
Kéngé yǎ taode tédga.

No.
go ahead
Go straight ahead.

-John-

M sǎ
M sǎ yǒsgo
¿M sǎ yǒsgo síigǎ, bí m maana bwě?
¿M sǎ yǒsgo zǐigǎ bí m maana bwě?

If I, when I
When I have passed
When I have passed that place,
what do I do
What do I do when I've passed that
place?

-Kúlga-

Yǎm sǎ yǒsg yéndà
sódǎ bée égliisà pódǎ.
Yǎm sǎ yǒsg yéndà, sódǎ bée
égliisà pógǎ.

When you have passed it
that road is beyond the
church.
When you have passed it, the road
(to the hospital) is beyond the
church.

-John-

¿M sǎ dík sód kǎngà, m tátà yae?

If I take that road, where do I
arrive? (Where does that road take
me?)

-Kúlga-

Sód kang tanta yãm
Sód kang tanta yãm n kèng
logtód yĩidi.

that road takes you
That road takes you and you go to
the hospital. (That road takes
you to the hospital.)

-John-

I bádkà.

Thank you.

22.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: /sǎ/. Notice the tonal properties of this particle.

Yãm sǎ kèngdà á Kúgdi, bí i
díke né mã.

If you go to Kúgri, take me
along.

A sǎ wae, bí i togsé né mã.

If he comes, inform me.

ĩM sǎ yǒsg zǐgǎ, bí m maan bwě?

When I have passed that place,
what do I do?

ĩM sǎ dík sód kàngà, m tátà yae?

If I take that road, where do I
come out?

A sǎ zǎdà mé, bí id díke tidě.

If it is far away, let's take the
train.

Yãm sǎ tumda mé, m dátě n kèngà
né yãm.

If you are working, I want to go
with you.

A sǎ ká wá, bí i togsé né mã.

If he doesn't come, inform me.

A sǎ ká wá, bí id lóog.

If he doesn't come, let's leave.

22.1B Note: /sǎ/

/sǎ/ is a subordinate conjunction meaning: 'if', 'when', or 'the following is a possibility'. /sǎ/ regularly occurs after the subject.

22.1C Transformation Drill

Practice: Formation of complex sentences with /sǎ/.

Directions: The instructor makes two statements. The student combines them into one sentence with /sǎ/.

Instructor

Yãm kèngdà á Kúgdě.
Bí i díke né mã.

Student

Yãm sǎ kèngdà á Kúgdě, bí díke
yã né mã.

Instructor

Student

Yám lóogdà búdòě.
Bí i boolé né mã.

Yám sǎ lóogd budóě, bí i boolé
né mã.

Yám k'engdà dáagě.
Bí i togsé né mã.

Yám sǎ k'engd daagě, bí i togsé
né mã.

Yám tǎa mé.
Bí i boolé yǎ á Kúka.

Yám sǎ tǎa mé, bí i boolé yǎ á
Kúka.

Yám kadma' mé.
Bí i dá wá yé.

Yám sǎ kadma mé, bí da wá yé.

Yám tǎdà móbillì.
Bí i waě n díke né mã.

Yám sǎ tǎdà móbillì, bí i waě n
díke né mã.

Yám dǎdiowǎ yá sùma.
Bí id kelgé yǎ kibáesè.

Yám dǎdiowǎ sǎ ya sùma, bí id
kelg kibáesè.

Yám dátě n k'engà Kúlbà.
Bí id lóog pindá.

Yám sǎ dátě k'eng Kulbá, bí id
lóog pindá.

Yám dátà mǎm dǎdiowǎ.
Bí i díke yǎ.

Yám sǎ dát mǎm dǎdiowǎ, bí i
díke yǎ.

Yám dátà á Kúk kútweefǎ.
Bí i díke yǎ.

Yám sǎ dátà á Kúk kútweefǎ, bí i
díke yǎ.

22.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: /zǎdǎ/, 'to be far'

A zǎdǎ kǎ.

It is far from here.

A kǎ zǎd né kǎ yé.

It is not far from here.

Wagdúg zǎdǎ né Washington.

Ouagadougou is far from Washington.

Bóbò kǎ zǎd wúsgo né a

Bobo is not very far from Sablogo.

Sablóg yé.

22.2B Note:

/zǎdà/ like /tádà/ does not have the perfective-imperfective contrast. It is a stative verb.

22.3A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Spatial relationships.

Tónd yǐdà bée téngà súkè.	Our house is downtown.
A Pók yǐdà bée yǎm taodé.	Poko's house is ahead of you.
Móbilǎ bée dáagà púgè.	The car is in the market.
A yǐdà bée Bóbò poodě.	His house is beyond Bobo.
Yǎm kèndà ótel bugo?	Which hotel are you going to?
Tónd lòogà ótelǎ séagè.	We passed by the side of the hotel.
Yǎm yǐdà bée dáagà séagè.	Your house is next to the market.

22.3B Note: Spatial Relationships.

One of the most common ways of marking spatial relationships is with compound nouns, the second element of which indicates a location. This type of noun also occurs independently, just as other nouns, e.g., /súka/, 'middle', and /téngàsúkè/, 'in the middle of city/village/region'; /séaaga/, 'side', and /daagáseaagè/, 'beside/next to the market'. Below is a list of such nouns.

súka, -sé	middle; in the middle of, among
séaaga, -sé	side; beside, next to
taodé, *toayá	front; in front of, before
púga, -sé	interior, inside; inside (of), (with)in
poodé, *poayá	back; behind, in back of
zúgù, -tù	top, summit, head; on top of, on
téngdè, *téngiya	bottom; underneath beneath, on the bottom of
yingá, -sé	exterior, outside; outside
kídinga, -sé	distance; far, distant

22.3C Response Exercise

Practice: The use of the spatial compounds.

Directions: The student will look at the map to answer the following questions. The student should state what is behind, next to or in front of the place mentioned.

1. ¿Pharmaciewà dóog bee yae?
2. ¿Air-Franceà dóog bee yae?
3. ¿Indépendance Hôtel bee yae?
4. ¿Présidentwà dóog bee yae?
5. ¿Tidě gad bee yae?
6. ¿Daagá ziig bée yae?
7. ¿Justiceà dóog bee yae?
8. ¿Póstà dóog bee yae?
9. ¿Kulbá bee yae?
10. ¿Ámedik ambassadà zĩĩg bee yae?

SITUATION A

Useful Phrases

nǎǎ	in order to
Yǎm sǎ yí Kúblà n nǎǎ n kég póstě,	If you leave Couluba to go to the post office,
m góndgà mé	I turn
gǒndgà yǎ	Turn!
gǒndgè yǎ i goabgá.	turn to your left.
n tugǒ	go away/on
Tugǒ n gǒndge yǎ i goabgá.	Keep on going and (then) turn left.
taatá, taaldá	take, lead, result in, cause
Sód kang taaldá yām.	That road takes you.

From Couluba to the Post Office.

Yǎm sǎ yí Kúblà n nǎǎ n kég póstě, i díkdà Híppodromà sóde n tugǒ n gǒndg i goabgà n dík Indépendansà sódè. Sód kang táalnta yǎm tídgě n kég póstěwǎ.

Questions, Section 1:

1. ¿Tónd bee yae?
Tónd bee Kúblà.
2. ¿Tónd dátě n kèngà póstě.
Tónd dátě n kèngà póstě.
3. ¿Yá sód bug la id díkdà?
Id díkdà Híppodromeà sód.

4. ¿Tónd sá tugó n gǒndg bee, sód bug la id díkdà?
Id díkdà Indépendansà sódè.
5. ¿Sód káng kéngdà yae?
Sód káng kéngdà póstèwǎ.
6. ¿Sód káng taaldà yǎm n kèng yae,
Sód káng taaldà tónd n kèng póstèwǎ.

Questions, Section 2:

Now give commands as answers to the questions you hear.

1. ¿Yá sód bug la m díkdà?
Díke yǎ Hippodromà sódè.
2. ¿M gǒndg goabg bí?
Ngée, gǒndge yǎ i goabgá.
3. ¿Dé poodě m díkdà sód bugo?
Dé poodě díke yǎ Indépendansà sódè.
4. ¿M díkdà sód káng tídg bí?
Ngée, díke yǎ sód káng tídga.

SITUATION BUseful Phrases

tidě gade	railroad station
M dátě n ǎǎ n kéngà tídě gade.	I want to go to the railroad station.
tugdě	go away/on
Yǎm tugdě n táa Dáwa Sékù yíidǎ,	You will arrive at Seku's house,
kétě	continue
I kétě n táda kénd tídga i táodè.	continue to walk straight ahead.
zùgù	ahead
sód zùgù	on the street
Dáwa Sékù yíidǎ kétě m bé dáagǎ	Seku's house is right on Market Street.
sód zùgù.	

From Kendpalogo to the train station.

Yǎm sá yí Kéndpalogò n dátě n ǎǎ n kéng tidě gadě. I díkdà dáagà sód tídga. Yǎm tugdě táatà Dáwa Sékù yíidǎ. Dáwa Sékù yíidě. Dáwa Sékù yíidǎ kétě bée dáagà sód zùgù. Yǎm sá yǒsgo bé, i táatà Central Hôtelà dóog séaagě. I sǎ táa bé, bí i kétě táda i kénd tídg i taodé. I túgdě n táa Indépendans sód zùgù.

Yénd ya sód beede. Yám sá yǒsgo sód kángà i túgdě taa búffet Hôtelă dóog sêaagě.
Yám sá yǒsgo bé bílfu, i táatà tídě gádě wă.

Section 1: Both people involved in these questions and answers are in the same place.

1. ¿Tónd bee yáe mwásă?
Tónd bee Kendpalogě.
2. ¿Tónd dátě n kěngà yae?
Tónd dátě n kěngà tídě gádě.
3. ¿Tónd díkdà sód bugo?
Tónd díkdà dáagà sódě.
4. ¿Tónd tudgě n taa yae?
Tónd tudgě n taa Dáwa Sékù yíidă.
5. ¿Dáwa Sékù yíidă bée yae?
Dáwa Sékù yíidă bée dáagà sód zugu.
6. ¿Tónd sá yǒsgo bee, id táatà yae?
Tónd sá yǒsgo bee, id táatà Central Hôtelă dóog sêaagě.
7. ¿Tónd kěndà yae de poodě?
Dé poodě id kěndà Indépendansa sód zùgũ.
8. ¿Yénd ya wánă?
Yénd ya sód beede.
9. ¿Tónd sá yǒsgo sód kángà, id túgdě n taa yae?
Tónd sá yǒsgo sód kángà, id táatà Búffet Hôtelă.
10. ¿Tónd sá yǒsgo be bílfu, id táatà yae?
Tónd sá yǒsgo be bílfu, id táatà tídě gádě.

Section 2: The following questions are answered by commands.

1. ¿M sá năă n kěng tídě gádě, m díkdà sód bugo?
Díke yă daagá sòde.
2. ¿M sá dík daagá sòde m kěngdà yac?
Kéng yă Dáwa Sékù yíidă sêaagě.
3. ¿M sá yǒsgo bé, m táata yae?
Yósge yă bé n taa Central Hôtelă dóog sêaagě.
4. ¿M kěngdà yae, dé poodě?
Dé poodě kenge yă Indépendansă sód zugu.
5. ¿M yósgdà sód kángě n tugǒ n taa yae?
Yósge yă sód kángě n tugǒ n taa Búffet Hôtelă.

6. ¿M yǒsgdà bé bílfu n táa yae?
Yǒsge yǎ bé bílfu n táa tídè gaděwǎ.

SITUATION C

Useful Phrases

núgù	hand
núg ditgó	right hand
Díke yǎ i núg ditgó.	Take your right hand
bé	here, there
Yǒsge yǎ bé	Pass there
hálě	until
Kétě tád yá kénd hálě n tugǒ n táa Hippodromǎ sódě.	Continue walking until you arrive at Hippodrome Street.

From Central Hotel to the President's House.

Yǎm sǎ yí Central Hôtelě, bí i kénge yǎ bílfu. I sǎ tugǒ n táa Indépendansà sód zugě, bí i díke yǎ i núg ditgó. I sǎ táa póstà dóogě, bí i yǒsgě yǎ bé n kétě n táde yǎ kénd, hálě n tugǒ n tá Hippodromǎ sódà zugǔ. I sǎ wa tá be, bí i díke yǎ núg goabgá. Yǎm sǎ keng bílfu, i taatà Président zakě.

Questions: Section 1. Tond

- ¿Tónd bee yae mwasǎ?
Tónd bee Central Hôtelě.
- ¿Président yíidà bee yae ká?
Président yíidà zǎdà ká bílfu.
- ¿La id díkdà sód bugo n keng be?
Id sǎ yí ká, bí id keng bílfu.
- ¿N tógǒ n tá yae?
N tógǒ n tá Indépendansà sód zùgě.
- ¿Tónd sǎ tá bé, bí id máan wánǎ?
Id sǎ tá bé, bí id dík íd núg ditgó.
- ¿Sód káng kéndà yae?
Sód káng táantà yǎm n keng póstà dóog sèaagě.
- ¿Tónd sǎ tá póstà dóogě, bí id máan wánǎ?
Id sǎ tá be, bí id yǒsgě n kétě tád kéndè.
- ¿Tónd sǎ tád kéndè, id tógdè n táa yae?
Id sǎ tád kéndè, id tógdè n táa Hippodromǎ sód zùgu.

9. ¿Tónd sǎ wa tá bé, bí íd dík yae?
Id sǎ wa tá bé, bí íd dík íd nùg goabgá.
10. ¿Tónd sǎ tá bé, bí íd kéné yae?
Id sǎ tá bé, bí íd kéné bílfu.
11. ¿Tónd sǎ kéné bílfu, id táatà yae?
Id sǎ kéné bílfu, id táatà Présidént zakě.

Section 2, Commands

1. ¿Tónd bee yae mwasǎ?
Tónd bee Central Hôtelě.
2. ¿Président yíidà sód bee yae?
Président yíidà sód ká bé ka ye.
3. ¿M sǎ yí ká m kénéda yae?
Yǎm sǎ yí ká, bí i kenge yǎ bílfu.
4. ¿M sǎ kéné bílfu, m túgdě n táa yae?
Yǎm sǎ kéné bílfu, i túgdě n táa Indépendansà sód zùgu.
5. ¿M sǎ tá bé, bí m dík yae?
I sǎ tá bé, bí i díke yǎ i nùg ditgó.
6. ¿M sǎ díké m nùg ditgó, m kénéda yae?
Yǎm sǎ díke i nùg ditgó, bí i kété n táde yǎ kende.
7. ¿M túgdě n táa yae?
I túgdě n táa Hippodromǎ sód zùgu.
8. ¿M sǎ tá bé, bí m dík yae?
I sǎ tá bé, bí i díke yǎ i nùg goabgá.
9. ¿La n sǎ kéné bílfu m táatà yae?
Yǎm sǎ kéné bílfu, i táatà Présidént zakě.

UNIT 23

Basic Sentences

-Tembila-

Ya sídà
 Sǎ ya sídà
 Sǎ ya sídà, m zoa Sékù,
 m sũũd ká nóog yé
 m ká tád ye
 M ká tád m zěënd yé.
 M ká lebě n tad m zěëndà yé.
 M sũũd ká nóog yé, m sě ká
 lebě n tad zěëndà yé.

That's true

really

Really, Seku,

I am not happy

I don't have

I don't have my garden.

I don't have my garden anymore.

I am sad because I don't have my garden anymore.

-Sékù-

Yǎm tàdà zěëndǎ.
 Yǎm dà tàdà zěëndǎ.
 ;Yǎm dà tàdà zěënd la?

You have a garden.

You had a garden.

Oh! You had a garden?

-Tembila-

Ngée.
 M dá tàdà zěënd bílfu.
 M dá tàdà zěënd bílfu m zaká pugě.

Yes.

I had a little garden.

I had a little garden at my house.

-Sékù-

;Yǎm dà tàdà bwě a pugě?
 ;Yǎm dà tàdà bwě né bwě a pugě?

What did you have in it?

What variety of things did you have in it?

-Tembila-

Kipadé, tomátò, la kúmba.

Peppers, tomatoes and eggplants.

USEFUL PHRASES

A lébà né tidě.	He returned by train.
A lébà né vwatúudè.	He returned by car.
A lébà né móbilì.	He returned by car/truck.
A lébà né silgá.	He returned by plane.
A lébà Dákadě.	He (has) recently returned to Dakar.
A lébgà Dákadě.	He (has) recently left Dakar.
A lébgà Dákadě n wá.	He has returned from Dakar.
A lébgà Dákadě n wa Wagdúgě.	He has returned to Ouagadougou from Dakar
A lébgà Móöd né nasáademde.	He translated it from Moré into French.
Yám nǎǎ n kégà Dákadě.	You will go to Dakar.
Yám nǎǎ n yíi Dákadě n kég Padiě.	You will go from Dakar to Paris.
Yám nǎǎ n yíi Dákadě n wá Padiě.	You will arrive in Paris from Dakar.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Landi fǎǎ m dá tumda mé.	Mondays I used to work.
Zimáas fǎǎ m dá tumda mé.	Sundays I used to work.
Máddi fǎǎ m dá tumda mé.	Tuesdays I used to work.
Medkdedi fǎǎ m dá tumda mé.	Wednesdays I used to work.
Zedí fǎǎ m dá tumda mé.	Thursdays I used to work.
Vǎddadi fǎǎ m dá tumda mé.	Fridays I used to work.
Sámdi fǎǎ m dá tumda mé.	Saturdays I used to work.
M dá tumda landi fǎǎ.	I used to work on Monday.
M dá tumda zimas fǎǎ.	I used to work on Sunday.
M dá tumda maddi fǎǎ.	I used to work on Tuesday.
M dá tumda medkdedi fǎǎ.	I used to work on Wednesday.
M dá tumda zedi fǎǎ.	I used to work on Thursday.
M dá tumda vǎddadi fǎǎ.	I used to work on Friday.
M dá tumda samdi fǎǎ.	I used to work on Saturday.

NEW WORDS

leba	to return to, come to again; redo; take the place of; start
lebga	to leave from, depart from; change, convert; translate
nasáada, nasaadambá	a European
nasáadmde	European-like, pertaining to Europeans; a European language, especially French
zimáasà, -dàmbá	Sunday
lándi, -dàmbá	Monday
máddi, -dàmbá	Tuesday
médkdedi, -dàmbá	Wednesday
zedí, -dàmbá	Thursday
vǎddadi, -dàmbá	Friday
sámdi, -dàmbá	Saturday

GENERAL NOTES

23A /lebě/ plus another verb.

M sũũd ká nóog yé m sě ká lebě n tadě m zěěda yé.

/leba/, 'return', 'come back', is another of the verbs that have a meaning that is not easily guessed when it occurs as the first of two verbs with a single subject. See Note 11C. /lebě/ plus the connective /n/ before a positive verb means 'still', 'again', and with the negative /ká/ means 'no more', 'not any longer', 'not any more', e.g., the sentence above, 'I am sad because I don't have my garden any more.' /Bám lebě n táda kúmba dáagě/, 'They have eggplant at the market again/still'.

23B Reversive

A lébgà Dákadě.

The reversive suffix /-g/ indicates opposite meaning or direction, as in the sentence above, 'He left (from) Dakar'. See Note 10D.

23C /-mde/

The ending /-mde/ or /-amde/ forms descriptive nouns meaning, 'of', 'pertaining to', 'characteristic of', 'in the fashion of', e.g., /nassáadmde/, 'speech/talk like that of a European', i.e., 'a European language', usually, 'French'.

23.1A Repetition Drill

The verb /lebě/.

A lébà Dákadě.	He has returned to Dakar.
A lébě n zinda mé.	He has sat down again.
A ká lebě n zind yé.	He has not yet sat down again.
Tónd ká lébě n zăd yé.	We are not far away any more.
M ká lébě n tád zěed yé.	I don't have a garden any more.

23.1B Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Móbilă lébà mé.	Móbilă lébà mé.
lébgà	Móbilă lébgà mé.
Vwátuudă	Vwátuudă lébgà mé.
lébà	Vwátuudă lébà mé.
Móbilă	Móbilă lébà mé.
lébgà	Móbilă lébgà mé.
Silgă	Silgă lebgà mé.
leba	Silgă leba mé.
Tiděwă	Tiděwă lébà mé.

23.1C Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
A kégà né tiděwă.	A kégà né tiděwă.
silgă.	A kégà né silgă.
lébà	A lébà né silgă.
Wágduğě né silgă.	A lebă Wágduğě né silgă.
lébgà	A lébgà Wágduğě né silgă.
Wágduğě n wá.	A lébgà Wágduğě n wá.
Padiě.	A lébgà Wágduğě n wa Padiě.

Cue

Bám nǎǎ n yíi Dákadě.
n kég Padiě.

Response

Bám nǎǎ n yíi Dákadě n wa Padiě.
Bám nǎǎ n yíi Dákadě n kég Padiě.

23.2A Repetition Drill

The tense marker /dá/ or /dágě/ as used with stative verbs.

Yǎm tǎda zěédò.

You have a garden.

Yǎm dá tǎda zěédò.

You had a garden.

A zǎdà ká.

It is far from here.

A dá zǎdà ká. }

It was far from here.

A dágě zǎdà ká. }

M dátě n gómà né yǎm.

I want to talk to you.

M dá dátě n góma bé yǎm. }

I wanted to talk to you.

M dágě n dátě n gómà né yǎm. }

23.2B Repetition Drill

The tonal properties of the tense marker /dá/.

Tónd tǎdà zěédò.

We have a garden.

Tónd dá tǎdà zěédò.

We had a garden.

Ub tǎdà zěédò.

They have a garden.

Ub dá tǎdà zěédò.

They had a garden.

Ub ká tád zěéd ye.

They do not have a garden.

Ub dá ká tád zěéd ye.

They didn't have a garden.

Tónd dá ká tád zěéd ye.

We didn't have a garden.

Tónd dá dátě n looga me.

We wanted to leave.

Tónd dá ká dátě n loog ye.

We didn't want to leave.

23.2C Note

The past tense of stative verbs.

1. The preverbal particle /dá/ marks the past tense of stative verbs.

M dá tǎdà zěédò.

I had a garden.

2. This particle marks the only past tense form of stative verbs since there is no perfective-imperfective distinction.

23.2D Transformation Drill

Practice: The position and the tone of the tense marker /dá/.

Directions: The instructor makes a statement. The student repeats the sentence and adds /dá/ in the proper place.

Instructor

M tádà móbilì.
Tónd tádà móbilì.
A zádà ká.
A ká zád yé.
Ub dátě n zinda mé.
Ub ká dátě n zind yé.
M tádà zákà.
Tónd tádà zákà.
A bée ká.
A ká bée ká yé.
Ub dátě n looga mé.
Ub ká dátě n loog yé.
Tónd tádà zěédò.
M ká tád zěéd ye.
A zádà ká wúsgo.
A ká zád ká wúsg yé.
Tónd tádà kúmba.
M yá kádmbíga.
M ká kádmbíig yé.

Student

M dá tádà móbilì.
Tónd dà tádà móbilì.
A dá zádà ká.
A dá ká zád yé.
Ub dá dátě n zinda mé.
Ub dá ká dátě n zind yé.
M dá tádà zákà.
Tónd dá tádà zákà.
A dá bee ká.
A dá ká bée ká yé.
Ub dá dátě n looga mé.
Ub dá ká dátě n loog yé.
Tónd dà tádà zěédò.
M dá ká tád zěéd yé.
A dá zádà ká wúsgo.
A dá ká zád ká wúsg yé.
Tónd dà tádà kúmba.
M dá yá kádmbíga.
M dá ká kádmbíig yé.

23.2E Response Drill

Practice: The tense marker /dá/ in controlled conversation.

Directions: The instructor asks a question. The student answers it by saying that the condition existed at one time but does not exist any more.

Instructor

¿Yám dátě n kěě mé bí?
¿Tónd dátě n kadmá mé bí?
¿Ub dátě n yíi mé bí?

Student

Ngée, m dágě n dátě n kěě mé, la
m ká lébě n dát yé.
Ngée, id dágě n dátě n kadmá mé,
la id ká lébě n dát yé.
Ngée, ub dágě n dátě n yíi mé, la
ub ká lébě n dát yé.

Instructor

¿A dátě n loogá mé bí?

¿Tónd dátě n dii mé bí?

¿Yám dátě n kelgá mé bí?

¿A dátě n tumá mé bí?

¿Yám dátě n deemá mé bí?

¿Yám tádà kútweef bí?

¿Yám tádà lígd bí?

¿Yám ya táksì soab bí?

¿Bám ya ótel sòab bí?

¿A tádà zěed bí?

¿A Kúk tádà lígd bí?

¿A Sékù ya lógtòd bí?

¿A Kúlg bée tǎǎsg bí?

¿Yám tádà dádíó bí?

¿Yám tádà búgdàog bí?

¿Yám ya kádèmbílg bí?

¿I yá támnet bí?

Student

Ngée, a dágě n dátě n loogá mé,
la a ká lébě n dát yé.

Ngée, id dágě n dátě n dii mé, la
id ká lébě n dát yé.

Ngée, m dágě n dátě n kelgá mé,
la m ká lébě n dát yé.

Ngée, a dágě n dátě n tumá mé, la
a ká lébě n dát yé.

Ngée, m dágě n dátě n deemá mé,
la m ká lébě n dát yé.

Ngée, m dágě n tádà kútweefà, la
m ká lébě n tád yé.

Ngée, m dágě n tádà lígdi, la m
ká lébě n tád yé.

Ngée, m dágě n ya tǎdkì soabá, la
m ká lébě n ya a ye.

Ngée, ub dágě n ya ótel sòaba, la
ub ká lébě n ya ub yé.

Ngée, a dágě n tádà zěëndò, la a ká
lébě n tád yé.

Ngée, a Kúk dágě n tádà lígdi, la
a ká lébě n tád yé.

Ngée, a Sékù dágě n ya lógtodè,
la a ká lébě n ya lógtòd yé.

Ngée, a Kúlg dágě m bee tǎǎsgo,
la a ká lébě n be tǎǎsg yé.

Ngée, m dágě n tádà dádíó, la m
ká lébě n tád yé.

Ngée, m dágě n tádà búgdàog, la m
ká lébě n tád á yé.

Ngée, m dágě n ya kádèmbíiga, la
m ká lébě n yá á yé.

Ngée, tónd dágě ya tammeta, la
tónd ká lébě n yá á yé.

Comprehension Drill 1

Dúnda ya zimáasà. Ambassadeur né mam náã n kégà a Sablógò. ¿Ya bwé n bee bé? Ya déem n bée bé. Dé poodé id náã m maana táãsgò. ¿Néb wána n kég né yãm? Néba a naasé. Ambassadeur né a pága la a bíiga n pas né mam. ¿Yãm loogdá yíbeoogà bí, bí zaábdà? Tónd lóogdá mwásmwasà. ¿Kibàes bugò n bee ámbassadè dúnda? Ya kibàes nóogò n bee ámbassadè dúnda.

Questions:

1. ¿Dúnda ya bwé?
Dúnda ya zimáasà.
2. ¿Ambassadeur né yãm kégdà yae?
Ambassadeur né mam kégdà a Sablógò.
3. ¿Ya bwé n bee bé?
Ya déem n bee bé.
4. ¿Dé podé, yãm náã m maana bwé?
Dé podé, tónd náã m maana táãsgò.
5. ¿Ya néb wána n kég né yãm?
Neba a naasé.
6. ¿Ya Ambassadeur né ándà?
Ya Ambassadeur né a pága la a bíiga.
7. ¿N pas ándà?
N pas mám.
8. ¿Yãm lóogdá yíbeoogà bí, bí zaábdà?
Tónd lóogdá mwásmwasà.
9. ¿Ya kibàes bugò n bee ámbassadè dúnda?
Ya kibàes nóogò n bee ámbassadè dúnda.

UNIT 24

Basic Sentences: Tembila and Seku continue their conversation.

-Tembila-

M dá mii wala zěědã.

I used to spray the garden.

M dá mii wala zěěda koom.

I used to spray the garden
with water.

Zimáas fãã, m dá mii n wáalà m
zěěda kóòm.

Every Sunday, I used to water the
garden.

-Sékù-

¿Yãm dá míi n tuma i yé?

Did you work alone?

-Tembila-

Áyò.

No.

Dáwa ísak dà songdá mam.

Dawa Isak helped me.

Tónd mii n yá kà zěěd kòamba.

We used to pick the plants.

Tónd mii yákà zěěda koamb níng súb.

We used to pick those plants.

Tónd mii n yákà zěěd kòamb níng súb
sé bíbã.

We picked the plants which were
ripe.

-Sékù-

¿Dá ya túm tóog bí?

Was it hard work?

-Tembila-

Ngée,

Yes,

la mam dagè n nógà á la mé.

but I liked it.

GENERAL NOTES

24A /mii/ plus another verb.

Zimáas fãã, m dá mii n wáalà m zěěda kóòm.

The verb /mii/, 'know', 'be acquainted with', 'know how to', as the first of two verbs with a single subject means, 'do habitually, regularly, usually, from time to time, sometimes', e.g., the sentence above, 'Every Sunday, I used to water the garden.'

24.1A Repetition Drill

The tense marker /da/.

¿Yám dà tumda bwě yíbeog fá?

What work did you do every day?

¿Bám dà kèngdà yae zaábd fá?

Where did they go every evening?

¿Yám dà mii n tumda i yé?

Did you have the habit of working alone?

M da mii n wáalà zěěda kóòm.

I used to have the habit of watering the garden.

Dáwa Isák dà songdá mam.

Isaac used to help me.

24.1B Habitual Action in the past

There are two ways to indicate habitual action in the past: /dá mii/ plus the perfective, and /dá/ plus the imperfective form of the verb. They may be used interchangeably.

24.1C Response Drill

Practice: Habitual action in the past.

Directions: The instructor will ask a question. The student answers it. All questions are contextually related to facilitate comprehension and to demonstrate the use of the tense marker. The students and instructor discuss what they used to do every day when they were studying at Bobo.

Instructor

Student

¿Yám dà kèngda kadn dóogě
dád fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà kèngdà kadědoogě
dád fá.

¿Yám dà kadmda sebd dád
fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà kadmda seb dád fá.

¿Yám dà kelgda dádiò zaábd
fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà kelgda dádiò zaábd
fá.

¿Yám dà mii n díka tídě dád
fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà mii n díka tídě dád
fá.

¿Yám dà mii n lóogà pond dád
fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà mii n lóogà pind dád
fá.

¿Yám dà mii n gómà Mǒǒd dad
fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà mii n gómà Mǒǒd dad
fá.

¿Yám dà mii bángà i kádèng dád
fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà mii bángà id kádèng
dád fá.

¿Yám dà gómà ánglès bí?

Ngée, tónd dà mii n gómà ánglès.

InstructorStudent

¿Yám dà yítà kadn dóogè dád
fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà yítà kadn dóogè dád
fá.

¿Yám dà wumda gómà fá bí?

Ngée, tónd dà wumda gómà fá.

Comprehension Drill 1

Dáwa Tembíl dá tādà zěěnd bílf a zákà púgè. A zěědà púgè, a dá tādà kipade, tomato, la kumba. Dáwa Ísak dà tumda né bam. Ya yéndà dágè n geet zěěndă. A dágè n míi n waalg ub la koom yibeoog făă. Dáwa Sékù sũüd da ya noog wusg né Dáwa Ísak tuumă. Ub dá kà daad zěěnd yé să pá mǎngòdó la papaye bala.

Questions:

1. ¿M bá Tembila, yám dà tādà zěěd bí?
Ngée, m dá tādà zěěd bílf m zakě.
2. ¿Yám dà tādà bwě né bwě a púgè.
M dá tādà kipade, tomáto, la kumba.
3. ¿Yám dà tādà banana la papáyè mé bí?
Áyò, m dá kà tādà banana la papái yé.
4. ¿Dáwa Ísak dà tumda né yám bí?
Ngée, a dá tumda né mam.
5. ¿Yám sũüd dá ya nóog né a tuuma bí?
Ngée, mam sũüd dá ya nóog né a tuuma wusgo. Tónd dágè n kà daad zěěd yé.

Comprehension Drill 2

Mam dá tādà kútweefò, la m ká lébě n tád yé. Mam kutwéefà dá kà kénd yé. Dád fă mam míi n tala a la mé kéng tí ub tugó n manage. M zoa Kúk tādà kútweefò, la yénd dē wă ya paalga.

Questions:

1. ¿Yám dà tādà kútweef bí?
Ngée, mam dá tādà kútweefò, la mam kutwéefà dá kà kénd yé.
2. ¿Yám mām tí a dá kà kéndà?
A kadsă dágè n kà sùmà yé.

3. ¿Tí yǎm mǐi n tala á la mé keng tí bu tugǒ m manag bí?
Ngée, dad fá mǐi n tala á la mé keng tí ub tugǒ m manage.
4. ¿Yǎm zoa Kúk dá tǎdà wéef bí?
Ngée, m zoa Kúk dá tǎdà kutwéefò.
5. ¿I zoa Kúk dǎ wǎ dá ya wána?
M zoa Kúk dǎ wǎ da ya paalga.

UNIT 25

Basic Sentences

-Sékù-

ya wána
 ;Ya wán tí yám ká wáa tónd yíid zaamé?

why
 Why didn't you come to our house
 yesterday?

-Kúka-

mam dá watá mé
 tí m kútweef sǎǎm sódè
 Mam dá watá mé tí m kútweef sǎǎm sódè.

I was coming
 when my bicycle
 broke down on the road
 I was on my way, when my bicycle
 broke down.

-Sékù-

bwě maane
 ;Bwě máan yám kútweefà?

What happened
 What happened to your bicycle?

-Kúka-

A pédalě a dá ká suma yé.
 M dá kèngdà sódè n waa n lui.

The pedal wasn't working.
 I was coming on the road and fell.

GENERAL NOTES

25A Partitive with /-ě/.

A pédalě n dá ká suma yé.

A piece of a whole is indicated by /-ě/ suffixed to the piece, e.g.,
 /a pédalě/, literally 'its pedal in/from/of (the bicycle)', shows that the
 pedal is a part of something larger, namely, a bicycle. Often it is not
 convenient to translate this sort of partitive, as in the sentence above, 'Its
 pedal was no good.', perhaps more literally, 'Its pedal piece was no good.'

25.1A Repetition Drill

/dá/ plus the imperfective for past interrupted action.

Mam dá wata mé tí m kútweef
 sǎǎm sódè.

I was coming when my bicycle
 broke down on the road.

M dá pagdá búdò tí ub dá yítà.	I was closing the office as they were leaving.
M dá kèngdà sódè n wa n lui.	I was walking on the street and fell.
Mam dá lòogdà lógtòd yíidè tí a kédè.	I was leaving the hospital as he was entering.
Mam dá yítà mé tí Pága Mádía watě.	I was going out when Maria came.
Tónd dà lòogdà mé tí nasad silgǎ luitě.	We were leaving, when the plane was crashing.

25.1B Note: Past Interrupted Action

/dá/ plus the imperfective indicates past interrupted action as well as past habitual action depending on the context.

Of interest in the above drill is the last verb of each sentence. Two simultaneously continuing and incomplete actions are both /dá/ plus imperfective. If one action interrupts another, one verb is perfective and the other is /dá/ plus the imperfective.

25.1C Response Drill

Practice: /dá/ plus the imperfective used to indicate interrupted action, in controlled conversation.

Directions: The instructor will ask a question. The student will answer it. All the questions are contextually related having to do with 'What were you doing as Paul was entering the room.'

Instructor

Yǎm dà kelgdà kíbàes tí á Paul watě bí?
 Yǎm dà pagdá búdò tí á Paul watě bí?
 Yǎm dà boondá á John tí á Paul watě bí?
 Yǎm dà kelgdá dádíó tí á Paul watě bí?
 Yǎm dà kadmdá mé tí á Paul watě bí?
 Yǎm dà díkdà tídè tí á Paul watě bí?

Student

Ngée, tónd dà kelgdá kíbàes tí á Paul watě.
 Ngée, tónd dà pagdá búdo tí á Paul watě.
 Ngée, tónd dà boondá a John tí á Paul watě.
 Ngée, tónd dà kelgdá dadíó tí á Paul watě.
 Ngée, tónd dà kadmdá mé tí á Paul watě.
 Ngée, tónd dà díkdà tídè tí á Paul watě.

InstructorStudent

¿Yám dà pakdá dáagà tí á

Paul watě bí?

¿Yám dà yìtá mé tí á Paul

watě bí?

¿Yám dà deemdá mé tí á Paul

watě bí?

¿Yám dà tumdá mé tí á Paul

watě bí?

Ngée, tónd dà pakda daagà tí á

Paul watě.

Ngée, tónd dà yìtá mé tí á Paul

watě.

Ngée, tónd dà deemdá mé tí á

Paul watě.

Ngée, tónd dà tumdá mé tí á

Paul watě.

Comprehension Drill 1

Pága Pók kà gě m bá Sékù zaam yé. M bá Sékù yéelà mé tí laafí dagè n ká bé b yé. Ub zúgà dagè zaábdà. Ub kútweefà mé dagè n sǎǎmà mé. A pedalě n dagè ká suma yé. M bá Sékù yéelà mé tí ub dagè n kéndà sodě n wa n lui.

Questions:

1. ¿Pága Pók gě la m bá Sékù zaame bí?
Áyò, ub ká gě b yé.
2. ¿Ya bwé n dagè n tád bábà?
Ub yéelà mé tí laafí dagè n ká bé b yé.
3. ¿M bá Sékù bwé dagè zaábdà?
Ub zúgà dagè zaábdà.
4. ¿Ub kútweefà mé dagè n sǎǎmà mé bí?
Ngée, ub kútweefà mé dagè sǎǎmà mé.
5. ¿Ya bwé n dagè n sǎǎmà mé?
A pedalě n dagè n sǎǎmà mé.
6. ¿M bá Sékù yéelà mé tí b dagè n kéndà yae?
Ub yéelà mé tí b dagè n kéndà sodě n wa n lui.

Comprehension Drill 2

Dáwa Sékù dá kéndà Kulbà zaame, tí Pága Mádía watě. Pága Mádía dagè n zómbà kútweefò. A kútweefà tógò n sǎǎmà dáagà sod zugě. A pedaldámá dagè n ka suma yé. A dagè n kéndà mé n wa n tugó n lui.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Sékù dá kéndà yae zaamé?
Ub dá kéndà Kulba.
2. ¿Pága Mádía dá wata mé bí?
Ngée, tí Pága Mádía dá watě.

3. ¿Pága Mádía dágè n zómbà bwě?
Pága Mádía dágè n zómbà kútweefò.
4. ¿Ub kútweefà tógò n sǎǎmà mé bí?
Ngée, ub kútweefà tógò n sǎǎmà mé.
5. ¿A tógò n sǎǎmà yae?
A tógò n sǎǎmà dáaga sòd zugě.
6. ¿Ya bwě n dágè n ká suma?
A pèdaldàmbǎ n dágè n ká suma yé.
7. ¿A dágè n kèngdà mé tí bwě máane?
A dágè n kèngdà mé n wa n tugó n lui.

UNIT 26

Basic Sentences: Tembila looks for a gas station. He runs into Kuka on the Daaga Sode.

-Tembila-

Essence zìig pěě yāmba.
¿Essence zìig pěě yām ká bí,
m zoa?

The gas station is near you.

Is the gas station near (you) here,
my friend?

-Kúka-

Ngée.

Yes.

-Tembila-

¿Yae?

Where?

-Kúka-

Daagá séaagè.

Next to the market.

-Tembila-

¿Móbil gadáz me toě m páamà bé bí?

Is there also a garage there?

-Kúka-

Ngée, a soabá tádà móbil gadáz,

Yes, the owner has an automobile
garage,

m pas né

in addition

M pas né, móbil maangd zíigà.

and also an automobile repair
station.

-Tembila-

Mam dátě n daa essence.

I want to buy gas.

¿Lítà lígid tōě n taa wána?

How much does a liter cost? (How
much can a liter come to?)

-Kúka-

Lítà ya wákya yopoe.

The liter costs thirty-five CFA
francs.

26.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: 'having', 'knowing', 'being', etc. when preceded by an auxiliary verb.

A soabá tádà móbil gádáz.

The owner has a service station.

A soabá páamà móbil gádáz.

The owner got (obtained) a service station.

A páamdà móbil gádáz.

He is making the arrangements to get a service station.

A dátě m paamá móbil gádáz.

He wants to have (purchase, acquire) a service station.

A Sékù yá lógtòde.

Seku is a doctor.

A Sékù yíl lógtòde.

Seku became a doctor.

A Sékù yítà lógtòde.

Seku is in the process of becoming a doctor.

A Sékù tǒě n yíl lógtòde.

Seku can be (become) a doctor.

Tidě zǎdà mé né ká.

The train is far from here.

Tidě zǎǎgà mé né ká.

The train has gone away from here.

Tidě zǎǎgdà mé né ká.

The train is going away from here.

Tónd dátě n zǎǎgá kóambá né

We want to get the children away from the railroad track. (put a distance between the children and the track.)

tiděwà sódé.

Mam míi mé, tí yám waa mé.

I know (am in a state of knowing) that you came.

Mam bángà mé tí yám waa mé.

I know (found out) that you came.

Mam tǒě m bangá kíbaesà béoogò.

I can find out the news tomorrow.

Mam dá bee ká zaamé.

I was here yesterday.

Mam tǒě n waa ká zaábdà.

I can be (arrive) here this evening.

Mam tǒě n naamá ká béoogò.

I can be here tomorrow.

Mam dátě m bangá ambassadeur.

I want to get to know the ambassador.

26.1B Note: 'having', 'knowing', 'being', etc. preceded by auxiliary verbs.

1. Stative verbs are those that have one ending for both the complete and the incomplete aspects of the verb. In other words, they are the verbs that lack the distinction between verb + /a/ and verb + /da/. See Notes 8A and 9A.

2. These verbs follow tense markers like /dá/ and /nǎ/.

3. They never follow auxiliary verbs like /tõẽ/, /dátẽ/, or /nãã/.

26.1C Response Drill

Practice: 'having', 'knowing', 'being', etc. after certain verbs.

Directions: The student answers every question by saying 'No, but I can...', 'No but he can...'.

Yám t'adà wákíd kóbisì bí?

Áyò, la m tǒǒ m paamá wákíd
kóbisì béeogò.

¿Yám mii la i kaděg bí?

Áyò, la m tǒě m bangá á la mé
zaábda.

¿Nasaad silgá zìig zǎdà ká bí?

Áyò, la m tǒě n zaaga ne ká
zaábdǎ.

¿A ísak ya lígd sòab bí?

Áyò, la á tǒǒ n yí lígǔ sòab béoogò.

¿A Tembíl tádà válìz bí?

Áyò, la á tǒě n paama valiz
béogò.

¿A Kúk míi yãm zoawã bí?

Áyò, la á tǒǒ m bangá a la mé béoogò.

¿A Pók mii kibáesà bí?

Áyò, la á tǒǒ m bangá b la me béeogò.

¿Dáwa Sékù táda móbil bí?

Áyò, la á tǒě m paamá móbil
béogò.

¿A B́asàb míi tǎǎsǎ bí?

Áyò, la á tǔě m bangá tǎǎsǔ bǎoogò.

¿A Antoine ya kádèsamb bí?

Áyò, la á tõe n yi kaděsamb béoogò.

¿Dáwa Tembíl tádà kútweef bí?

Áyò, la á tǒǒ m paamá kútwèef
béogò.

¿Pága Madia yíidǎ zǎdà ká bí?

Áyò, la á tǒě n zǎǎga ka beoogo.

¿Pága Elizabet míi bíiga bí?

Áyò, la á tǒǒ m bangá á la béoogò.

Yǎm mǐ Dáwa Basb bí?

Áyò, la m tǒǔ m bangá á la béoogò.

¿A ísak tādà sébd bí?

Áyò, la á tǒǒ m paamá sébd béoogó.

¿Nebà zíg zǎdà ká bí?

Áyò, la b zíg tǒě n zǎǎgá ká
béogò.

¿Tiděwà zìig zǎdà ká bí?

Áyò, la á tǒě n zǎǎgá ká né béeogò.

Yăm tàdà líng bí?

Áyò, la m tǒě m paamá lígd béoogò.

Yǎm mǐ la á Kúk zàkà bí?

Áyò, m ka mi ye, la m tǒǒ m bangá
á la mé béoogò.

Practice: 'knowing', 'having', and 'being', as the only verb in a sentence and then as preceded by an auxiliary.

Directions: The instructor asks a question. Student A says 'No, but he can...'. Student A then asks the same question of Student B. Student B says 'No, but he wants to...'.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
¿A Kúk míi yǎm zoawa bí?	Áyò, la á tǒě m bangá á la mé.	
	¿A Kúk míi yǎm zoawǎ bí?	Áyò, la a dátě m bangá á la mé.
¿A Pók míi kibáesà bí?	Áyò, la á tǒě m bangá á la mé.	
	¿A Pók míi kibáesà bí?	Áyò, la á dátě m bangá á la mé.
¿Dáwa Tembíl táda móbil bí?	Áyò, la á tǒě m paamá móbilì.	
	¿Dáwa Tembíl táda móbil bí?	Áyò, la á dátě m paamá á la mé.
¿A Básàb míi tǎǎsg bí?	Áyò, la á tǒě m bangá á la mé.	
	¿A Básàb míi tǎǎsg bí?	Áyò, la á dátě m bangá á la mé.
¿Yǎm míi la i káděg bí?	Áyò, la m tǒě m bangá á la mé.	
	¿Yǎm míi la i káděg bí?	Áyò, la m dátě m bangá á la mé.
¿A Sékù táda wákíd kóbisì bí?	Áyò, la a tǒě m paamá á la mé.	
	¿A Sékù táda wákíd kóbisì bí?	Áyò, la a dátě m paamá á la mé.
¿A Ísak ya lígd sòab bí?	Áyò, la a tǒě n yi lígd sòaba.	
	¿A Ísak ya lígd sòab bí?	Áyò, la a dátě n yi ligd soaba.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
¿Dáwa Tembíl tádà vǎlìz bí?	Áyò, la a tǒě m paamá vǎlìza.	
	¿Dáwa Tembíl tádà vǎlìz bí?	Áyò, la a dátě m paamá vǎlìzà.
¿A Antoine ya káděsamb bí?	Áyò, la a tǒě n yí káděsambá.	
	¿A Antoine ya káděsamb bí?	Áyò, la a dátě n yi káděsambá.
¿Dáwa Kúk tádà kútweef bí?	Áyò, la a tǒě m paamá kútweefò.	
	¿Dáwa Kúk tádà kútweef bí?	Áyò, la a dátě m paamá kútweefò.
¿Pága Mǎdia yíidǎ zǎdǎ ká bí?	Áyò, la á tǒě n zaagá ká.	
	¿Pága Mǎdia yíidǎ zǎdǎ ká bí?	Áyò, la a dátě n zaagá á la ká.
¿Pága Elizabet míi bíiga bí?	Áyò, la á tǒě m bangá á la mé.	
	¿Pága Elizabet míi bíiga bí?	Áyò, la á dátě m bangá á la mé.
¿Yǎm míi Dáwa Basb bí?	Áyò, la m tǒě m bangá á la mé.	
	¿Yǎm míi Dáwa Basb bí?	Áyò, la m dátě m bangá á la mé.
¿A Ísak tádà sébd bí?	Áyò, la á tǒě m paamá á la mé.	
	¿A Ísak tádà sébd bí?	Áyò, la á dátě m paamá á la mé.
¿Nébà zíig zǎdǎ ká bí?	Áyò, la b zíig tǒě n zǎǎgá ká.	
	¿Nébàzíig zǎdǎ ká bí?	Áyò, la b dátě n zǎǎgá ká.
¿Yǎm tádà lígd bí?	Áyò, la m tǒě m paamá lígd	
	¿Yǎm tádà lígd bí?	Áyò, la m dátě m paamá lígdì.

Comprehension Drill 1

Essence zìig pée yǎmbà ká, m zoa. A bée dáagà séaagè. Móbil gádáz mé tǒǒ m paamá bé. Yá Dáwa Tembìl lá essenceǎ zìig sòaba. Dáwa Tembìl tádà gádáz mé, m pás né móbil mànagde zìigà. Essence litd ya wákya yopoe.

Questions:

1. ¿Essence zìig pée yǎmbà ká bí?
Ngée, a bée dáagà séaagè.
2. ¿Móbil gádáz mé tǒǒ m paamá bé bí?
Ngée, móbil gádáz mé tǒǒ m paamá bé.
3. ¿Yá Dáwa Tembìl lá essenceǎ zìig sòab bí?
Ngée, yá Dáwa Tembìl lá essenceǎ sìig sòaba.
4. ¿A Tembìl tádà gádáz mé bí?
Ngée, a tádà gádáz mé.
5. ¿A tádà móbil mànagde zìig mé bí?
Ngée, a tádà móbil mànagde zìig mé.
6. ¿Essence litd lígd yá wána?
Essence litd lígd ya wákya yopoe.

UNIT 27

Basic Sentences

-Lókdè-

kaděsāmbá

Mam wúmà dádíòè, tì yǎm dátě
m mee kádn doogó.

Kadensāmba, mam wúmà dádíòè, t yǎm
dátě m mee kádn doog Kúlba.

¿Yá sídà?

teacher

I heard on the radio, that
you want to build a school
house.

Professor, I heard on the radio
that you want to build a school
in Kulba.

Is it true?

-Sékù-

Ngée, yá sídà.

Yes, that's true.

-Lókdè-

Mam yùud lá Lókdè.

Mam yá Hersent tuma kásma.

¿Yǎm sǎ dátà, tónd tǒè m mee mé.

My name is Lokde.

I am an official of the Hersent
company.

If you want, we can build it.

-Sékù-

Tónd síd dátà mé

Tónd síd dátà nébà

Tónd síd dátà néb sǎ nǎǎ m mee.

¿Yǎm tǒè n singá dábudè?

We really want

We really want a person

We really want some one who will
build it.

When can you begin?

-Lókdè-

Béogò, m nǎǎ n waa yéel yǎ.

Tomorrow I'll tell you.

27.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: The tones of the verb /nǎǎ/.

Yǎm nǎǎ m mee kádn doogó.

Yǎm mee kádn doogó.

Tónd wumda Móòdè.

Tónd nǎǎ n wuma Móòdè.

You will build a school.

You built a school.

We understand Moré.

We will understand Moré.

Ub nǎǎ n wuma Mǒǒdè.	They will understand Moré.
A mée kádn doogó.	He built a school.
A nǎǎ m mee kádn doogó.	He will build a school.
A ká nǎǎ m mee kádn doog yé.	He won't build a school.
Tónd ká nǎǎ m mee kádn doog yé.	We won't build a school.

27.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: The use of the verb /nǎǎ/.

A Sékù nǎǎ m mee kádn doogó.	Seku will build a school.
A Ísak nǎǎ n kèngà lógtòd yíídè.	Isaac is going to the hospital.
A Pók ká nǎǎ n dík taksí yé.	Poko is not going to take a cab.
Tónd nǎǎ n kèngà tidè gadè.	We are going to the railroad station.
A Kúlg nǎǎ n sǎǎmà kútweefà.	Kulga will wreck the bicycle.
Tónd ká nǎǎ n lóog tǎǎsg béoog yé.	We are not going hunting tomorrow.
A Kúk nǎǎ n kèsà válìzdambá.	Kuka will put the suitcases inside.

27.2B Repetition Drill

Illustration: The use of /nǎǎ/ plus /waa/.

M nǎǎ n waa yeel yǎ.	I intend to tell you.
Tidè nǎǎ n waa kèngà Bóbò.	The train will have to go to Bobo.
A ká nǎǎ n waa dii yé.	He does not intend to eat.
Tónd nǎǎ n waa kelga dádiò.	We will have to listen to the radio.
M ká nǎǎ n waa kadm béoog yé.	I will not have to study tomorrow.
A Pók nǎǎ n waa kèngà dáagè.	Poko intends to go to the market.
Tónd nǎǎ n waa zamsa kádngó.	We will have to learn the lesson.
Ub ká nǎǎ n waa daa móbil yé.	They do not intend to buy a car.
A nǎǎ n waa tuma mé.	He will have to work.
A nǎǎ n waa kóosà a móbilà.	She plans to sell her car.
A nǎǎ n kèsà válìzdambá.	He must put the valises inside.
Yám nǎǎ n waa díkà táksì.	You intend to take a cab.

27.2C Note: Proximate future: Indefinite future.

The verbal constructions /nǎǎ/ and /nǎǎ n waa/. /nǎǎ/ indicates the proximate future and purpose. See Note 6B. It stands after the negative marker /ká/.

/náǎ n waa/ indicates the indefinite future and purpose. The time referent of the indefinite future is rather vague and the probability of occurrence is much less than that of the proximate future. The proximate future most often translates, 'going to', 'will', but the indefinite future most often translates 'plan to', 'intend to'.

27.2D Transformation Response Drill

Practice: Use of /náǎ/ in contrast to /náǎ n waa/.

Directions: The instructor makes a statement saying that some one wants to do something. One student then asks another 'Is it true that so-and-so will do such-and-such?' The second student answers 'I don't know, but I think that he intends to do it.'

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
A Pók dátě n koosa a móbilǎ.	¿Yá sídà tí a Pók náǎ n koosa a móbilǎ bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa koosa á la mé.
A Básb dátě n waa ká.	¿Yá sídà tí a Básb náǎ n waa ká bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa waa mé.
Logtód a Sékù dátě n díkà sílgà n kég Abigéǎ.	¿Yá sídà tí logtód a Sékù náǎ n díkà sílgà n kég Abigéǎ?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa kégà mé.
Président dátě n gómà dádioè dumda.	¿Yá sídà tí Président n náǎ n gómà dádioè dúnda?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa gómà mé.
A Básb dátě n daa kútweefò.	¿Yá sídà tí a Básb náǎ n daa kútweef bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa daa mé.
A Elizabet dátě n kégà Dápoi zaábdǎ.	¿Yá sídà tí a Elizabet náǎ n kégà Dápoi zaábdǎ bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa kégà mé.
Abigéǎ sílgǎ wata béoogò.	¿Yá sídà tí Abigéǎ sílgà náǎ n waa béoog bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa waa béoogò.
Dáwa Antpine lebda Pádì béoogò.	¿Yá sídà tí a Antoine náǎ n leba Pádì béoog bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a náǎ n waa leba mé.
A Pók dátě n zamsa Móǒdè.	¿Yá sídà tí a Pók náǎ náǎ zamsa móǒd bí?	M ká mí yé la m tédà mé, tí a náǎ n waa zamsa á la mé.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student A</u>	<u>Student B</u>
Ambassadeur dátě n gómà béoogò.	Yá sídà tí Ambassadeur nǎǎ n gómà béoog bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí ub nǎǎ n waa gómà mé.
A Pók yákà tòmàtdamb zěědě.	Yá sídà tí a Pók nǎǎ n yákà tòmàtdamb zěědě?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a nǎǎ n waa yákà mé.
A Lókd dátě m mée kádn doogò.	Yá sídà tí a Lókd nǎǎ m mée kádn doog bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a nǎǎ n waa mée mé.
A Pók dátě m boola lógtòde.	Yá sídà tí a Pók nǎǎ m boola lógtòd bí?	M ká mí yé, la m tédà mé tí a nǎǎ n waa boola á la mé.

27.3A Repetition Drill

Illustration: A special use of /nǎǎ/.

M waa mé n nǎǎ n gés yām.	I came (in order) to see you.
M waa mé n nǎǎ n deem.	I came (in order) to have a good time.
M díkdà tídè n nǎǎ n kégng Bobó.	I am taking the train to go to Bobo.
M zómbà kútweefà n nǎǎ n kégng Dapoyá.	I rode my bicycle to go to Dapoy.
A pákà dáadio n nǎǎ n kélg kibáesè.	He turned on the radio to hear the news.
A Kúlg wata mé n nǎǎ n gés mam.	Kulga is coming to see me.
Tónd yíi Abigéè n nǎǎ n kégng Bobó.	We left Abidjan for the purpose of going to Bobo.

27.3B Note: Special use of /nǎǎ/.

1. Each of the illustration sentences of drill 27.3A begins with a complete clause: subject + verb + object or complement, e.g.,

M waa mé.

M díkdà tídè.

Tónd yíi Abigéè.

2. The verb /nǎǎ/ has the same subject as the preceding verb, but this subject is not repeated.
3. When /nǎǎ/ stands in this position, it is translated as 'in order to' or 'for the purpose of'.
4. /nǎǎ/ indicates a future time in all positions. Sometimes it is a future to some previous past. It is only its translation into English which varies.
5. The verb following /nǎǎ/ in this position appears as a stem only.

27.3C Transformation Response Drill

Practice: /nǎǎ/ special use.

Directions: The instructor suggests an answer and then asks a question. The student responds to the question with the suggested answer. In other words, the instructor says, 'to have a good time. Why did you come?' The student then says 'I came to have a good time.'

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
deema mé. ǃYa bwě tí yǎm waa?	M wáa mé n nǎǎ n deem.
tuma mé. ǃYa bwě tí yǎm waa?	M wáa mé n nǎǎ n tum.
kéng Bobo. ǃYa bwě tí yǎm díkd tídě?	M díkdà tídě n nǎǎ n kéng Bobó.
kelg kibáesè. ǃYa bwě tí a Pók pak dáadio?	A Pók paka dáadio n nǎǎ n kelg kibáesè.
kéng Bobo. ǃYa bwě tí a Pók yí Abigěǎ?	A Pók yí Abigěǎ nǎǎ n kéng Bobó.
tugǒ n daa móbili. ǃYa bwě tí a Kúk lóogà Abigěǎ?	A Kúk lóogà Abigěǎ n nǎǎ n tugǒ n daa móbili.
koos fuugu. ǃYa bwě tí a Sékù dáa fúugù?	A Sékù dáa fúugù n nǎǎ n koose.
tugǒ n tum. ǃYa bwě tú a kéng búdoě?	A kéngà búdoě n nǎǎ n tugǒ n tum.
gómà Fídǎsé. ǃYa bwě tí b zams Fídǎsé?	Ub zámse Fídǎsé n nǎǎ n góm á.
dii a. ǃYa bwě tí a Ísak yǎk tomátǎ?	A Ísak yǎkà tómata n nǎǎ n dí á.
kéngà Sablógò. ǃYa bwě tí yǎm dát móbili?	M dátà móbili nǎǎ n kéng á Sablógò.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
daa kútweefò. ¿Ya bwě tí yám koos i móbilà?	M kóosdà m móbilà nnǎǎ n daa kútweefo.
puusa. ¿Ya bwě tí a bóol a Sékù?	A bóolà a Sékù n nǎǎ n puusa.

27.4A Repetition Drill

Illustration: The future tense of 'having', being' and 'knowing'.

1. Écolà bée dáagà séaagě.	The school is near the market.
Écolà dá bee dáagà séaagě.	The school was near the market.
Écolà nǎǎ n nàmà dáagà séaagě.	The school will be near the market.
2. Mam yá lógtodè.	I am a doctor.
Mam dá ya lógtodè.	I was a doctor.
Mam nǎǎ n waa yíi lógtodè.	I shall become a doctor.
3. Pága Mádía tada wákid kóbisi.	Mary has one thousand francs.
Pága Mádía dá tada wákid kóbisi.	Mary had one thousand francs.
Pága Mádía nǎǎ m paama wákid kóbisi.	Mary will have one thousand francs.
4. Écolà zíig zǎdà mé né daagǎ.	The school is far from the market.
Écolà zíig dá zǎdà mé né daagǎ.	The school was far from the market.
Écolà zíig m nǎǎ n waa zǎǎgà mé né daagǎ.	The school will be far from the market.
5. M ká mí yé.	I don't know.
M dá kà mí yé.	I didn't know.
M nǎǎ n waa bángà mé.	I will know.

27.4D Response Drill

Practice: The use of /nǎǎ/ and /nǎǎ n waa/ with stative verbs.

Directions: The instructor asks the student a question. The student always answers, 'No, but I will...', 'No, but he will, etc'.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
¿Yám ya lógtod bí?	Áyò, la m nǎǎ n waa yi logtode.
¿Pága Mádía tada wákid kóbisi bí?	Áyò, la a nǎǎ n waa paamá wákid kóbisi.
¿Yám mií síd bí?	Áyò, la m nǎǎ n waa bángà sídà.
¿Lécolà zíig zǎdà mé né daagá bí?	Áyò, la a zíig nǎǎ n waa zǎǎgà né daagǎ.

Instructor

¿Lécolà bee dáagà séaagè bí?
 ¿Yám mii mé bí?
 ¿Tammeta mii kádèsamb bí?
 ¿Yám bee ótelè mwásà bí?
 ¿Logtód a Sékù táda wáliz bí?
 ¿A Tembíl yá lígd sòab bí?

Student

Áyò, la a nǎǎ waa bee daagǎ séaagè.
 Áyò, la m nǎǎ n waa n bǎngà ála mé
 Áyò, la a nǎǎ n waa n bǎngà á la mé.
 Áyò, la m nǎǎ n waa n wáa bé.
 Áyò, la a nǎǎ n waa n paama á la
 mé.
 Áyò, la a nǎǎ n yíi á la mé.

27.5A Repetition Drill

M nǎǎ n lebé m paamá wákíd kóbisì béogò.	I'll have another thousand francs tomorrow.
M ká nǎǎ n lebé m paamá wákíd kóbisì béog yé.	I'll not have another thousand francs tomorrow.
A Sékù nǎǎ n lebé n daa móbil mwásmwasà.	Seku will buy a car again right away.
A Sékù ká nǎǎ n lebé n daa móbil mwásmwasà yé.	Seku will not buy another car right away.
A Sékù lebé n nǎǎ n daa móbil mwásmwasà.	Seku will buy a car again right away.
A Sékù ká nǎǎ n lebé n daa móbil mwásmwasà yé.	Seku will not buy another car right away.

Comprehension Drill

Kádèsambá Sékù dátè m mee kádn dóogò. A bóolà támmeta Lokde tí a wáa mé.
 Támmeta Lókd tumda Hersent. A yá Hersent kasma. Kádèsambá Sékù dátà mé tí
 a Lókd mee kádn dóogà Kúlba. Dáwa Lókd nǎǎ n waa sǒngà kádn dóogà méeb béogò.

Questions:

- ¿Kádèsambá Sékù dátè m mee kádn dóog bí?
Ngée, a dátè m mee kádn dóogò.
- ¿A bóolà támmeta Lókde tí a waa mee bí?
Ngée, a bóolà támmeta Lókde tí a waa mee.
- ¿Tammeta Lókd tumda yae?
A túmdà Hersent.

4. ¿Támmeta Lókd yá Hersent kasm bí?
Ngée, a yá Hersent kasma.
5. ¿A Lókd nǎǎ m mee kádn dóogà yae?
A nǎǎ m mee á la mé Kúlba.
6. ¿A nǎǎ n sòngà á méeb dáudé?
A nǎǎ n sǐngà á méeb béoogò.

UNIT 28

Basic Sentences 1

-Sékù-

Né i zaábdè.

Good evening.

;Yám waa mé bí?

Did you arrive?

;Yám ná waa mé bí?

Did you just arrive?

;Bí i kausa mé?

Did you stay a long time?

;Bí i sè waa kausa mé.

Did you arrive a long time ago?

;Yám ná n waa mé bí, bí i sè waa
káusà mé?Did you just arrive or have you
been here a long time?

-Lókdè-

Áyò, m ná n tātà né yám móbilà.

No, I just came with your car.

Basic Sentences 2

-Lókdè-

zíig búgò

What place

;Zíig búg la yám dát tí b mee?

Where do you want it to be built?

-Sékù-

Églisà séaagè.

Next to the church.

;Yám náà m mee wána?

For how much will you build?

-Lókdè-

Tónd sè ká gè zíigà...

Since we have not seen the
place...

Tónd sè ná n ká gè zíigà...

Since we have not yet seen
the place...

né doogá búdá

and the kind of building

Tónd sè ná n ka yé zíigà né doogá búdá,

Since we have not yet seen the
site and the kind of building,
we cannot yet quote a price.

tónd ná n ká tõe n togs yá a lígd yé.

28.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: The tonal properties of the proximity marker /ná/.

Tónd wata mé.	We are arriving.
Tónd ná n wata mé.	We are just beginning to arrive.
Tónd kadma mé.	We read.
Tónd ná n kadma mé.	We have just read.
Ub ká wúmd Mòòd yé.	They don't understand More
Ub ná n ká wúmd Mòòd yé.	They don't understand More yet.
Yám ká túmd wùsog yé.	You don't work much.
Yám ná k ká túmd wùsog yé.	You have not yet begun working very much.

28.1B Note

The proximity marker /ná n/ is discussed in Note 7B. /ná/ precedes the negative /ká/ or /pá/.

28.1C Repetition Drill

Practice: Distinction of /ná/ and /náá/.

Directions: The student repeats the instructor's statement and then says 'future' or 'not future' to indicate his comprehension.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
Ub ná n ká wá yé.	not future
Ub ká náá n wa yé.	future
A ká náá n dík taksí yé.	future
A ná n ka dik taksí yé.	not future
M ná n ká keng yé.	not future
M ká náá n keng yé.	future
Ub ká náá n zams Mòòd yé.	future
Ub ná n ká n zams Mòòd yé.	not future
A ná n ká n gómd anglés yé.	not future
A ká náá n góm anglés yé.	future
Ub náá n waa mé.	not future
Ub náá n waa mé.	future
A náá n díkà táksì	future
A ná n díkà táksì.	not future
A ná n kengà Bóbò.	not future

Instructor

A náǎ n kɛ́ngá Bóbò.

Ub náǎ n zamsa Mòòdè.

Ub ná n zamsa Mòòdè.

Student

future

future

not future

28.1D Alternate Substitution Drill

Insert the underlined portions in the preceding sentence.

1. A ná n yíí mé.	He has just left.
2. A <u>náǎ n</u> yíí mé.	He is about to leave
3. A náǎ n <u>waa</u> mé.	He's coming right away.
4. A <u>ná n</u> waa mé.	He just arrived.
5. A ná n <u>tuga sódè</u> .	He has just left on a trip.
6. A <u>náǎ n</u> tugá sódè.	He's going to leave on a trip very soon.
7. A náǎ n <u>waa gésà yám</u> .	He's coming to see you very soon.
8. A <u>ná n waa</u> gésà yám.	He has just come to see you.
9. A ná n waa n <u>yéelà yám</u> .	He has just come to tell you.
10. A <u>náǎ n</u> waa yeela yám.	He's coming right away to tell you.

28.2A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Use of the particle /ná/.

Ub ná n kɛ́ndà mé.	They are just beginning to leave.
Ub ná n kɛ́ngà mé.	They have just left.
Ub ná ká kɛ́ng yé.	They have not yet left.
Ub ná n ká kɛ́nd yé.	They are not yet leaving.
Ub ná n wata mé.	They have just begun arriving.
Ub ná n waa mé.	They have just arrived.
Ub ná n ká wá yé.	They have not yet arrived.
Ub ná n ká wát yé.	They have not yet begun to arrive.

28.2B Note

The particle /ná/, its use

1. The preverbal particle /ná/ indicates immediate past action.
2. When the completive form of the verb follows (stem + a), the action has just occurred.

5. /nǎ/ + negative + incompleted form of verb means that the action is not yet occurring.

Directions: All of the following questions are contextually related. The situation is the following: We are all employees in the same school. The students play the part of the faculty. The instructor plays the part of the principal. The principal asks each employee whether the pupils /kadmíisi/ are studying, working, etc. And each employee answers 'No, not yet...!'.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
¿Yãm kadmbíisà lóogà mé bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká lóog yé.
¿Ub síngà kádèg bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká síng kadèg yé.
¿Yãm kadmbíisà déemdà mé bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká déemd ye.
¿Ub túmdà mé bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká túmd yé.
¿Yãm kadmbíisà zíndà mé bí?	Áyò, ub ná n ká zínd yé.
¿Ub díka b séb bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká dík úb ye.
¿Ub zámsa b kadèg bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká záms ub kádèg yé.
¿Ub bánga b kadèg bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká báng ub kádèg yé.
¿Ub góm dà áng lès bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká gómd anglés yé.
¿Kadmbíisà kóotà tuum bí?	Áyò, ub nǎ n ká kóot tuumd yé.

Directions: All sentences are contextually related. Instructor and students discuss a mutual acquaintance, Kulga. To every inquiry of the instructor, the student answers that Kulga has just now done it, /ná + n + verb + mwásmwasà./.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
¿A Kúlg yíi Bóboè n waa bí?	Ngée, a ná n yíi Bóboè n waa mwásmwasà.

Instructor

¿A Kúlg kóosà a móbilà bí?

¿A Kúlg lóogà dáagè bí?

¿A Kúla díi mé?

¿A Kúlg daa yíid bí?

¿A Kúlg kóosà móbil bí?

¿A Kúlg pákà búdowà bí?

¿A Kúlg págà dóogà bí?

¿A Kúlg bóolà táksiwà bí?

¿A Kúlg kēsà válizdambá bí?

¿A Kúlg sǎǎmà kútweefà bí?

Student

Ngée, a nǎ n kóosà a móbilǎ
mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ n lóogà dáagè mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ n dii mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ n daa yíid mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ n kóosà á la mé
mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ m paka á la mé mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ m paga á la mé mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ m boola á la mé mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ n kēs ub la mé mwásmwasǎ.

Ngée, a nǎ n sǎǎmà á la mé
mwásmwasǎ.

28.2E Response Drill

Practice: /nǎ/ with imperfective verb endings.

Directions: The instructor asks the students if they see a particular object. They answer that they do since it is just beginning to leave.

Instructor

¿Yǎm gèsà móbil bí?

¿Yǎm gè tiděwǎ bí?

¿Yǎm gè la a Kúlg bí?

¿Yǎm gè nasaadsílgà bí?

¿Yǎm gèsà wéefǎ bí?

¿Yǎm gè logtód a Sékù bí?

¿Yǎm gè Pága Elizabet bí?

Student

Ngée, a nǎ n lóogdà mé.

Ngée, a nǎ n lóogdà mé.

Ngée, a nǎ n lóogdà mé.

Ngée, u nǎ n lóogdà mé.

Ngée, a nǎ n lóogdà mé.

Ngée, ub nǎ n lóogdà mé.

Ngée, a nǎ n lóogdà mé.

28.2F Response Exercises

Practice: Understanding Tenses.

Directions: The instructor will read a statement followed by several questions. The students will answer the questions as appropriately as possible. The questions are all designed to check the student's comprehension of the verb form.

1. A Kúlg gésdà móbilà tí a nǎ n loogdè.

Questions

- ¿Móbilà lóogà mé bí?
¿Móbilà lóogdà mé bí?
¿Móbilà síngà lóogd bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, a nǎ n loogda mé.
Ngée, a nǎ n loogda mé.
Ngée, a nǎ n loogda mé.

2. Pága Elizabet nǎǎ n kégà ótelè béoogò.

Questions

- ¿Pága Elizabet kégà mé bí?
¿Pága Elizabet kégdà mé bí?
¿Pága Elizabet síngà kénd bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, a nǎ n ká kég yé.
Ngée, a nǎǎ n kégà mé.
Áyò, a nǎ n ká síng kénd yé.

3. Dáwa Tembíl nǎǎ n waa koosa a móbilà.

Questions

- ¿Dáwa Tembíl kóosà a móbilà bí?
¿Dáwa Tembíl kóosdà a móbilà bí?
¿Dáwa Tembíl nǎǎ n koosa a m
móbilà bí?
¿A dátè n koosa a móbilà bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, a nǎ n ká koos á yé.
Ngée, a nǎ n koosda á la mé.
Áyò, m ká míi yé.
Ngée, a nǎǎ n waa koosa á la
mé.

4. Kadmbíga Ísak dá kà zámsd a kadong dad fá yé.

Questions

- ¿Kadmbíga Ísak zamsa a kadong
bí?
¿Kadmbíga Ísak dá zamsda
bí?
¿Kadmbíga Ísak dátè n waa
zamsa kadong bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, a nǎ n ká záms á yé.
Áyò, a dá ká zámsd á yé.
M ká míi yé.

5. A Kúlg ká nǎǎ n kég tum dúnda yé.

Questions

- ¿A Kúlg kégà tum dúnda bí?

¿A Kúlg kégdà tuum dúnda bí?
¿A Kúlg nǎǎ n waa kégà tuum
dúnda bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, a ká nǎǎ n kég tum dúnda
yé.
Áyò, a ká kégd tuum dúnda yé.
Áyò, a ká nǎǎ n waa kég tuum
dúnda yé.

6. ǃKadēsamb bee yae? A nǎ n ká wát yé.

Questions

- ǃKadēsamb wáa mé bí?
 ǃKadēsamb wáta mé bí?
 ǃKadēsamb nǎǎ waa me bí?
 ǃA gě kadesamb bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, a nǎ n ká wá yé.
 Áyò, a nǎ n ká wat yé.
 M ká míi yé.
 Áyò, a ká gě á yé.

7. ǃYám dà dátě n gě tammeta bí? Ad á sě nǎ n watá.

Questions

- ǃTámmetǎ dá waa m(é) bí?
 ǃTámmetǎ wata mé bí?
 ǃTámmetǎ waa mé bí?

Possible Response

- Ayo, a dá nǎ n ká wá yé.
 Ngée, a dá nǎ n watá mé.
 Áyò, a nǎ n ká wá yé.

8. A Tembíl nǎǎ d díkà tídè béeogǎ n kég Bobóě.

Questions

- ǃA Tembíl díkà tídè béeog bí?
 ǃA Tembíl kégdà Bóboě béeog bí?
 ǃA Tembíl díkà tídè n kég Bobóě bí?

Possible Response

- Ngée, a nǎǎ n díkà tídè
 Ngée, a nǎǎ n kégà Bóboě béeogò.
 Áyò, a nǎ n ká dík tídè n kég Bobóě yé.

9. Dáwa Sékù nǎǎ n waa daa fúugù.

Questions

- ǃDáwa Sékù daa fúugù bí?
 ǃDáwa Sékù dátě n waa daa fúug bí?
 ǃDáwa Sékù dáadà fúug bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, a nǎ n ká daa fúug yé.
 Ngée, a nǎǎ n waa daa fúugù.
 Áyò, a nǎ n ká daad yé.

10. Pága Pók nǎǎ n kégà a Sáblog béeogò.

Questions

- ǃPága Pók kégdà a Sáblog bí?
 ǃPága Pók nǎǎ n waa kég a Sáblog bí?
 ǃPága Pók kégà a Sáblog bí?

Possible Response

- Áyò, Pága Pók nǎ n ká kégd a Sáblog yé.
 Ngée, a nǎǎ n waa kég a Sáblogò.
 Áyò, a nǎ n ká kég a Sáblog yé.

11. A Ísak yítà lógtòd yííd dúnda zaábdà.

Questions

¿A Ísak yíi lógtòd yííd bí?

¿A Ísak yítà lógtòd yííd bí?

¿A Ísak náà n yíi lógtòd yíídè bí?

Possible Response

Áyò, a ná n ká yí lógtòd yííd yé.

Ngée, a náà n waa yí lógtòd yíídè.

Ngée, a náà n yíi lógtòd yíídè.

12. A John ká dátè n waa zams Móòd yé.

Questions

¿A John dátè n waa zamsà Móòd bí?

¿A John dátè n náà n zamsà Móòd bí?

Possible Response

Áyò, a ká dátè n náà n waa zams Móòd yé.

Áyò, a ká dátè n náà n zams Móòd yé.

13. Tónd ná m paamá kádèsambá too. A waa lècolèwà záamè.

Questions

¿Yám paama kádèsambá to bí?

¿A waa dábudè?

¿Yám dà paama kádèsambá to bí?

Possible Response

Ngée, tónd ná m paamá kádèsambá to.

A ná n waa záamè.

Áyò, tónd dà ná n ká paam kádèsambá to yé.

14. A Tembíl ná n yákà kúmbawà mwásmwasà.

Questions

¿A Tembíl yákà kúmbawà záamè bí?

¿A Tembíl dátè n yákà kúmbawà bí?

Possible Response

Áyò, a ná n yák ub la mé mwásmwasà.

Ngée, a ná n yák ub la mwásmwasà.

28.3A Repetition Drill

Illustration: Use of two markers: /dá/ and /ná/.

M gèsdà á la mé tí a ná n watè.

M dá gèsdà á la mé, tí a dá ná n watè.

A dá ná n waa mé, tí m dá pàgd búdò.

A dá ná n lóogdà mé, tí mam dá tumdè m zèèdè.

I see him (he is) just arriving.

I was watching him just as he was arriving.

He had just arrived when I was opening the office.

He was just leaving as I was working in my garden.

A dá nǎ lóogà mé tí mam dá tumd m zéendè.	He had just left when I was working in my garden.
M nǎ n yǎkà kúmba tí a Ísak nǎ n waté.	I have just picked egg plant. Isaac is just arriving.
M dá nǎ n yǎkà kúmba tí Ísak dá nǎ n waté.	I had just picked the egg plant when Isaac was arriving.
M dá nǎ n yǎkdà kúmba tí a Ísaak dá waté.	I was just picking the egg plant as Isaac was arriving.
M nǎ n yósgà lógtòd yíidè tí a Sékù kéde.	I passed the hospital just as Seku was going in.
M dá nǎ n yósgà lógtòd yíidè tí a Sékù dá kéde.	I had just passed the hospital as Seku was going in.
M dá nǎ yósgdà lógtòd yíidè tí a Sékù dá kéde.	I was just passing the hospital when Seku was going in.

28.3B Note: Use of two particles: /dá/ and /nǎ/.

1. /dá/ indicates past time. /nǎ/ indicates immediacy.
2. One of them or both of them may precede the verb.
3. The main verb may be either perfective (verb + /-a/) or imperfective (verb + /-da/).
4. The word order is subject + da + nǎ + verb + complement or object.
5. The English equivalent might be the following:

Subject + past + immediate + verb

a.	A	dá	nǎ	n lóogdà mé.
	He	was	just	leaving
b.	A	dá	nǎ	n lóogà mé.
	He	had	just	left.

Comprehension Drill 1

Tónd tumda ká. M zoa Ísak né mam yá kádèbíísi. Tónd sè waa ká, ya yúma tããb mwásà la wótò. M zoa Kúk mé tumda ká, yénd kà kádèbíífig yé. A yá lógtòd tónd écolà púgè. Tónd kadè doogá ya bedde. Kádèbíífig píig m bée a púgè.

Questions:

1. ¿M zoa, yám tumda ká bí?
Ngée, mam túmdà ká.
2. ¿Yám tumda bwé ká,
Mam yá kádèbíífiga.

3. ¿La yám zoawã yě?
Mam zoawã mé ya kádèbííga.
4. ¿Yám yúudè?
Mam yúud lá a Jean.
5. ¿La yám zoawã yúudè?
Mam zoawã yúud la a Ísakà.
6. ¿Yám sè waa ká, ya yúmà wána?
Tónd sè waa ká, ya yúme á tããb muásã lá wótò.
7. ¿La yám zoa tówà yě?
Bám mé túmdà ká.
8. ¿Ub yá kádèbííg bí?
Áyò, ub yá lógtodè.
9. ¿Ub bée écolà púgè ká bí?
Ngée, ub bée écolà púgè ká.
10. ¿Yám kádè doogã ya béede bí?
Ngée, tond kádè doogã ya bédde.
11. ¿Kádèbíis wána m bée a púgè?
Kádèbíis pílg m bée a púgè.

Comprehension Drill 2

Kádèsambá Sékù dátè m mée kádè doogó. A dátè m mée kádè doogá Kúlba églisà séaagè. Dáwa Lókdè, tammetã, nãã m mée kádè doogá. La a dátè mée n nãã m bang zílgà mé doogó búudu. A Lókdè nã n ká tõe n togs á lígd yé.

Questions:

1. ¿Kádèsambá Sékù dátè m mée kádè doog bí?
Ngée, a dátè m mée kádè doogó.
2. ¿A dátè m mée kádè doogã yae?
A dátè m mée á la mé Kúlba églisà séaagè.
3. ¿Dáwa Lókd n nãã m mée kádè doogã bí?
Ngée, Dáwa Lókd n nãã m mée kádè doogã.
4. ¿A Lókd dátè m bangá zílgà né doogá búud bí?
Ngée, a dátè m bangá zílgà né doogá búudu.
5. ¿A Lókd tõe n togsa dóogà lígd bí?
Áyò, a nã n ká tõe n togs doogá lígd yé.

UNIT 29

Basic Sentences 1: While taking a walk near the market, Tembila starts a conversation with a child.

-Tembila-

¿Bííga f yúudè? What's your name, child?

-Bíiga-

Mam yúud lá a Nóaagà. My name is Noaga.

-Tembila-

¿F kéndà yae wótò ne? Where are you going like that?

	-Bííga-	
Mam kúisà mé.		I'm going home.
Mam kúisà yíidě.		I'm going home.

-Tembila-

¿F ya Dáwa Básb bíig bí? Are you Mr. Basba's child?

-Bííga-

Áyò, mam ká Dawa Básb bííg yé. No, I'm not Rawa Basba's child.

-Tembila-

¿F bá yúudě? What's your father's name?

-Bíiga-

Mam bá yúud lá a Kúlga. My father's name is Kulga.

-Tembila-

Ohõõ! Mam dá tēda mé tí f dá ya	Oh! I thought you were Rawa Basba's
Dáwa Básb bíiga!	child!

Basic Sentences 2: Mr. Antoine, an automobile dealer, is introduced to Tiiba, a prince.

-Tembila-

Monsieur Antoine, Nábiig a Tiib lá wótò ne. Mr. Antoine, this is Prince Tiiba.

-Antoine-

¿Laafí bee yǎmbà, Nábiiga? How are you?

-Nabiiga-

Tónd yaa laafí. ¿La yǎm yě? I'm fine, thank you, and you?

-Antoine-

Áyò, tónd mè ya laafí balá. I am fine also.
¿Ya bwé lá yǎm dàtà, Nabiiga? What would you like?

-Nabiiga-

Tónd dátě n daa móbilì. I would like to buy a car.

-Antoine-

¿Móbil bug buud la yǎm dàtà? What kind of car would you like?

-Nabiiga-

Tónd dàtà ub sě boonda soab tí Peugeot wǎ. I want what is called a Peugeot.

¿Yǎm koosda model beeddǎ wána? For how much do you sell the big one?

-Antoine-

Model beeddǎ lígǎ ya tus piiga. The big one is ten thousand.
La tond nǎǎ koosa a la ne yǎm wakid But I'll sell it to you for seven thousand.
tus a yopoe.

29.1A Substitution Drill

Practice: Pronoun familiarization.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
Yám waa mé.	Yám waa mé.
Mam	Mam wáa mé.
Fo	F wáa mé.
A	A wáa mé.
Id	Id wáa mé.
I	I wáa mé.
Ub	Ub wáa mé.
Tónd	Tónd waa mé.
Yám	Yám waa mé.
Bám	Bám waa mé.
Mam	Mam wáa mé.
Fo	F wáa mé.
Yé	Yé wáa mé.

29.1B Situation Exercise

Practice: The use of the familiar polite and honorific pronouns.

Directions: The instructor will describe a situation. Then he and a student will take part in a conversation enacting the situation. The student may give any answer at all to the questions asked of him. His only concern should be the proper use of the pronouns. No new vocabulary should be introduced in this drill.

1. Mam yá ambassadeur Nigeria. Yám waa ambasadě nǎǎ n dii ne mam. Ya zaábdà.

Suggested Questions

Né i zaábdè!

¿Laafí bee yǎmbà?

Tónd ya láafi balá.

¿Ya bwě tum la yám tumda?

Possible Responses

Né i záabdè, Monsieur l'Ambassadeur.

Tónd ya láafi. ¿La yám yě?

Mam yá támmeta.

2. Mam yá lógtodè. Yám ká laafi ye. Yám nǎ n waa m yíidè.

Suggested Questions

Né i béoogò, m zoa.

¿Yám ya laafí?

Possible Responses

Tónd ká laafi ye.

Suggested Questions

¿Ya wána?

¿Yám bwé tí yám maana wótò?

Possible Responses

Mam póoglgà mé.

Mam lui né móbilli.

3. Mam lá nabiig a Básba. Mam wáa mé nǎǎ n gés yám. Yám boola mam.

Suggested Questions

Né i yibeogò.

¿I yíbeog ya laafí?

Tónd ya láafi balá.

Possible Responses

Né i béogò.

Tónd ya láafi balá. ¿La yám yé?

Mam súud yá noog wúsgo yám sé
tǒǒ n waa ká wǎ.

Mam súud yá noog wúsga mam
sé bee ká wǎ.

4. Yám lá Nabiig Basba. Yám waa mé n nǎǎ n gés tond. Mám boola yám.

Suggested Questions

¿Yám lá Nabiig Básb bí?

¿Yám waa mé n nǎǎ n gés tond bí?

Possible Responses

Ngée, tond lá Nabiig Basba.

Ngée, tond waa mé n nǎǎ n gés yám.

5. Yám yíi mé n nǎǎ n gés tenga poodě balá. Ya dǎ tí yám waa buls ká.
Yám yítà Wagdugu. Yám ná n ká wá buls ká yé.

Suggested Questions

¿Yám yíi mé n nǎǎ n gés teng
poodě bí?

¿Ya dǎ tí yám waa buls bí?

¿Yám yítà yae?

¿Yám dà waa buls ká bí?

Possible Responses

Ngée, tond yíi mé n nǎǎ n gés n
teng poodě.

Ngée, ya dǎ tond waa bulsa.

Tond yítà Wagdugu.

Áyò, tond ná n ká wá buls ká yé.

6. Yám sod yíi neede. Yám ká náms wúsg yé. Dakáddam puusid yám. Ub
ráǎ ya láafi.

Suggested Questions

¿Yám sod yíi neede?

¿Yám ká náms wusgo?

¿Dakaddam ya laafi?

Possible Responses

Ngée, tond sod yíi neede.

Áyò, tond ká náms wúsg yé.

Ngée, ub yá laafi.

Comprehension Drill 1

Bíigã yuud lá a Nóaagà. A kuisa yíidè. Bíiga ká Dáwa Básàb bíig yé. A bá yúud la Kúlga. Dáwa Tembíl dá tédà mé tí bíiga ya Dáwa Básàb bíiga.

Questions:

1. ¿Bíiga yúude?
A yúud lá a Nóaagà.
2. ¿A kúisà yíidè bí?
Ngée, a kúisà yíidè.
3. ¿A Noag ya Dáwa Básàb bíig bí?
Áyò, a ká Dáwa Básàb bíig yé.
4. ¿A bá yúude?
A bá yúud lá a Kúlga.
5. ¿A Tembíl dá tédà mé tí a yá a Básàb bíig bí?
Ngée, a dá tédà me tí a ya a Básàb bíiga.

Comprehension Drill 2

Monsieur Antoine ya mobil koaasa. A yěě Nabiig Tiib dunda. Nabiiga Tiib yeela mé tí laafi bee b la mé. Nabiiga Tiib datě daa mobili. Ub tádà b sě boonda soab tí Peugeotwă. Ub dátà model beddă. Model beddă lígd yá tus piiga. La Dáwa Antoine năă n koosa né ub tusa yopoe.

Questions:

1. ¿Monsieur Antoine maanda bwě?
Monsieur Antoine ya mobil koaasa.
2. ¿Monsieur Antoine gě Nabiiga Tiib dúnda bí?
Ngée, a gě Nabiiga Tiib dunda.
3. ¿Nabiiga Tiib yeela mé tí b ya laaf bí?
Ngée, ub yeela mé tí b ya laafi.
4. ¿Nabiiga Tiib dátě n daa bwě?
Ub dátě n daa móbilì.
5. ¿Ub dátě n daa móbil bwě buudu?
Ub dátě n daa la b sě boonda soab tí Peugeotwă.
6. ¿Nabiiga Tiib data model bugo?
Ub dátà model beddă.
7. ¿Model beddă ligd ya wána?
Model beddă ligd ya tus piiga.
8. ¿La Dáwa Antoine năă n koosa ne b wána?
Dáwa Antoine năă n koosa ne b tusa yopoe.

UNIT 30

Basic Sentences: Seku and Tembila run into each other in an open area in the center of town. It is /Mòòs kíbsà/, one of the principal holidays on which animal sacrifices are made for the repose of the souls of ancestors. Tembila wants to know if Seku has brought his entire family.

	-Tembila-	
I yéelà m bá Sékù!		Hello, Seku!
	-Sékù-	
Naabá.		Hello.
	-Tembila-	
¿Yám waa mé?		Did you all come?
	-Sékù-	
Ngée, tónd waa mé.		Yes, we all came.
	-Tembila-	
¿Yám waa né i bá bí?		Did you come with your father?
	-Sékù-	
Ngée, m bá mé waa mé.		Yes, my father came too.
	-Tembila-	
¿La i ma yé?		And your mother (herself)?
	-Sékù-	
Áyò, ub ká wá yé.		No, she didn't come.
	-Tembila-	
¿Bígabadàmb waa mé?		Did your (father and/or paternal) uncles come?
	-Sékù-	
Ngée, la m táǎpà ná n yíi Bobó n waa.		Yes, and my sisters have just arrived from Bobo.

-Tembila-

;Ánda yaasě n waa né yǎm?

Who else came with you?

-Sékù-

m pógdba

my aunt (FaSi)

m bábila

my uncle (FaYoBr)

m táǎbìlā

my younger sister

M pógdba, né m bábila, la né m
táǎbìlā n waa.My aunt, my uncle and my younger
sister came.

-Tembila-

;Yǎm yǎopà waa mé bí?

Did your brothers come?

-Sékù-

Áyò, ub bée dáagě né m bákasmǎ.

No, they're at the market with my
(older) uncle.

-Tembila-

Tónd tēda mé tí kǐbsa yǐ noog
wúsgo dúnda.I hope the holiday turns out very
well (for us) today.

-Sékù-

Ntoo.

Agreed

GENERAL NOTES

30A /ub/ as polite reference.

Ub ká wá yé.

/ub/ is used for polite reference in both the singular and the plural,
e.g., the sentences above, 'She didn't come'. See Note 1D.

30B Kinship Terminology

The system of classifying relatives used by speakers of Moré is quite different from that used by speakers of English and French. Consequently, translation of kinship terms can only be approximated. There is not sufficient space in this manual for a detailed discussion of social organization and kinship terminology. Interested students can read a standard orthorpolological work,

such as Murdock, G.P., Social Structure, Macmillan, New York, 1949.

Below is a list of the more common kinship terms, as used by the person on whose speech this manual is based. There is some variation of kinship terms from region to region. (Fa - father, Mo - mother, Br - brother, Si - sister, So - son, Da - daughter, Wi - wife, Hu - husband, Yo - younger, Ol - older, Pa - parents, Co - cousin, Ma - male, Fe - female).

bá, -dàmbá	Fa; (pl.) FaFa and/or FaBr
bábilà, * bábi(dàmbá)	FaYoBr, FaYoMaCo
bákasmà, -dàmbá	FaOlBr, FaOlMaCo
ma, -dámabà	FaWi, Mo, co-wife of Mo; (pl.) aunts
mabíla, * mabí(dàmbá)	MoYoSi, MoYoFeCo
makásmà, -dàmbá	MoOlSi, MoOlFeCo
pógdba, -dàmbá	FaSi, FaFaBrDa
pógdbbilà, * pógdbbi(dàmbá)	FaYoSi, FaYoFeCo
pógdbkasmà, -dàmbá	FaOlSi, FaOlFeCo
yásbà, -dàmbá	MoBr, MoMoSiSo, (pl.) MoPa
yásbbilà, * yásbbi(dàmbá)	MoYoBr, MoYoMaCo
yásbkasmà, -dàmbá	MoOlBr, MoOlMaCo
yáo, yàwà, -pà	Br, MaCo (parallel and cross)
yáobilà, yáobi(dàmbá)	YoBr, YoMaCo
yáokasmà, -dàmbá	OlBr, OlMaCo
tǎǎ, tǎwà, -pà	Si, FeCo (parallel and cross)
tǎǎbilà, * tǎǎbi(dàmbá)	YoSi, YoFeCo
tǎǎkasmà, -dàmbá	OlSi, OlFeCo
deembá, * deemdámabà	Pa in-law
saambá, * saamdámabà	FaBr; progenitor, ancestor
bííga, * koambá	child, grandchild, offspring, descendant
bídiblà, * komdíblì	boy, young man, male child, son
bípuglà, * kompúglì	girl, young woman, female child, daughter
bííga bádámabà	Fa and FaBr
yáabà, dàmbá	grandfather, grandmother

Kinship terms are nearly always preceded by a possessive pronoun. The range of meaning of the terms listed above is even greater than given above, e.g., /pógdba/, 'classificatory FaSi', includes 'FaFaFaBrSoDa', etc.

/-kěěmà/, 'be older', is also often used like /-kásmà/.

30C Diminutive

/-bílà/ is a diminutive.

It refers to someone younger or smaller: /m bábílà/ - my father's younger brother. It refers to something small: /móbílílà/ - a small car. It is a term of endearment: /A Kúkbíla/ - my dear little Kuka (Kuka honey).

30D Augmentative

/-kásmà/ is an augmentative.

It refers to someone older: /m bákásmà/ - my father's older brother.

30E Sex of Humans

/-díblà/, 'male', and /-púglà/, 'female', compound with various nouns referring to humans to mark masculine and feminine, e.g., /bídíblà/, 'boy', 'male child', and /bípúglà/, 'girl', 'female child'. The plural of /-díblà/ is /díblì/, of /-púglà/, /púglì/.

/póakà, *-pógsè/ is also used to indicate feminine in some compounds, e.g., /yáo/, is masculine and means, 'brother', but /yáopoakà/ is, 'sister'.

It is reported that /tǎǎ/ is used for both sexes by some speakers, but the speaker used as a model herein had /tǎǎ/ only as, 'sister'.

30.1A Repetition Drill and Supplementary Vocabulary

Illustration: Plural formation of certain nouns. The translations are rough.

m bá Sékù	my cherished and respected Seku
ǎBíígabàdàmb waa mé?	Did your uncles come? (father's side)
ǎLa 1 ma yě?	And your mother?
ǎBíígamàdàmb waa mé?	Have your aunts arrived? (mother's side)
m bá kasmǎ	my older uncle (older than father)
m bá kasmdamba	my older uncles
m ma kásmǎ	my older aunt (older than mother)
m ma kásmàmbá	my older aunts
m bá bílà	my younger uncle (younger than father)

m bá bíldàmbá	my younger uncles
M táǎ waa mé.	My sister arrived. My female cousin came.
M táǎpà waa mé.	My female relatives of my age came.
M táǎ bílà waa mé.	My younger sister has arrived.
M táǎ bíldàmbá waa mé.	My younger female relatives came.
M táó kásmà waa mé.	My older girl cousin arrived.
ǀYǎm yáo waa mé bí?	Did your male cousin of your age come?
ǀYǎm yáopà waa mé bí?	Did your male cousins come?
ǀYǎm yáo bílà waa mé bí?	Did you younger cousin arrived?
ǀYǎm yáo kásmà waa mé bí?	Has your older brother arrived?
ǀYǎm yáo bíldàmbá waa mé bí?	Did your younger male cousins come?
ǀM pógdbà waa mé?	Did my aunt come? (father's side)
ǀM pógdbàmbá waa mé?	Did my aunts come? (father's side)
ǀM yáo poaka waa mé bí?	Did my sister come?
ǀM yáo pogse waa mé bí?	Did my sisters arrive?
ǀM kéēmà waa mé bí?	Has my elder relative arrived?
ǀM bíigà waa mé bí?	Did my child come?

30.1B Note: Plural Formations, nouns referring to people.

Names of people form their plurals in two ways: (1) by adding the word /dámà/ or (2) by using the suffix /-ba/ or /-pa/. Compound nouns always use /-dámà/; simple nouns may use /-dámà/. When /-damba/ follows a Moré word, it means 'people associated with' e.g., /bá bílà/ - uncle, /bá bíldambà/ - uncles. /dámà/ is also the regular plural formation for borrowed foreign words. Simple nouns referring to people form their plurals by adding /-ba/ or /-pa/ to the stem. If the stem vowel is a diphthong, /ao/ or /ǎǎ/, the ending is /-pa/; elsewhere, it is /-ba/. Examples:

/págà/	-	woman
/págbà/	-	women
/yáo/	-	male cousin
/yáopà/	-	male cousins

30.1C Substitution Drill

¿Yám bá yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your father has come back from Paris, hasn't he?
¿Yám bábilà yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your uncle has come back from Paris, hasn't he?
¿Yám pógaba yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your aunt has come back from Paris, hasn't she?
¿Yám yásbà yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your uncle has come back from Paris, hasn't he?
¿Yám makásmà yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your aunt has come back from Paris, hasn't she?
¿Yám yàwà yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your brother has come back from Paris, hasn't he?
¿Yám táǒbilà yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your sister has come back from Paris, hasn't she?
¿Yám yàokasmà yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your cousin has come back from Paris, hasn't he?
¿Yám táwà yóì Pádiè n waa la?	Your cousin has come back from Paris, hasn't she?
¿Yám yàabà yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your grandfather has come back from Paris, hasn't he?
¿Yám dembá yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your mother-in-law has come back from Paris, hasn't she?
¿Yám komdíblì yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your sons have come back from Paris, haven't they?
¿Yám kompúglì yíi Pádiè n waa la?	Your daughters have come back from Paris, haven't they?

30.2A Transforamtion Drill

Repeat entire drill; then change to plural.

M yíid bee Wágduǵè.	M yíi bee Wágduǵè.
I yeelá.	I yeelbá.
Naaá.	Naabá.
M págà lóogà mé.	M págbà lóogà mé.
Yá m bíiga.	Yá m koambá.
Yá tónd sidá.	Yá tónd sidbá.
A págà dóogò.	Ub págà dótò.
Pág pákà a lívdè.	Págb pákà ub lívddàmbá.
M míi Wáyugà.	Tónd miì Wáyugà.
A gésà á la mé.	Ub gésa b la mé.
A yá Mǒǒagà.	Ub yá Mǒǒsè.
Pag dóogà mé.	Págb dóogà mé.

30.2B Transformation Drill

Change the following commands to the negative.

Kéngé yǎ	Dá k'enge yǎ yé
Kée yǎ	Dá k'ee yǎ yé
Waé yǎ mam yíidè.	Dá waé yǎ mam yíidè yé.
Tumé yǎ dúnda.	Dá tumé yǎ dúnda yé.
Maané yǎ díibo n k'ó mǎ.	Dá maané yǎ díibo n k'ó m yé.
Yeelé yǎ yaasá.	Dá yeelé yǎ yaas yé.
Kéése yǎ b fǎǎ móbilápúgè.	Dá kéése yǎ b fǎǎ móbilápúgè yé.
Báse yǎ i téed gádè.	Dá báse yǎ i teed gádè yé.
Daé yǎ lembúyà n k'ó mǎ.	Dá daé yǎ lembúyà n k'ó m yé.
Peké yǎ fútù	Dá peké yǎ fút yé.
Depáse yǎ fútù.	Dá depáse yǎ fút yé.
Díke yǎ banána.	Dá díke yǎ banan yé.

30.2C Transformation Drill

Change nouns to plural.

M bíiga dá bee Dákadè.	M koambá dá bee Dákadè.
A yáwà ya kádembíiga.	A yáopà ya kádèmbiisi.
Yám bá yii Wagdúgè.	Yám bàdàmbá yii Wagdúgè.
I bábila ya koaasá.	I bábildamba ya koaasdba.
Ub bákasma ya kóada.	Ub bakasmdamba ya koadba.
Tónd yasbbila ya sodaágà.	Tond yasbbildamba ya sodaasè.
Bám pògdbbila ya kadèsambá.	Bám pògdbbildamba ya kadèsambdamba.
M pógdbkasmá maanda díibo.	M podgbkasmdamba maanda díibo.
A bidibla tumda silgaziigpugè.	A komdibli tumda silgaziigpugè.
M bipugla waa zaame.	M kompugli waa zaame.
Ub táwà ká wá yé.	Ub táǎpà ká wá yé.
Yám ma dá daa fúugù.	Yám madámba dá daa fútù.

30.2D Transformation Drill

Change to negative.

A wáa dúnda.	A ká wá dúnda yé.
A yá m pógdba.	A ká m pogdb yé.
Ub bée daagè né m bá.	Ub ká bé daagè né m bá yé.
M págà gómà M'òòdè.	M págà ká gómà M'òòd yé.

F ya Dáwa Básb bíga.
 Tónd dátě n daa móbilì.
 Bám boola á la mé.
 A Tembíl náã n koosa á la mé.
 A ná n zamsa Mõõdè.
 Ub náã n waa mé.
 Ub ná n waa mé.
 Tónd sígà Central Hòtelè.

F ká Dáwa Básb bíg yé.
 Tónd kà dátě n daa móbil yé.
 Bám ká bool á yé.
 A Tembíl ká náã n koosa á yé.
 A ná n ká zams Mõõd yé.
 Ub ká náã n wa yé.
 Ub ná n ká wá yé.
 Tónd kà síg Central Hòtelè yé.

30.2E Transformation Drill

Change to imperfective.

Bòe máanà díibo.
 M dá gómà Bámbarande.
 Bám waa Ábìgěã.
 M mée yíidì.
 A bóolà á la mé.
 I bábila kéngà mé.
 Ub pógdbà gésà mé.
 A kélgà kíbàis dadíóè.
 M ká túm yé.
 ǀYǎm bao pósta dòog bí?
 M kósà yǎm sùgdì.
 M ma dá daa fútù.

Bòe máandà díibo.
 M bá gómdà Bámbarande.
 Bám wata Ábìgěã.
 M métà yíidì.
 A bóondà á la mé.
 I bábila kéngdà mé.
 Ub pógdbà gétà mé.
 A kélgdà kíbàis dadíóè.
 M ká túmd yé.
 ǀYǎm baoda pósta doog bí?
 M kótà yǎm sùgdì.
 M ma dá daada fútù.

UNIT 31

Basic Sentences: Tembila, who is a farmer from Sablogho, has gone to Ouagadougou. There he speaks to the Minister of Agriculture in order to explain his situation. The greetings have already transpired...

-Ministre d'Agriculture-

kóo	cultivate, weed, farm
Yám kóodà ziig bugo, Dáwa Tembila?	Where do you farm, Mr. Tembila?

-Tembila-

Mam kóodà á Sáblogò.	I farm in Sablogo.

-Ministre-

A Sáblogzlig zádà mé ká bí?	Is your place in Sablogo far from here?

-Tembila-

Áyò, a ziig ká zád né ká wúsg yé.	No, the place is not very far from here.

-Ministre-

buda	plant
Yám buta bwě né bwě i ziiga púgè?	What sort of things do you plant on your farm?

-Tembila-

káafò, *kí	(a grain of) millet
kamáandè, -à	(a grain of) corn
mwífù, *mwí	(a grain of) rice
Mam bútà kí, kamáanà la mwí.	I plant millet, corn and rice.

-Ministre-

koom	water
La yám tada kóom wúsg i ziiga púgè bí?	And do you have enough water on your farm?

-Tembila-

saagá, -sé

sky; rain, storm

níi

(to) rain

Ngée, saag sá níi, mam tádà kóòm
wúsg á púgè.

Yes, after it's rained, I have a
lot of water.

-Ministre-

náafò, *níisì

cow

biism

milk

¿La yám níisà kótà yám biism bí?

And do your cows give you milk?

-Tembila-

Ngée, ub kótà m la bíism.

Yes, they give me milk.

-Ministre-

¿Yám tada bíisd i zaká pugè bí?

Do you have sand in your house?

-Tembila-

Ngée, m tádà bíisd wúsg n zákà pugè.

Yes, I have a lot of sand in my
house.

-Ministre-

to, *taaba

another, additional; parallel,
like that

¿Yám data búm á to yaas bí?

Do you want anything else?

-Tembila-

Áyò, m ká dát búm á to yaas yé.
I bádka.

No, I don't want anything else.
Thank you.

USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

M nóngà dáàm.

I like beer.

M nóngà bíed.

I like beer.

Kúgd lui kóòm púgè.

A rock fell into the water.

Zóõg bee dáàm púgè.

There's a fly in the beer.

Zóõs bée zómè.

There are insects in the flour.

M dátě m paamá yamsm.

I want to get some salt.

M dátě m paamá súkdè.

I want to get some sugar.

M dátě m paamá kípaya.

Silgá bee pémsmè.

Silgá yíkdà pémsmè.

Pemsm bée mé.

Pemsm wátà mé.

Saagá níidà mé.

Saag níi mé.

I want to get some red peppers.

There's a plane in the air.

The airplane is in the air.

There's a bird flying in the air.

The bird is flying in the air.

There is wind. It is windy.

The wind is blowing.

It's getting windy.

The wind is starting to blow.

It is raining.

It (has) rained.

NEW WORDS

nóngà

dáam

bíed

kúgdì, -à

zǒǎgà, -sè

zóm

paama

yamsm

súkdè

kípade, -yá

pemsm

yíkà

like, love, be pleased (by)

alcoholic beverage, especially
beer made from millet

beer (international kind)

rock, stone

insect, bug, fly

flour, meal

get, obtain, have

salt

sugar

red peppers, pimento

air, wind

fly, soar

GENERAL NOTES

31A bwě né bwě

/bwě né bwě/ is used to ask, 'what sort, variety, or mixture of things'.

31B One usually asks questions from a favorable point of view. Thus the Moré equivalent of the following English sentences is:

Do you have enough water?

¿Yǎm tada kóom wúsgo bí?

Do you need money?

¿Yǎm tada lígd wúsgo bí?

31C Mass Nouns

Most mass nouns end in /-m/ e.g., /koom/, '(some) water'. Some things that are considered mass nouns from the English or French point of view are plurals in Moré, e.g., /kamáandè/, 'a grain of corn', and /kamáanà/, '(some) corn'.

31D saag sǎ níí...

These are the most common forms of /saaga/ and /níí/. In the present, /saagá níidà mé/, 'It is raining', is the most common form. In the perfective, /saaga níí mé/, 'It (has) rained', is the most common form.

31E M tádà bíisd wúsg m zákà púgè.

Sand is a practical floor covering in many areas.

31.1A Repetition Drill

Illustration: /-è/ vs. /-púgè/

m ziigǎ	my place
m ziiga púgè	within my place
m ziigè	in/at my place
tónd zèèdǎ	our garden
tónd zèèda púgè	inside our garden
tónd zèèdè	in/at our garden
a móbilǎ	his car
a móbilà púgè	inside his car
a móbilè	in/at his car

31.2A Substitution Drill

Insert the underlined portions in the preceding sentence.

Biismá ya nóog wúsgo.	The milk is very good.
<u>Dáam</u> ya nóog wúsgo.	The beer is very good.
Dáam <u>bee zákà púgè</u> .	The beer is in the house.
M <u>bá kásmà</u> bée zákà púgè.	My uncle is in the house.
M bádasma <u>zíig zákà né ká</u> .	My uncle('s place) is far from here.
<u>Ténkdòog</u> zádà né ká.	Tenkodogo is far from here.
A <u>Sáblog ká</u> zád né ká yé.	Sablogo is not far from here.

Bám yíidà ká zǎd né ká yé.
 Bám yíidà bée ótel seaagě.
 M vwátuudà bée ótelsèaagě.
 M vwátuudà bée bíis zùgě.
 M zíi bíis zùgě.

Their house isn't far from here.
 Their house is next to the hotel.
 My car is next to the hotel.
 My car is sitting on the sand.
 I'm sitting on the sand.

31.2B Substitution Drill

Insert the underlined portions into the preceding sentences.

Mam tádà bíism wúsgo.
 Mam níisǎ kǒtǎ m lá bíism wúsgo.
 M dá daa bíism wúsgo.
 M dá daa lémbuyà wúsgo.
 M dá koosa lébmuyà wúsgo.
 M dá buda lémbuyà wúsgo.
 M dá buda kí la mwí.
 A nǎ m buda kí la mwí.
 A nǎǎ m buda kí la mwí.
 A nǎǎ n nǎi mē.
 A nǎǎ n kǒǒ m la dáàm.
 A ká kǒ m dáàm yé.

I have a lot of milk.
 My cows give me lots of milk.
 I sold a lot of milk.
 I sold a lot of oranges.
 I brought a lot of oranges.
 I planted a lot of oranges.
 I planted millet and rice.
 He has just planted millet and rice.
 He's going to plant millet and rice.
 It's going to rain.
 He's going to give me some beer.
 He didn't give me any beer.

31.2C Substitution Drill

Insert the underlined portions into the preceding sentences.

Koom bée bíisà pùgě.
 Koom bée bíisà zùgě.
 M zíi bíisà zùgě.
 M zii yám seaagě.
Dáam bee yám seaagě.
Dáam bee wúsgo.
 M nóngà bíism wúsgo.
 M nóngà m págà wúsgò.
 M nóngà táamà wúsgo.
 M dátě n dii táamà wúsgò.
 M dátě m paamá yamsm.
 M dátě m paamá kipade.

There is water in the sand.
 There is water on/over the sand.
 I'm sitting on the sand.
 I'm sitting next to you.
 The beer is next to you.
 There's plenty of beer.
 I like milk very much.
 I love my wife very much.
 I like karités very much.
 I am crazy about karités.
 I want to get some salt.
 I want to get some peppers.

31.3A Transformation Drill

Repeat each item; then change to plural.

Yá káafò	Yá kí
Yá kamáandè	Yá kamáanà
Yá mwífù	Yá mwí
Yá náafò	Yá níisì
Yá wéefò	Ya wíidì
Ya zàkà	Ya zàgsè
Yá pága	Yá págba
Yá lívdè	Yá lívddàmbá
Ya sílgà	Ya sílsè
Yá dáwa	Yá dáopà
Yá yíidè	Yá yíyà
Yá sóde	Yá sóyà
Ya sùmdè	Ya sùmà
Ya Mǒǒgà	Ya Mǒǒsè
Ya Ámèdikě	Ya Ámèdikědàmbá
Yá búmbù	yá bǒǒyà
Ya dóogò	Ya dótò
Ya kíbàde	Ya kíbaisè
Yá kóadà	Yá kóadbà
Ya kóasà	Ya kóasdbà

31.3B Transformation Drill

Change to present.

Mam kóo a Sablógo.	Mam kóodà a Sablógo.
Mam búdà kí la mwí.	Mam bútà kí la mwí.
Saag níí mé.	Saaga níidà mé.
A kǒǒ m la bíisì.	A kǒtà m la bíisì.
M dá nongá dáam.	M nóngà dáam.
Zǒs dà bee zóm pugě.	Zǒs bee zóm pugě.
M dá dátě m paamá súkdè.	M dátě m paamá súkdè.
Pemsm wáa mé.	Pemsm wátà mé.
Bám yíí Wagdugě.	Bám yítà Wagdugě.
A wáa mé n nǎǎ n gés yām.	A wátà mé n nǎǎ n gés yām.
Ub dá ya láafi balá.	Ub yá laafí balá.
A yěě Nábíiga Tíib dúnda.	A yětà Nabíiga Tíib dúnda.

31.3C Response Drill

Answer the questions according to the underlined cues.

¿Virginia zìig zǎdà né Washington bí?

Áyò, Virginia zìig ká zǎd né Washington yé.

¿Yám tumda zìig bugo?

M túmdà dáagè.

¿Yám tada dáam wúsg i ziiga púgè bí?

Ngée, m táda dáam wúsg m ziiga púgè.

¿Yám koosda bwé né bwé dáaga púgè?

M kóosdà búm fǎǎ.

¿Yám bábilà kǒǒ i la lígd bí?

Ngée, zaamé m bábilà kǒǒ m la lígdí.

¿Yám data búm á to yaas bí?

Ngée, m dátà yasmsm né.

¿Saagá níidà mé bí?

Áyò, saagá nǎ n ká níid yé.

¿Saagá níidà á silg yíidè bí?

Ngée, saagá níidà á silg yíidè mwásǎ.

¿Yám yàokasmà bée yae mwásǎ?

M yàokasmà bée Pádìè mwásǎ.

¿Neuilly zìig zǎdà né Pádì bí?

Ngée, Neuilly zìig zǎda né Pádì.

Comprehension Drill

Dáwa Tembíl yá kóadà n bee Haute Voltaè. A zíi la á Sablóg né a págà. Dáwa Tembíl né a pág táda zìig bédde. Ub búda kí ub zìigà púgè. Ub táda níis né píis mé. Saag sǎ níi, ub táda kóom wúsgo. Dáwa Tembíl níisà kǒtá á la mé bíism. Dáwa Tembíl táda bíis wúsg a zákè.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Tembíl yá bwé?

Dáwa Tembíl yá kóadà.

2. ¿A bée teng bugo?

A bée Haute Voltaè.

3. ¿A zíi Haute Voltaè zíi bugo?

A zíi la á Sablóg.

4. ¿A zíi la a Sablóg né ándà?

A zíi la a Sablóg né a págà.

5. ¿Dáwa Tembíl né a págà tádà bwě a Sablógo?
Ub zii bedd a Sablógo.
6. ¿Ub butà bwě́ a púgě?
Ub búta kí a púgě.
7. ¿Ub tádà bwě né bwě yaasá?
Ub níis né píis mé.
8. ¿Saag sǎ níi ub tádà bwě?
Saag sǎ níi ub tádà koom wúsgo.
9. ¿Dáwa Tembíl níi sǎ kǒtá á la bwě?
Dáwa Tembíl níi sǎ kǒtá á la bíism.
10. ¿Dáwa Tembíl níi sǎ kǒtá á la mé bíism bí?
Ngée, a níi sǎ kǒtá á la mé bíism.
11. ¿Dáwa Tembíl tádà bíisd a zákě bí?
Ngée, a tádà bíisd wúsg a zákě.

UNIT 32

Basic Sentences: Kuka and Tembila talk about their old friend, Kulga.

-Kúkà-
¿A Kúlg bee yae mwásǎ?
Where is Kulga now?

-Tembila-
A bée Wáyùgiě.
He's in Ouahigouya.

-Kúkà-
¿A túmdà bwě bé?
What's he doing there?

-Tembila-
A yá lígd soabǎ n bee bé.
He's a rich man there.
A tádà yíid bédđ sě ya néede.
He has a big, beautiful house.

-Kúkà-
¿A tádà bwě yaasá?
What else does he have?

-Tembila-
leddá, -dambá duck
búugà, -sì goat
péesgò, -sì sheep
nóagà, *nóosè chicken
A tádà léddambá, nóosè, búusi,
la píis mè.
He has ducks, chickens, goats and sheep.

-Kúkà-
¿A tádà níis la wíid mé bí?
Does he have cows and horses too?

-Tembila-
Ngée, a tádà níis la wíid mé.
Yes, he has a lot of cows and horses.

-Kúkà-
¿A Kúlg túmdà wúsg bí?
Does Kulga work a great deal?

-Tembila-

Áyò, a ká tád tùm wúsg yé.

No, he doesn't have much work.

-Kúkà-

;La a máandà bwě?

And so, what does he do?

-Tembila-

baaga, -se

dog

A míi n kégà dáagě né a baaga.

He occasionally goes to the market with his dog.

A súúd yá noog wúsgo.

He's getting along fine.

USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

A zíi zíndìgě.

He is sitting in a chair.

A gěě gǎǎdìgě.

He is lying in bed.

A sóagà sóagdìga.

He fastened the button.

Níkemà Kampáod tádà nágdaoogò.

Old Mr. Campaode has a bull.

Níkemà Kampáod tádà wédsadgà.

Old Mr. Campaode has a mare.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod pílgà mǎngòdò.

Old Mrs. Campaode peeled a mango.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod fúkà nánguyà.

Old Mrs. Campaode shelled some peanuts.

A kégà tǎǎsgò.

He went hunting.

A kégà wáls tǎǎsgó.

He went gazelle hunting.

A kégà yǐsà tǎǎsgo.

He went deer hunting.

A kúu wálgà.

He killed a gazelle.

A kúu weníisì.

He killed some buffalo.

NEW WORDS

zindígà, -sè

chair, seat

gěě

be in bed

gǎǎdìgà, -sè

bed

soaga

attach, affix, fasten

sóadìga

button, fastener

nágdaoogò, -dò

bull

wédsadgà, -sè

mare

níkemà, *níkémse

elderly gentleman

pogyǎngà, *pogyǎǎsè

elderly lady

pila	roll up, fold up
pilga	unroll, unfold, peel
fuka	shell, husk
tǎǎsgò, -sè	hunt(ing)
wálga, -sé	gazelle
yǐdé, -sá	deer
kúu	kill
weenáafò, -sì	buffalo

GENERAL NOTES

32A Word Order: location and time.

¿A Kúlg bée yae mwásǎ?

Words indicating location and time most often occur after the verb object, or after the verb if there is no object. Words indicating location occur before words indicating time, as in the sentence above, 'Where is Kulga now?'.

32B Multiple modifiers of nouns

A tádà yíid bédde sě ya néede.

If there are two or more modifiers with a noun, in most cases only one modifier occurs with the noun and the other modifiers occur in a subordinate clause, e.g., the sentence above, 'He has a big, beautiful house', literally, 'He has a big house which is beautiful'.

32C Instrument nouns

A sóagà sóadigà.

Instrument nouns, indicating 'the tool or instrument with which something is done', are derived from verb stems by the suffixes /-d/ and /-í/ plus the noun class suffixes /-ga/ and /-se/, e.g., in the sentence above, 'He buttoned the button', 'He fastened the fastener'.

32D Titles of great respect for elderly persons.

Níkemà Kampáode

Pogyǎngà Kampáode

Age is much respected among the Mossi, and elderly persons have high esteem everywhere. The titles /níkemà/, 'elderly gentlemen', and /pogyǎngà/, 'elderly lady', reflect this deference and respect to age, and by no means indicate the levity or commonness found in English in, 'old man Jones', or

'Old MacDonald'. /níkèmə/ or /pogyǎngà/ plus the family name is used for elderly persons whom one does not know exceedingly well, but /níkèmə/ or /pagyǎngà/ plus a given name is used only by persons on familiar terms. Compare Note 4A.

32E Sex of animals

/-dáoogo/, 'male', and /-sádga/, 'female', compounds with various nouns referring to animals to mark masculine and feminine, e.g., /weddáoogo/, '(male) horse', and /wedsádga/, 'mare'. The plural of /-dáoogo/ is /-dáoado/, of /-sádga/, /-sádsè/.

32.1A Repetition Drill and Supplementary Vocabulary

Illustration: Plural formation of some nouns.

Dáwa Kúlg táda níisì.	Kulga has cows.
Dáwa Kúlg táda náaf'á yé.	Kulga has one cow.
A Kúlg táda búusì.	Kulga has some goats.
A táda búug á yé.	He has one goat.
A yíidà púgè a táda báasè.	He has dogs at home.
A yíidà púgè a táda báag á yé.	He has a dog at home.
Pága Pók dǎa noagǎ.	Poko bought that chicken.
Pága Pók dǎa noasǎ.	Poko bought those chickens.
Mam táda zák'á yé.	I have only one house.
A táda zágsè.	He has several houses.
Tǎǎsǎ Kúk kúu piisi.	Kuka, the hunter, killed several sheep.
Tǎǎsǎ Kúk kúu pesg á yí.	Kuka, the hunter, killed only one sheep.
Tenkódog táda nábiisi.	Tenkodogo has several princes.
Búls tadá nábiig á yé.	Boulisa has only one prince.
Dáwa Ísak dǎ tadá yúusì.	Isaac had several cats.
Mwásǎ a táda yúug á yé.	Now he has only one cat.
Mam táda nús á yi.	I have two hands.
Daagá bee nóg goabgá.	The market is on the left hand.
Mam yěě Silmiisǎ.	I saw those Fulas.
A yěě Silmiigǎ.	He saw that Fula.
Dáwa Bǎsb táda zǐisì.	Basba has several places (property).
A táda zǐigà.	He has a piece of property.

Koomá pugè zóòs bee mé.	There are some flies in the water.
Koomá pugè zóǎg á yí bée mé.	There is a fly in the water.
Pága Pók dāa sāsè.	Poko bought brooms.
A dāa sāag á ye.	She bought only one broom.
Dāwa Sékù tādà nāsàd sílì.	Seku has several airplanes.
A tādà nāsàd sílg á yé.	He only has one plane.
Dāwa Kúlg tādà níisì.	Kulga has some cows.
A tādà náafò.	He has a cow.
Tónd tada báase.	We have some dogs.
A tādà báagà.	He has a dog.
Sáagà níidà mé.	It's raining.
Mam tādà síbga m yíidè.	I have a grapevine at home.
A Kúk tādà síbsi a yíidè.	Kuka has some grapes at home.

32.1B Note: Plural Formations. Nouns of Action.

Most of the nouns presented above end /-ga/ in the singular and in /-se/ in the plural. Therefore they belong to the class we shall call /-ga -se/. Generally, this can be considered the action class. The nouns that belong to this class refer to things that move, to places where action occurs, and to actions themselves.

The nouns of the previous exercise show one regular phonetic alternation. When the stem vowel is /u/ or /i/, the plural ending /-se/ becomes /-si/.

A few of the above nouns straddle two classes. In the plural they are moving objects: /niisi/ - cows, /piisi/ - sheep, and /nusi/ - hands. The singular endings of these nouns, however, draw attention to a different characteristic which will be explained later.

This classification and the following ones are intended to be aids to learning and observation. They cannot, of course, predict the classification of nouns. The foreigner's idea about the outstanding characteristic of any object does not necessarily correspond to the native speaker's idea of the same. Furthermore, the 'meanings' of the endings are implicit from the native speaker's point of view. He has a feeling that a given noun should have a given ending. And he is right. No description can adequately cover groups of words which experience shows us must all belong together.

32.1C Response Drill

Practice: Plural formation of certain nouns.

Directions: All sentences of the drill relate to the first or topic sentence: /Níkemà Kampáod dá tada zíigà./, 'Old Mr. Campaode has a farm'. The instructor gives the name of an animal. The student says that Old Mr. Campaode had some such animals on his farm, or /Níkemà Kampód dá tada.....zíigè./

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada zíigà.

Instructor

náafò

búuga

báaga

nóagà

zaká

péesgò

yuugá

Student

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada níis a zíigè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada búus a zíigè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada báas a zíigè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada noosi a zíigè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada zágs a zíigè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada píis a zíigè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá tada yúus a zíigè.

32.1D Response Drill

Practice: Plural formation of certain nouns and definite vs. indefinite nouns.

Directions: All sentences of the drill are related to the first or topic sentence: /Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe píis Wágdugè./ 'Old Mr. Campaode had seen some sheep in Ouagadougou. The instructor gives the noun. The student says that Campaode had seen some such things in Ouagadougou.

Instructor

a zíigà

Sílmíigà

Sílmíigà

kadembíiga

kadembíigà

naafó

naafóà

búuga

búugà

báaga

báagà

nóagà

Student

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe a zíis Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe Sílmíis Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe Sílmíisa Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe kádembíis Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe kádembíisà Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe níis Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe níisà Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe búus Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe búusà Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe báas Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe báasà Wágdugè.

Níkemà Kampáod dá yěe nóos Wágdugè.

<u>Instructor</u>	<u>Student</u>
nóagà	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě nóosà Wágdùgě.
péesgò	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě píis Wagdùgě.
péesgoà	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě píisà Wágdùgě.
Moagá	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě Mǒǒs Wágdùgě.
Moagã	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě Mǒǒsà Wágdùgě.
nabííga	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě náblis Wágdùgě.
nabíígà	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě náblisa Wágdùgě.
yuuga	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě yúus Wágdùgě.
yuugã	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě yúusa Wágdùgě.
zakà	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě zǎgsà Wágdùgě.
daagǎ	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě dáasa Wágdùgě.
báaga	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě báas Wágdùgě.
zǒǎgà	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě zǒǎsà Wágdùgě.
yuugã	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě yúusa Wágdùgě.
noagã	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě nóosà Wágdùgě.
báaga	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě báas Wágdùgě.
sibga	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě síbs Wágdùgě.
soddáagǎ	Níkemà Kampáod dá yěě sóddàasa Wagdùgě.

32.2A Substitution Drill

Illustration: /míí/ as the first of two verbs with one subject.

A míí n kénà dáagě.	He used to go the market.
A míí n kénà dáagě.	He often goes to the market.
A míí n tuma mé.	He used to work.
A míí n tumda dád fǎ.	He usually works every day.
A míí n tumda dáagě.	He regularly works at the market.
A míí n tuma dáagě.	He used to work in the market.
A míí n kadma dád fǎ.	He used to read every day.
A míí n kadmda dád fǎ.	He usually reads every day.
A míí n daa bánanadambá.	He used to buy bananas.
A míí n daada bánanadambá.	He habitually buys bananas.
A míí n buda kamáanà.	He used to plant corn.
A míí n buta kamáanà.	He regularly plants corn.

32.2B Note

/mii/ as the first of two verbs of a subject has specialized meanings as shown in Note 24A. /mii n/ with a perfective verb means, 'used to', or 'did now and then', e.g., /A mii m kéngà mé/, 'He used to go', but /mii n/ with an imperfective means, 'often', 'habitually', or 'regularly', e.g., /A mii n kéngdà mé/, 'He goes often'.

32.2C Substitution Drill

Pogyǎngà Kampáod fúkdà kámaanà.

Mrs. Campaode is husking corn.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod pílgdà bánandambà.

Mrs. Campaode is peeling bananas.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod tádà níis á tǎǎ.

Mrs. Campaode has three cows.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod kóosà nóosads á
naase.

Mrs. Campaode sold four hens.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod tádà yíid bédde sě
ya néede.

Mrs. Campaode has a big, beautiful house.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod dá kà tád níisì la
léddàm wúsg yé.

Mrs. Campaode didn't used to have a lot of ducks and sheep.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod zii zíndigě.

Mrs. Campaode is sitting in a chair.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod gěě mé.

Mrs. Campaode is (already) in bed.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod dátà nánguyà.

Mrs. Campaode wants some peanuts.

Pogyǎngà Kampáod kéngà mé n nǎǎ n
túgǒ n daa sóogdsè.

Mrs. Campaode went to buy some buttons.

32.3A Transformation Drill

Change to negative past with /dá/.

A bée bé.

A dá kà bé yé.

A tádà yíid béede.

A dá kà tád yíid bédde yé.

Mam kóodà á Sáblogò.

Mám dá kà kóod á Sáblog yé.

Yǎm tada kóom wúsgo.

Yǎm dá kà tád kóom wúsg yé.

M nóngà daam.

A dá kà nóng daam yé.

Sáag níi mé.

Sáag dá kà níi yé.

M dátě m paamá súkdè.

M dá kà dátě m paam súkd yé.

Yǎm waa né i bá.

Yǎm dá kà wá né i bá yé.

Bám kúisà yíidě.

Bám dá kà kúis yíidě yé.

M dóogà Wágdugě.

M dá kà dóog Wágdugě yé.

Yá sídà.

Da kà síd yé.

M wúmà mé.

M dá kà wúm yé.

Comprehension Drill 1

A Kúlg bée Wáyùgiě. A yá lígd soabà n bee bé. A tádè yíid bedde sě ya néede. A tádà léddàmbá, búusi, píisi, nóosè, níisi, la wíid mé. A Kúlg ká tumd wúsg yé. A míi n kégà dáagè né a báaga. A sũd yá noog wúsgo.

Questions:

1. ¿A Kúlg bée yae?
A bée Wáyùgiě.
2. ¿A yá lígd soab n bée bè bí?
Ngée, a yá lígd soab n bée bé.
3. ¿A tádà yíid bedd sě ya néed bí?
Ngée, a tádà yíid bedd sě ya néede.
4. ¿A Kúlg tádà bwě yaasa?
A tádà léddàmbá, búusi, píisi, la nóos mé.
5. ¿A tádà níis la wíid mé bí?
Ngée, a tádà níis la wíid mé.
6. ¿A Kúlg túmdà wúsg bí?
Áyò, a ká túmd wúsg yé.
7. ¿A míi n kégà dáagè né a báag bí?
Ngée, a míi n kégà dáagè né a báaga.
8. ¿A sũd yá noog wusg bí?
Ngée, a sũd yé noog wúsgo.

Comprehension Drill 2

Dáwa Kúlg dá tada báagà. A dagè m boondá báagà tí a zóa Wésà. A Wés dá ya báag bílf sě ya néede. A Wés dà nòngà kóamb wúsgo. A míi n deemdá né koambá. A Wés dà míi n kengá táǽsg né Dáwa Kúlga.

Questions:

1. ¿Dáwa Kúlg dá tada bwě?
Dáwa Kúlg dá tada báagà.
2. ¿A dagè m boondá a báagà tí a bwě?
A dagè m boondá a báagà tí a zóa Wésa.
3. ¿A Wés dà ya báag bílf bí?
Ngée, a dá ya báag bílf sě ya néede.
4. ¿A Wés dà nòngà kóamb bí?
Ngée, a dá nòngà kóamb wúsgo.
5. ¿A míi n deemdá mé né koamb bí?
Ngée, a míi n deemdá mé né koambá.
6. ¿A Wés dà míi n kengá táǽsg né ándà?
A dá míi n kengá táǽsò né Dáwa Kúlga.

UNIT 33

Basic Sentences: A Tembíl kèngà mé n nǎǎ n tugõ n gésà lógtòde.

-Tembila-

Logtódè, m wáa mé n nǎǎ n gés yǎm!

Doctor, I came to see you.

-Logtódè-

¿Ya wána?

What's the matter?

-Tembila-

Laafí ká bé mam yé.

I don't feel well.

-Logtódè-

zaba

hurt, be painful, suffer,
have a fever

¿Ya yǎm bwě n zǎbdà?

What is it that hurts you (so)?

-Tembila-

Mam zúg nè m púg n zǎbdà.

My head and my stomach hurt!

-Logtódè-

¿Yǎm sũũda ká zǎbd lá?

Doesn't your chest hurt?

-Tembila-

nífò, *nínì
Áyò, la m nínà zǎbdà mé.

eye

No, but my eyes hurt.

-Logtódè-

bǎǎga, -sé
¿Yǎm bǎǎga singa dábudè?

sickness, disease

When did your illness begin?

-Tembila-

Zaamé zaábdè.

Last night.

-Logtódè-

tiim, *titó
Ad tíim.
Ya tíim sùngò.

medicine
Here is some medicine.
It's good.

-Tembila-

I bádík wùsgo.

Thank you very much.

USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

Bám yúùdà tíimà.	They drink the medicine.
Bám yúùdà sígàde.	They smoke a cigar.
Túulg tada mám.	I'm hot.
Wógd tada mám.	I'm cold.
Kóm tada mám.	I'm hungry.
Koyúùd tada mám.	I'm thirsty.
Mam yáe mé.	I'm tired.
Mam wúbà mé.	I vomited.
A kii mé.	He is dead.
A kíitá mé.	He is dying.
A táda pùgà.	She is pregnant.
M wǎǎgà nùg ditgò.	I cut my right hand.
M wǎǎgà nùg goabgá.	I cut my left hand.
Tónd kèndà né d nàwà.	We are going on foot.

NEW WORDS

yúù	drank, smoked
sigáde, -yá	cigarette, cigar, tobacco
túulgò	heat
wógdò	cold
kóm	hunger, famine
koyúùdu	thirst
yáe	be tired/fatigued
wóbà	vomit
kii	die
wǎǎga	cut
nùgù, -sì	hand
ditgó	right (opposite left)

goabgá
náodè, *náwà

left (opposite right)
sole

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

koabg lá yímbdè	101
koabg lá písi lá yímbdè	121
kóbsì	200
kóbs tã	300
kóbs náasè	400
kóbs nú	500
kóbs yoobé	600
kóbs yopoe	700
kóbs níì	800
kóbs wáe	900
túsdì	1000
túsa yi	2000
túsa tãã	3000

GENERAL NOTES

33A Emphatic sentences

¿Ya yám bwě n zábda?!

Mam zúg nè m púg n zábda!

Áyò, la m nínà zábda mé.

In most cases, /mé/ occurs after a verb if there is no object or complement, e.g., the third sentence above, 'No, but my eyes hurt!'. See Note 2F. This is the usual or favorite sentence type, but certain types of emphatic sentences do not have /mé/ after a verb even if there is no object or complement. The second sentence above without /ya/ is somewhat more emphatic, i.e., 'My head and my stomach hurt!'. Such a sentence is an elliptical or shortened form of a sentence with /ya/, as shown by the connective /n/ and lack of /mé/. With /ya/, a sentence is even more emphatic, e.g., the first sentence above, 'What is it that hurts you so?!'

33.1A Repetition Drill and Supplementary Vocabulary

Illustration: Noun plurals

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Glossary</u>
zóobgò	zóobdò	hair of head
nífù	nínì	eye
yóòde	yóya	nose, nostril
tubdé	tubá	ear
yéndè	yénà	tooth
kõbgó	kõbdó	body hair
súúdi	súya	heart, chest, upper torso
pugá	pusí	stomach, intestinal area, middle torso
taodé	tawá	lower torso
núgù	núsì	arm, hand
núgbila	núgbì	finger
kadgá	kadsé	leg, foot
náodè	náwà	sole
náobila	náobì	toe
poodé	pooyá	back
zúgù	zútù	head
nóodè	nóyà	mouth
zilmde	zilmá	tongue
kokódè	kokóyà	neck

33.1A Note: Plural Formations: Nouns of result and nouns of enclosure.

The Repetition Drill above presents two noun classes: /-de -a/ and /-go -do/. The first class refers generally to results of actions and to small things. Some of the names in this class are some parts of the body, fruits, small plants and animals, names of languages. Fruits are 'results' of plants with the same name, and languages are the 'results' of the people who speak them.

The second class refers to nouns whose outstanding characteristic is that they are encasements, coverings or expanses. They often have the additional quality of an extractable content.

Some regular phonetic changes apply to the stems and endings. An ending in /-o/ changes to /-u/ when preceded by /u/ or /i/ in the stem. An ending in /-e/ changes to /-i/ when preceded by /u/ or /i/ in the stem. Thus /súúdi/

and /poodé/ belong to the same noun class. /zúgù/ and /zóobgò/ also belong to the same class. When the plural ending /-a/ occurs immediately after a vowel, it is pronounced /-ya/.

33.2A Number Drill

Review Supplementary Vocabulary of Units 8 and 15. Read the numbers horizontally.

(a)	18	80	28	(b)	40	50	4	5
	17	70	27		14	15	45	54
	16	60	26		60	70	6	7
	15	50	25		16	17	67	76
	14	40	24		20	30	3	2
(c)	19	90	29	(d)	36	63	33	66
	16	15	13		25	52	22	55
	20	50	40		67	76	77	66
	25	22	27		19	99	9	11
	38	68	18		8	88	38	78
(e)	200	102	202	(f)	200	300	400	
	600	604	640		1500	1600	1700	
	317	307	371		1808	1919	2000	
	869	879	829		1965	2116	2473	
	403	402	430		8217	5353	4962	

33.2A Transformation Drill

Change to more emphatic form with /n/.

M pood zàbdà mé.	M pod n zàbdà.
M zúg zàbdà mé.	M zúg n zàbdà.
M níf zàbdà mé.	M níf n zàbdà.
M yěnd zàbdà mé.	M yěnd n zàbdà.
M sũũd zàbdà mé.	M sũũd n zàbdà.
M tubd zàbdà mé.	M tubd n zàbdà.
M pug zàbdà mé.	M pug n zàbdà.
M kadg zàbdà mé.	M kadg n zàbdà.
M núg zàbdà mé.	M núg n zàbdà.
M nús zàbdà mé.	M nús n zàbdà.
M náó zàbdà mé.	M náó n zàbdà.
M tao zàbdà mé.	M tao n zàbdà.

33.2B Transformation Drill

Change francs to /wakíyà/. One 'wakide' equals five francs.

5 francs (C.F.A.)	wakíd á yimbè
10 francs	wakíy á yìibù
15 francs	wakíy á tǎǎbò
20 francs	wakíy á náasè
25 francs	wakíy á nùu
30 francs	wakíy á yòobè
35 francs	wakíy á yòpoè
40 francs	wakíy á nìì
45 francs	wakíy á wàe
50 francs	wakí piiga

33.2C Substitution Drill

M yǔúdà dáam̃.	I drink beer.
M yǔúdà <u>sígàde</u> .	I'm smoking.
M yǔúdà <u>tiim</u> .	I'm drinking the medicine.
M <u>díkà</u> tíim̃.	I took the medicine.
M <u>díkà á la mé n kégà silg yíidè</u> .	I took him to the airport.
M <u>kégà mé n tugǒ n díkà á silgyiidè</u> .	I went to get him at the airport.
M <u>kégà mé n tugǒ n gés lógtòde</u> .	I went to see the doctor.
M <u>díkà m pága n tugǒ n gés lógtòde</u> .	I took my wife to see the doctor.
M <u>díkà m pága n kégà dáagè</u> .	I took my wife to the market.
M <u>díkà m pága n tugǒ n gés a ma</u> .	I took my wife to see her mother.

Comprehension Drill 1

Logtód kǒǒ la Dáwa Tembíl tíim záamè. Dáwa Tembíl dá kǎ láafi yé. A zúg né a pug n dá zǎbdà. A yéelà mé tí a nínà mé dá zǎbdà mé. A báǎga singa zaamè. Logtód a Sékù tíimà ya tíim sungo. A kǒǒ Dáwa Tembíl láafi.

Questions:

- ¿Logtód kǒǒ Dáwa Tembíl tíim záamè?
Ngée, Logtód kǒǒ Dáwa Tembíl tíim záamè.
- ¿Dáwa Tembíl dá ya láafi bí?
Áyò, Dáwa Tembíl dá kǎ láafi yé.
- ¿A Tembíl bwě n dá zǎbdà?
A Tembíl zúg né a pug n dá zǎbdà.

4. ¿Dáwa Tembíl yéelà mé tí a nín mè dá zàbdà mé bí?
Ngée, a yéelà mé tí a nín mè dá zàbdà mé.
5. ¿A bǎǎga singa dábudè?
A bǎǎga singa záamè balá.
6. ¿Logtód tíima ya tíim sùng bí?
Ngée, a tíimà ya tíim sùngò.
7. ¿A tíimà kǒǒ Dáwa Tembíl láafì bí?
Ngée, logtód tíimà kǒǒ Dáwa Tembila láafì.

Comprehension Drill 2

áspidinì

aspirin

píkùudè, -yà

shot (medical)

Logtódè, laafí ká bé mam yé. M zúg n zàbdà. A sǐngà m la zàbd záamè balá. A zàbdà m la wúsgo. Mam dátà áspidin la píkùudè. M púusdà yǎm bǎdk wúsgo, logtódè.

Questions: Answer the questions as though you were Tembila or the doctor.

1. ¿Tembila, i yíbeog ya laafí?
Áyò, laafí ká bé mam yé.
2. ¿Yǎm bwě n zàbda?
Mam zúg n zàbdà.
3. ¿Yǎm zúgà sǐngà la dábudè?
A sǐngà záamè balá.
4. ¿Yǎm zùgà zàbdà yǎm wúsgo bí?
Ngée, a zàbdà m la wúsgo.
5. ¿Yǎm dátà mé tí m kǒǒ i píkùud bí?
Ngée, m dátà mé tí i kǒǒ m píkùude.
6. ¿Yǎm tǒě n lèbě n wa ká beoog yíbeòog bí?
Ngée, m tǒě n lèbě n wa mé.
7. ¿Yǎm tàdà áspidin i zákè bí?
Áyò, m ká tát àpidin m zákè yé.
8. ¿Yǎm dátà áspidin mé bí?
Ngée, m dátà áspidin mé.
9. ¿M tǒě n dikà áspidinà mwásmwasà?
Ngée, díke yǎ á yi mwásà, a yíib zaábdè.
10. ¿M tǒě n yíi dúndà bí?
Áyò, dá yíi dúnda yé.
11. ¿Yǎm wùrà mé bí?
Ngée, m wùrà mé.

UNIT 34

Basic Sentences: 1

	-Sékù-	
M báodà bókè tùmde.		I'm looking for a job as a house-boy.
	-Edward-	
Yám tókè m peká fút la i dépase?		Can you do washing and ironing?
	-Sékù-	
Áyò, m tókè m peká mé la m ká tókè n dépas yé.		No, I can wash, but I can't iron.
díide, -bó		food, nourishment
M tókè m maaná díib mé.		I can cook also.
	-Edward-	
Dé ya sùrà.		That's good.
déngà		do first/beforehand; be early/ in advance; start with, pre- cede by
Yám dengé n tuma zíi bugo?		Have you worked anywhere before?
	-Sékù-	
Ngée.		Yes.
	-Edward-	
Yae?		Where?
	-Sékù-	
Monsieur Antoine yíidè.		At Mr. Antoine's.
	-Edward-	
yáo		pay, repay, compensate
kíuugù, -sì		moon; month
Monsieur Antoine dá yàodà yám kíuug fǎǎ wána?		How much did Mr. Antoine pay you per month?

-Sékù-

(U)b dá yàoda mām kóbisnaas kiug
fǎǎ.

He paid me 2000 francs a month.

-Edward-

Mam nǎǎ n díkà yǎm kóbinaas kiug
fǎǎ.

I'll hire you at 2000 francs a month.

sákà

obey, consent, accept, agree

¿Yǎm saka mé?

Is that satisfactory to you?

-Sékù-

Ohǒ, m sákà mé.

Well, all right, I accept.

Basic Sentences: 2

-Edward-

Id gés bwě túumd la yǎm nǎǎ n tum
yíbeoogǎ.

Let's see what sort of work there is for you this morning.

sálǒǒ, -dàmbá

living room, salon, reception room

¿Yǎm dà pèkà sálǒowǎ záamě bí?

Did you mop the living room yesterday.

-Sékù-

Ngée.

Yes.

-Edward-

Dúnda yǎm nǎǎ m pékà fút la vwátuudǎ.

Today you will wash the car and the clothes.

safándè, -à

soap

ódzavel (eau de Javel)

bleach

¿Safánd né ódzavel bée mé?

Is there any soap and bleach?

-Sékù-

M tádà ódzavel la safánd ká yé.

I have some bleach, but there's no soap.

M nǎǎ n túgǒ n daa mwásmwasǎ n waa.

I'm going to go buy some right away.

-Edward-

lébà

return to, come to, again,
redo, start; take the place
of; (re)wind; resemble; still,
yet, besides

páogà

lack, be insufficient, des-
pise, underestimate, under-
value, disparage

¿Bwě lébè m páog yãm yaasá?

What do you need besides? (What
has come back and is lacking you
still?)

-Sékù-

Áyò, búm kà páog m yáas yé.

(No,) I don't need anything else.

-Edward-

súkà

ask

kéesà

remain, last, endure, be left

Bí i súke yǎ Madame n gés bwě
túumd kéese.

After that, ask my wife and see
what else there is to do.

-Sékù-

M wúmà mé.

I understand.

USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

¿Bwě m páoge?

What is needed?
What is lacking?

Koom m páoge.

There hasn't been enough water.

Búd m páoge.

There hasn't been enough bread,

Búd páogà mé.

There isn't enough bread.

Némd páogà mé.

There isn't enough meat.

Búd kà bé yé.

There isn't any bread.

A táda sáfand m pékd fútù.

He is washing the clothes.

A táda ság m píisd dóogò.

He is sweeping the room with a
broom.

A táda ódzavel m pékd díib dòogó.

He is mopping the dining room with
bleach.

A táda fúkudg n sǒǒgd táble.

He dusted the table with a rag.

Lebé m péke yǎ ténga.

Mop the floor again.

Lebé m péke yǎ láasè.

Redo the dishes.

Lebé n kwiisé yǎ láasè.

Dry the dishes again.

Tápi pila mé.	The rug is/has been rolled up.
Tápi pilga mé.	The rug is/has been unrolled.
Bám lebě n waa Wágdùgě.	He has come back to Ouagadougou.
Bám lebě n táda sáfànd dáagě.	They have soap at the market again.
Bám lebě n táda sáfànd butíkě.	They have soap at the store again.

NEW WORDS

búdi	bread
néongò, *némdò	meat
safándè, -dàmbá	soap
sáagà, -sè	broom
píisa	sweep
kúdga, -sé	old, worn-out, ragged
táblè, -dàmbá	table
láaga, -sé	dish
kwiisa	dry
tápi, -dàmbá	rug, mat
butíkè, -dàmbá	store, shop

GENERAL NOTES

34A Close connective /n/: Loose connective /la/.

A táda sáfand m pékd fútù.

Yám tòě m peká fút la i depas?

As noted previously, two or more Moré verbs often translate as a single verb or a verb plus a preposition or adverb. If there is a close relationship between the verbs, such as, 'to do simultaneously', or 'use in order to do', the close connective /n/ occurs before the second verb (and also before a third or fourth verb), and the subject is not repeated, e.g., the first sentence above, 'He is washing the clothes with soap'.

If there is a loose connection between the verbs, i.e., the actions are independent of each other, the loose connective /la/ occurs, and the subject is repeated, e.g., the second sentence above, 'Can you wash and iron?'. The meaning of the close versus the loose connective can be unusual, to say the least, to soap clothes without washing them or to wash clothes without soap.

34B Subordinate /-e/

¿Yám tóě m peká fut la i dípase?

¿Bwě m páoge?

After the connectives /n/ and /la/, the verb often has the ending /-e/, e.g., /dépase/, 'iron', and /páoge/, 'lack', 'need', in the sentences above, 'Can you wash and iron?', and 'What is needed?'.

34C The noun ending /-bó/

díibo

The noun ending of /-bo/ indicates a mass of something, e.g., /díibo/ 'food', 'some food'. Some such nouns have a singular in /-dé/, which means a 'small bit of', e.g., /díide/, 'a little bit/scrap of food'. The student should not coin new singulars analogically from nouns with /-bó/ because many of these noun stems are incompatible with /-bó/.

34D /dégà/ as the first of two verbs.

¿Yám dengě n tuma zíi bugo?

/dégě/ before another verb means, 'do previously/beforehand', 'start with', or 'precede by', e.g., the sentence above, 'Have you worked somewhere previously?'.

34E Iterative

¿Monsieur Antoine dá yàodà yám kíuug fǎǎ wána?

Action that is repeated from time to time is marked by the imperfective suffix /-d/, e.g., in the sentence above, 'How much did Mr. Antoine pay you each month?', the English translation has a past non-progressive verb, but the Moré must have the /-d/ since the action is repeated on several occasions.

34F Quoting prices

(U)B dá yàoda mám kóbisnaas kí ug fǎǎ.

As shown in Unit 13, prices are quoted in /wakíyà/, i.e., five-franc units, e.g., in the sentence above, 'He paid me 2000 francs a month', /kóbisnaas/ is literally '400', i.e., '400 wakides' or '2000 francs'. (Only a very inexperienced houseboy could be obtained at this price. A good houseboy may make ten times this amount.)

34G Cohortative

Id gés bwě túumd la yǎm nǎǎ n tum yíbeoogǎ.

A cohortative is sometimes marked with just the first person plural and no /bí/. See Note 15D. For example, the sentence above, 'Let's see what sort of work there is for you this morning'.

34H /lébà/ as the first of two verbs

¿Bwě lébè m páog yǎm yaasá?

Lebè m páke yǎ ténga.

/lébè/ as the first of two verbs with a subject means, (1) 'still', 'yet', 'besides', 'in addition', 'else', e.g., the first sentence above, 'What else do you need?', 'What do you need besides?', and (2) 'again', 'over', 'another time', e.g., the second sentence above, 'Mop the floor again/over/another time'. It may refer to redoing something over again in order to get it right or it may refer to two different and separate occurrences of an action.

34I Omission of initial /ya/.

¿Bwě m páoge?

Koom m paoge.

The above sentences, 'What is needed', and 'There isn't enough water', are short forms of /¿Ya bwě m páoge/ and /Ya koom m paoge/. The long forms of the sentences are much more emphatic than the short forms.

34J Instrument: Means

A tádà ódzavel m pekd díibdòogó.

Instrument or means is very often expressed by /tádà/ plus the means/instrument plus another verb with or without an object, e.g., the sentence above, 'He is mopping the dining room with bleach', literally, 'He has bleach and is mopping the dining room'.

34.1A Substitution Drill

Illustration: Passive Actions

Díib máanà mé.

Téng pékà mé.

Fút dépassà mé.

Doog píisà mé.

Sáfand dāa mé.

Tápi pila mé.

Búd paoga mé.

Dāam koosa mé.

Lāas kwíisà mé.

Tábl sǒǒgà mé.

Némd sěě mé.

Fút pilga mé.

The food is/has been cooked.

The floor is/has been mopped.

The clothes are/have been ironed.

The room is/has been swept.

The soap has been bought.

The rug is/has been rolled up.

There isn't enough bread.

The beer has been sold.

The dishes are dry/have been dried.

The table is/has been dusted.

The meat has been cooked.

The clothes are/have been unfolded.

34.1B Substitution Drill

Díib máandà mé.

Téng pékdà mé.

Fút dépassdà mé.

Doog píisdà mé.

Sáfand dāadà mé.

Tápi pilda mé.

Búd paogda mé.

Dāam kóosdà mé.

Lāas kwíisdà mé.

Tábl sǒǒgdà mé.

Némd sěěda mé.

Fút pilgda mé.

The food is being prepared.

The floor is being mopped.

The clothes are being ironed.

The room is being swept.

Soap is available for purchase.

The rug is being rolled up.

There's not going to be enough bread.

The beer is salable.

The dishes are being dried.

The table is being dusted.

The meat is being roasted.

The clothes are being unfolded.

34.1C Substitution Drill

¿Bwě m páoge?

Koom m páoge.

Búd m páoge.

Sáag m páoge.

What is needed?

What is insufficient?

There hasn't been enough water.

There hasn't been enough bread.

Rain is needed.

Logtód m páoge.

Safánd m páoge.

Ódzavel m páoge.

Doog m páoge.

Tábl m páoge.

Laas m páoge.

A doctor is needed.

There is insufficient soap.

There is insufficient bleach.

More/Another room is needed.

A table is needed.

Some/More dishes are needed.

34.2A Substitution Drill

Review: Double verbs with one subject.

Bám lebě n waa Wágùgě.

Bám lebě n kèngà Wágùgě.

Bám lebě m pékà fútù.

Bám lebě m pékdà fútù.

Bám lebě m pékdà fútà yáasà.

Bám lebě m pékdà laasè.

Bám lebě n tádà sáfànd dáagě.

Bám lebě n tádà nemd butíkě.

Bám lebě n tádà zíndig sílgě.

He has come back to Ouagadougou.

He has gone back to Ouagadougou.

He (has) washed (clothes) again.

He is washing (clothes) again.

He washed (the clothes) over again.

He is washing dishes again.

They have soap at the market again.

They have meat again at the market.

They have seat(s) on the plane again.

34.2B Substitution Drill

¿Yám dengě n tuma zíi bugo?

¿Yám dengě n díi wálg n'emd bí?

¿Yám dengě n zindá Bóboě bí?

¿Yám dengě m peká fút bí?

¿Yám dengě m míi a la mé bí?

¿Yám dengě n zindá Ghána bí?

¿Yám dengě n kadma lívd bí?

¿Yám dengě n gomá Móöd bí?

¿Yám dengě n yíi yíkãdm bí?

¿Yám dengě n díi kamáan bud bí?

Have you worked anywhere before?

Have you ever eaten gazelle?

Have you ever been to Bobo-Dioulasso?

Have you ever done washing before?

Have you met him before?

Have you been to Ghana before?

Have you ever read a book?

Have you spoken Moré before?

Have you ever been married?

Have you eaten cornbread?

34.2C Substitution Drill

A dá tadá sáfand m pékd fútù.

A dá tadá sáag m píisd dóogò.

A dá tadá fúkudg n sǒǒgd táblè.

A dá tadá ódzavel m pékd sálǒǒwǎ.

He washed the clothes with soap.

He swept the room with a broom.

He dusted the table with a rag.

He mopped the living room with bleach.

A dá tadá fúug n kwíisd láasè.
 A dá tadá yámsm m maand diibo.
 A dá tadá lígd n daad vwátuudè.
 A dá tadá sébd n kadmdě.
 A dá tadá móbil n kénd Bobóě.
 A dá tadá tómàt n kóosdě.

He dried the dishes with a cloth.
 He cooked the food with salt.
 He bought a car with the money.
 He took the paper and read it.
 He took the car and went to Bobo-Dioulasso.
 He took the tomatoes and sold them.

34.3A Substitution Drill

A lébà Dákàdě.
 A lébgà Dákàdě.
 A lébè n la Dákàdě.
 A lébgè n la Dákàdě.
 A lébè n waa Wágdùgě.
 A lébgà Dákàdě n waa New Yorkě.
 A lébsà yám sebda.
 A lébsà yám sebda n kó yă.

He (has) returned to Dakar recently.
 He (has) left from Dakar recently.
 He (has) returned to Dakar.
 He (has) departed from Dakar.
 He (has) returned to Ouagadougou.
 He (has) returned to New York from Dakar.
 He (has) returned your book.
 He (has) returned your book to you.

UNIT 35

Basic Sentences

	-John-	
zíiga, -se		place; weather
yingá		outside
¿Zíiga ya wán yingá?		How's the weather outside?
	-Sékù-	
yě		be really/very
módmod		hot and humid
Zíiga yě n ya módmod bílf yíngà.		It's really hot and stuffy out.
	-John-	
¿Yám tǝ̀dà mé tí saagá dátǝ̀ n waa mé bí?		Do you think it's going to rain?
	-Sékù-	
Ngée, mam tǝ̀dà mé tí á dátǝ̀ n níí mé.		Yes, I believe it's going to rain.
	-John-	
¿Mwásmwasà bí?		Right away?
	-Sékù-	
káoosà		last, endure, be long time
Áyò, la m tǝ̀dà tí á ká náǎ n káoos yé.		No, but I don't think it will be very long.
	-John-	
kángà		this, that
¿Saag níidà téng kángà wúsgo bí?		Does it rain much in this country?
	-Sékù-	
yumdé, -á		year
Ngée, la ká yúm fǎǎ yé.		Yes, but not every year.

	-John-	
síŋgo, -dó		rainy season
¿Yám síŋg káoosdà kíuug wána?		How many months does your rainy season last?
	-Sékù-	
Kís á náasè.		Four months.
	-John-	
sípalògo, -sè		dry season
¿La sípalòg yé?		And the dry season?
	-Sékù-	
Sípalòg yé n ya kís á tǎǎbò.		The dry season lasts three months.
lóogà		happen, pass, go away, be gone
La sípalòg lóogde píigè n wógdè wàtà.		And after the dry season comes the cold.
	-John-	
¿Yám nòngà túulg bí, bí wógdò?		Do you like the heat or the cold?
	-Sékù-	
Mam nòngà wógdò.		Me, I like the cold.

USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

Yá túulgò	It's hot
Yá wógdò	It's cool
Zíig túulà mé.	It is/has gotten hot.
Zíig náagà mé.	It is/has gotten brisk.
Zíig bóogà mé.	It is/has gotten partly cloudy.
Zíig yěègà mé.	It is/has gotten clear.
	It is/has gotten light.
Zíig sóbgà mé.	It is/has gotten dark.
Zíig yókà mé.	It is/has gotten stuffy.
Zíig módgà mé.	It is/has gotten clouded up.
¿Yám tàdà yúm wána?	How old are you?
Mam tàdà yúm pístà.	I am thirty years old.

Mam yíì Wágdùgě yum á yiib sě
lóg mwasà.

I left Ouagadougou two years ago.

Mam nǎǎ n waa kégà Wágdùgě
kàè la yum á yiibú.

I'm going to Ouagadougou two years
from now.

GENERAL NOTES

35A /yě/ as the first of two verbs of a subject

Zíiga yě n ya módmod bílf yíngà.

/yě/ as the first of two verbs of a subject means, 'be really/truly/very much so', e.g., the sentence above, 'It's really hot and stuffy outside.'

35B Intonation after particles

¿Yám nòngà túulg bí, bí wogdo?

After certain particles, such as the interrogative particle /bí/, the tone register of the entire sentence steps down approximately the amount of difference between high and low, e.g., in the sentence above, 'Do you like the heat or the cold?', the pitch steps down from the first to the second /bí/ and amount equal from high to low. But the second /bí/ is still phonemically high, and a low in this position would have been as much again as low.

35.1A Substitution Drill

Practice: /tédà/ with a subordinate clause.

¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á nǎǎ n waa mé bí?</u>	Do you think he will come?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á waa mé bí?</u>	Do you think he came?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á dátě n níi me bí?</u>	Do you think it's going to rain?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á bee yíngě bí?</u>	Do you think he is outside?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á kégà Pádìě bí?</u>	Do you think he went to Paris?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí a nǎǎ n tuma né mam bí?</u>	Do you think he'll work for me?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á lebě n waa mé bí?</u>	Do you think he came back again?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á táda vwátuudà bí?</u>	Do you think he has the car?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á míi a Kúlga bí?</u>	Do you think he knows Kulga?
¿Yám tédà mé <u>tí á yeelá á la mé n kó a Kúk bí?</u>	Do you think he told Kuka about it?

35.1B Substitution Drill

Practice: Imperative

Wáé yǎ pùgě.
 Wáé yǎ yíngě.
Yíì yǎ yíngě.
Lebě n yíì yǎ yíngě.
 Lebě n túulge yǎ koom.
Dengě n túulge yǎ koom.
 Dengě n máage yǎ koom.
Yeelé yǎ tí a máag koom.
 Yeelé yǎ tí a wa yíngě.
Dá yeelé yǎ tí a wa yúngě ye.
 Dá yeelé yǎ tí a yí yíngě ye.
 Dá yeelé yǎ tí a lebě n yí yíngě ye.

Come inside.
 Come outside.
 Go outside.
 Go outside again.
 Heat the water again.
 Heat the water first.
 Start by cooling the water.
 Tell her to cool the water.
 Tell her to come outside.
 Don't tell her to come outside.
 Don't tell her to go outside.
 Don't tell her to go outside again.

35.2A Substitution Drill

Wógd bee dúnda.
Ya túulg dúnda.
Zíig túulà dúnda.
 Zíig máagà dúnda.
 Zíig módgà dúnda.
 Zíig yǒkà dúnda.
 Zíig sóbgà dúnda.
 Zíig bóogà dúnda.
 Zíig yá módmod bílf ying dúnda.
 Zíig yá wán ying dúnda?

It's cool today.
 It's hot today.
 It's hot today.
 It's brisk today.
 It has clouded up.
 It's stuffy today.
 It's gotten dark today.
 It's somewhat cloudy today.
 It's rather hot and stuffy out today.
 How's the weather (out) today?

35.2B Substitution Drill

Mam táda kóom wúsgo.
 Mam táda bíism wúsgo.
Mam níisà kǒtā m la bíism wúsgo.
 Mam níisà bee dóogà pùgě.
Zǒǎg bee dóogàpùgě.
 Zǒǎg bee m dáamà pùgě.

I have plenty of water.
 I have plenty of milk.
 My cows give me plenty of milk.
 My cows are inside the building.
 There's a fly in the room.
 There's a fly in my beer.

Zóǎg lui m dáamà pùgè.
 Zóǎg lui kóòm pùgè.
 Kúgd lui kóòm pùgè.
 Kúgd lui sód zùgè.
 Koom bée sód zùgè.
 Koom bée m dóog pùgè.

A fly fell in my beer.
 A fly fell into the water.
 A rock fell into the water.
 A rock fell into the road.
 There's water on the road.
 There's water in my room.

35.2C Substitution Drill

A tádà yámsm.
 A dátè n daa yámsm.
 Bám dà dátè n daa yámsà
 Bám dà dátè n yéè yám mwásmwasà.
 Yám babilà dá dátè n yéè yám
 mwásmwasà.
 Yám babilà yíi Dákàdè n waa.
 M pogdbá yíi Dákàdè n waa.
 M pogdbá ná n yíi Dákàdè n waa.
 M bakásmà ná n yíi Dákàdè n waa.
 M bakásmà sígà m bá yíidè.
 M náá n sígà m bá yíidè.
 M náá n sígà m bá Jones yíidè.

He wants some salt.
 He wants to buy some salt.
 They wanted to buy some salt.
 They wanted to see you right away.
 Your uncle wanted to see you right away.
 Your uncle has come back from Dakar.
 My aunt has come back from Dakar.
 My aunt has just come back from Dakar.
 My uncle has just come back from Dakar.
 My uncle stayed at my father's house.
 I'm going to stay at my father's house.
 I'm going to stay with my friends the Jones'.

Comprehension

Dúnda zííga ya módmod bílfù. Mam tédà mé bí saagá dátè n waa mé. A ká náá n waa mwásmwasà yé. La m tédà mé tí á ká náá n kaoos n waa yé. Saag níidà Wágdùg wúsgo. La ká yumd fǎá yé. Tónd siǒg káoosdà kís á tǎǎbo. Sípalòg sǎ lóogè, ya wígd n wátà. Mam nóngà wógd bílfù la túulg bílfù.

Questions:

1. ¿Zííga ya wán dúnda?
 A yá módmod dúnda.
2. ¿Yám tédà mé tí saagá dátè n waa mé bí?
 Ngée, mam kéndà mé t á dátè n waa mé.

3. ¿Saagá nǎǎ n waa mwásmwasà bí?
Áyò, a ká nǎǎ n wa mwásmwasà yé.
4. ¿La yǎm tǎdà t á nǎǎ n kaoosa mé n waa bí?
Áyò, m ká tǎd t á nǎǎ n kaoosa mé n wa yé.
5. ¿Saag níidà Wágdùg wúsg bí?
Ngée, saag níidà wúsgo, la ká yumd fáǎ yé.
6. ¿Yǎm siǒg káoosdà kís wána?
Tónd siǒg káoosdà kís á tǎǎbo.
7. ¿La yǎm sípalòg yě?
Tónd sípalòg káoosdà kís á tǎǎbo.
8. ¿Sípalòg sǎ lóoge, ya bwě n wátà?
Sípalòg sǎ lóoge, ya wódgě n wáta.
9. ¿Yǎm nònga wógd bí, bí túulgò?
Mam nóngà wógd bífù, la túulg bífù.

UNIT 36

Basic Sentences

	-Tembila-	
bál, -dàmbá		ball; soccer
taõ		hit, strike, kick; play soccer
taõbo		playing, game
¿Bál tàõb bée dúnda la?		Isn't there a soccer game today?
	-Sékù-	
Ngée, Stade Municipaleë.		Yes at Municipal Stadium.
	-Tembila-	
équipe		team
¿Yá équipe bug né bug n táõdà?		What teams are playing?
	-Sékù-	
Ya Étoile Filante né J.A. n taõda.		It's the Étoile Filante and the Jeanne d'Arc.
	-Tembila-	
dál		unless, without; then, well
wae		Oh! Well!
Dál tónd náã n yěë dúnda wae!		Well, in that case we will see a good game!
	-Sékù-	
M tēda me yé.		I believe so.
	-Tembila-	
¿La b yáodà wána n kěě?		How much does it cost to get in?
	-Sékù-	
Wakíi písì bée mé, wakíi pístà, né písnaase mé zíig bée mé.		There are seats at 100, 150, and 200 francs.

-Tembila-

wákatò, -dàmbá
;Wákat bug lá b síngdà?

time; clock
What time does it start?

-Sékù-

méngà
léedà
púi sukà, -sè
Matchà méng síngdà léeda naas la púi
sukà.

self
hour
half
The game itself starts at 4:30.

-Tembila-

Bí d kéng taotao n tógò m páam zíig
sungó.

Let's go right away so we'll get
a good seat.

-Sékù-

Id kéne.

Let's go.

USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

;Yám tādà wákat bugo?

What time do you have?

;Ya wákat bugo m bee?

What time is it?

Ya wákat á yè.

It's one o'clock.

Ya wákat á yìlibù.

It's two o'clock.

Ya wákat á yìib yíbeogò.

It's 2:00 a.m.

Ya wákat á yìib zaábde.

It's 2:00 p.m.

Ya wákat á ye la púi sukà.

It's 1:30.

Ya wákat á ye la mínit píiga lá nú.

It's 1:15.

Wákat taa mé, id tǒǒ n lóogà mé.

It is time for us to go.

Wákat taa mé, ub tǒǒ n singá kádèngó.

It's time for them to start studying.

Wákat taa mé, a tǒǒ n siga tuumde.

It's time for him to quit work.

M náǎ m paamá zíig n tuma á.

I will have time to do it.

M ká náǎ m paam zíig n tum á yé.

I don't have time to do it.

La tónd sǎ n kéng bál tàǒb n yé.

Suppose we go to the soccer match.

NEW WORDS

mínti, -dàmbà

minute

kadengó

study(ing), lesson

GENERAL NOTES

36A Verbal Nouns: /-go/ and /-ga/.

Wákat taa mé, ub tõe n singá kádèngó.

Verbal nouns meaning the 'act(ion) of', are marked by the noun suffixes /-go/ and /-ga/ to the stem, e.g., /kadengó/, 'study', 'studying', 'to study', in the sentence above, 'It's time for them to start studying'.

36B Polite Suggestion

La tónd sǎ n kég bál tàõb n yě.

/la/, 'and', 'before', and /sǎ/, 'if', 'when', after the subject of a sentence mark a polite suggestion, i.e., 'Suppose that', 'What would you think of', 'Would you care to', 'How about', e.g., the sentence above, 'How about going to see the soccer game?'.

36.1A Substitution Drill

¿Wákat bug la a waě?	What time did he come?
¿Wákat bug <u>la a wátà?</u>	What time does he/it come?
¿Wákat bug <u>la d dítà?</u>	What time are we going to eat?
¿Wákat bug <u>la bál tàõb síngdà?</u>	What time does the ball game begin?
¿Wákat bug <u>la tídè lóogdà?</u>	What time does the train leave?
¿Wákat bug <u>la yǎm nǎǎ n waa?</u>	What time will you return?
¿Wákat bug <u>la yǎm síngd tuumde?</u>	What time do you start to work?
¿Wákat bug <u>la yǎm sígd tuumde?</u>	What time do you quit work?
¿Wákat bug <u>la a dátà?</u>	What time does he want?
¿Wákat bug <u>la a suk yǎ?</u>	What time did he ask you for?

36.1B Substitution Drill

Wákat taa mé; id tõe n lóogà mé.	It's time for us to go.
Wákat taa mé; <u>m tõe n sígà mé.</u>	It's time for me to quit.
Wákat taa mé; <u>a tõe n kégà a yíidè.</u>	It's time for him to go home.
Wákat taa mé; <u>a tõe m pékà fútù.</u>	It's time for him to do the wash.
Wákat taa mé; <u>ub tõe n waa mé.</u>	It's time for them to arrive.
Wákat taa mé; <u>m tõe n síngà díib</u> <u>máanagò.</u>	It's time for me to start cooking.

Wákat t'aa mé, <u>m t'óě n k'engà p'ostě.</u>	It's time for me to go to the post office.
Wákat t'aa mé, <u>ub t'óě n s'ingà kád'engó.</u>	It's time for them to start studying.
Wákat t'aa mé, <u>a t'óě n díkà t'íimà.</u>	It's time for him to take his medicine.
Wákat t'aa mé, <u>t'ónd t'óě n dii mé.</u>	It's time for us to eat.

36.2A Response Drill

Answer the questions according to the cues.

¿Yám mii Dáwa Kúk bí?	Ngée, m mii Dáwa Kúka.
¿Dáwa Kúk yá bwě?	Dáwa Kúk yá <u>t'á'ó'sà.</u>
¿Dáwa Kúk bée yae?	A bée <u>la a Sablóg weoogě.</u>
¿A Sablóg weoog bée téng búgò?	A Sablóg weoog bée <u>Haute Voltaě.</u>
¿A Sablóg yá weoog bédđ bí?	Ngée, a yá wéoog bédđ.
¿Bwě bée a Sabló p'ugě?	<u>Katá, wóbdò, né weoogníis m bée</u> a p'ugě.
¿Dáwa Kúk mii n yíi t'á'ó'sg wákat bugo?	A mii n yíi t'á'ó'sg <u>zaábd f'á'á.</u>
¿A t'á'ó'sdà né bwě?	A t'á'ó'sdà né <u>bugdaogó.</u>

NEW WORDS

weoogó, -tó	forest, bush, brush
kátđ, *katá	hyena
wóbgò, -to	elephant

36.3A Substitution Drill

La t'ónd s'á n k'eng bál t'á'ób n yě.	Suppose we go to the soccer game.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n k'eng Wayugíá b'eoogò.</u>	Suppose we go to Ouahigouya tomorrow.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n di pindá.</u>	Suppose we eat early.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n dík t'íđ.</u>	Suppose we take the train.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n yě Níkemà Kampáode.</u>	Suppose we see old Mr. Campaode.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n baas id téed gádě.</u>	Suppose we leave our things at the station.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n tum zaábdě.</u>	Suppose we work this afternoon.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n di m yíidě.</u>	Suppose we eat at my house.
La t'ónd s'á <u>n bool a.</u>	Suppose we call him (up).

36.4A Pattern Drill

Ya wakat á ye la mínit píiga lá nú. It's 1:15.
Read the following times in Moré.

6:20	10:45
5:10	11:55
2:00	7:35
4:05	2:10
12:30	6:25
7:15	12:50
8:40	9:00
9:50	4:30
1:05	5:45
3:35	3:50

Comprehension Drill 1

Basg yá Mǒǒs tigongó. Basg tígòng yá sepálòg wákatò. Tónd kí sǎ n bii tí sása looge, tónd, bàdàm máandà tígòngó ti b bóond tí Bǎsgà. Basgdáadè, zak fǎǎ púgè ya sũũd noog dáadè. Mǒag fǎǎ kúudà pésgò la nóosè a yábdàm yúudè. Mǒag fǎǎ deemdá Basgdáadè a yábdàm yúudè. Basg dá ya Mǒǒs tígòng bédde. Dá ya deem dáadè, dá ya yíil daadé.

NEW WORDS

Basagá, -sé	Feast of the Ancestors
tigongó, -dó	holiday, feast
sasá	time, moment
yíilà	sing
yíilè, -à	song

Questions:

- ¿Basg yá Mǒǒs tigong bí?
Ngée, Basg yá Mǒǒs tigongó.
- ¿Ya wákat bug lá Basg tigongó?
Ya sépalòg wákatò.
- ¿Ya kí sǎ m bii ti sása loog bí?
Ngée, ya tónd kí sǎ m bii tí sása looge.
- ¿Basg yá yǎm bàdàm tigong bí?
Ngée, Basg yá tónd bàdàm tigongó.

5. ¿Zak fǎǎ sǔǔd yá noog Basgdáad bí?
Ngée, zak fǎǎ sǔǔd yá noog wúsg Basgdáadè.
6. ¿Mǒag fǎǎ kúudà pésɡ la nóos a yábdàm yíidè bí?
Ngée, Moag fǎǎ kúudà pésɡ la nóos a yábdàm yúudè.
7. ¿Basɡ dá ya Mǒǒs tigong bédde bí?
Ngée, Basɡ dá ya Mǒǒs tídòng bédde.
8. ¿Basɡ dá ya deem dáad né yíid dáad bí?
Ngée, Basɡ dá ya deem dáad né yíil dáadè.

Comprehension Drill 2

Indépendance daad yá tígòng bédde. Haute Volta púgè fǎǎ ya deem, ya sǔǔd noogó. Indépendance tigong yá sépalòg wákatò. Nasaaddam bóondà kúuɡ kàng tí 'Décembre'. Indépendance tigong dáadè, tónd Président wǎ gómdà mé. Ub gómdà dádìoě né Haute Volta nébà fǎǎ. Wagdúg púgè, sǎǎm wàtà wúsgo. Wagdúg ya nóogò dè daadé.

Questions:

1. ¿Indépendance daad yá tígòng bédde bí?
Ngée, Indépendance daad yá tígòng bédde.
2. ¿Haute Volta púgè, ya deem né sǔǔd noog dáad bí?
Ngée, Haute Volta púgè, ya deem, ya sǔǔd noog dáadè.
3. ¿Indépendance tigong yá wákat bugo?
Indépendance tigong yá sépalòg wákatò.
4. ¿Nasaaddam bóondà kúuɡ kàng tí bwě?
Nasaaddam bóondà kúuɡ kàng tí 'Décembre'.
5. ¿Yǎm Président wa gómdà Indépendance tigong dáad bí?
Ngée, tónd Président wa gómdà Indépendance tigong dáadè.
6. ¿Yǎm Président wa gómdà né Haute Volta nébà fǎǎ dádìoě bí?
Ngée, ub gómdà né Haute Volta nébà fǎǎ dádìoě.
7. ¿Sǎǎm wàtà wúsg Wagdúg púgè bí?
Ngée, sǎǎm wàtà wúsg Wagdúg púgè.
8. ¿Wagdúg ya nóogò dè daad bí?
Ngée, Wagdúg ya nóogò wúsg dè daadé.

UNIT 37

Basic Sentences

gádà ¿Ya án n kǒ yām sód tí i gád i vwátuudà ká? ¿Yām ká mí tí móbil ká tǒě n gádè ká la?	-Polísì- park (a car) Who gave you permission to park here? Don't you know that you can't park here?
banga Áyò, mam ká báng yé.	-John- know No, I didn't know.
sǎǎnà, -bà ¿Yām ya sǎǎmb la? Ngée, mam yá sǎǎnà. Maané yǎ né m sùgdì.	-Polísì- stranger You're a stranger, aren't you? -John- Yes, I'm a stranger. Excuse me, please.
plákà, -dàmbá taodé, -yá ¿Yām ká gě plák í taod lá? Áyò, mam ká gě plákà yé.	-Polísì- sign, plate, placard front; before, in front of Didn't you see the sign in front of you? -John- No, I didn't see the sign.
lóogà Dúnda yě lóogà mé. pàsà La i dá lebě m pás béoog yé.	-Polísì- leave, go away; forget, let go Today (I'll) let it go. add But don't do it again tomorrow.

-John-

M púusd yám bádk wúsgo.

Thanks a lot.

USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

¿Ya ándà la yám gūdá?	Who are you waiting for?
¿Ya bwě la yám gūdá?	What are you waiting for?
M gūdá Dáwa Kemtóode.	I am waiting for Mr. Kemtoode.
M gūdá náabà.	I am waiting for the chief.
M gūdá náabà tí b wa.	I am waiting for the chief to come.
M gūdá m zúg maanagdé.	I am waiting to have my hair cut.
Mam vwatúudà ya míugu.	My car is red.
Mam vwatúudà ya kéegà.	My car is green.
Mam vwatúudà ya sáblgà.	My car is black.
Mam vwatúudà ya péelgà.	My car is white.
Mam vwatúudà ya buláà.	My car is blue.
Sǎǎnà ká mí a sód yé.	The stranger has lost his way.
Sǎǎnà dátě n loogá mé.	The stranger is getting ready to leave.
Sǎǎnà gádà vwatúudà sódà séaagě.	The stranger parked his car by the side of the road.
Ub kǒǒ sǎǎnà kǒvokasiǒ.	The stranger got a ticket. They gave the stranger a ticket.

NEW WORDS

gūũ	wait (for/on); guard, protect
naabá, *nanaamsé	chief
míugu, -tú, -dú	red
keegá, -sé	green
sáblgà, -sè	black
peelgá, -sé	white
buláà	blue

37.1A Substitution Drill

¿Yám ká mí tí móbil ká tǒě n gádè ká la?	Don't you know you can't park here?
¿Yám ká mí <u>tí i ká tǒě n gù bǎnkà dóogà púgě la?</u>	Don't you know you can't wait inside the bank?

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě n ku
wóbg la?

Don't you know you can't kill an elephant?

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě n tugǒ
n gě bál tǎǒb la?

Don't you know you can't go see the ball game?

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě n kǎng la?

Don't you know you can't leave?

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě m pék fùt
la?

Don't you know you can't do wash-
ing.

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě n daa ódzavel
la?

Don't you know you can't buy bleach?

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě m piis
díib dòogǎ la?

Don't you know you can't sweep the
dining room?

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě n yǔ m
dáamà la?

Don't you know you can't drink my
beer?

¿Yǎm kà mí tí i ká tǒě n yéel
wótò la?

Don't you know you can't talk
like that?

37.1B Substitution Drill

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i gád i
vwátuudà ká?

Who gave you permission to park
here?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i gǔd
bánkàdóogàpúgě?

Who gave you permission to wait
inside the bank?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i ku
wóbgǎ?

Who gave you permission to kill an
elephant?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i tǔgǒ
n yě báltàobo?

Who gave you permission to go see
the ball game?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i kǎng?

Who gave you permission to leave?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i pék
futù?

Who gave you permission to do
washing?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i dá
ódzavel?

Who gave you permission to buy
bleach?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i piis
díibdòogó?

Who gave you permission to sweep
the dining room?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i yǔ m
dáamǎ?

Who gave you permission to drink
my beer?

¿Ya án n kǒ yǎm sód tí i yéel
wótò?

Who gave you permission to say
that?

37.2A Substitution Drill

Sǎǎnà kěě dǎwà né a kútweefò.

The stranger ran into a man on a bicycle.

Sǎǎnà gádà a vwátuudà sódà séaagě.

The stranger parked his car by the side of the road.

Polísà gádà vwátuudà sódà séaagě.

The policeman parked his car by the side of the road.

Polísà kěě á la kóvokasiõ.

The policeman gave him a traffic ticket.

Polísà gǔdà náabà tí b wa.

The policeman is waiting for the Chief to come.

Págba gǔdà náabà tí b wa.

The women are waiting for the Chief to come.

Págba kà mí sod yé.

The women didn't know the way.

Koambá kà mí sod yé.

The children didn't know the way.

Koambá bóadà káděsambá.

The children are looking for the teacher.

¿Ya ándà m bóad káděsambá?

Who is looking for the teacher?

37.2B Substitution Drill

Silgá nǎǎ n lébà Dákàdě.

The plane will return to Dakar.

Silgá nǎ n yíì Dákàdě n wa.

The plane has just returned from Dakar.

M bá nǎ n yíì Dákàdě n wa.

My father has just returned from Dakar.

M bá nǎ n yíì táõõsgě n wa.

My father has just returned from hunting.

Tónd komdíblì nǎ n yíì táõõsgě n wa.

Our sons have just returned from hunting.

Tónd komdíblì gǔdà tónd daagě.

Our sons are waiting for us at the market.

Tónd pagbá gǔdà tónd daagě.

Our wives are waiting for us at the market.

Tónd pagbá kěõ kóambà sod tí b kég butíkě.

Our wives gave the children permission to go to the store.

Tónd badámà kěõ kóambà sod tí b kég butíkě.

Our parents gave the children permission to go to the store.

¿Ya ándà n kěõ kóambà sod tí b kég butíkě?

Who was it that gave the children permission to go to the store?

Comprehension Drill 1

Haute Volta tadá tígòng béddà yóobè: Kíbsà, Nowélè, Noodlokdè, Pákà, Indépendance la Basgá. Kíbs ya tígòng bédd wúsgo. Ya Mòos Kíbsà; ya Kíditiaḍàm Kíbsà; ya Móems mè Kíbsà. Ya néb fǎǎ Kíbs daadè kángà. Dáadè kángà, néd fǎǎ kúda pèsgò wala nóagà. Mòos kúda píis ub yáabdàm yúudè. Móems kúda píis Nábiiga Íbdahim yúudè.

NEW WORDS

Nowélè	Christmas
Noodlokdè	Ramadan
Pákà	Easter
kíditiaḍ, -dambá	a Christian
Módè, *Móemsè	A Muslim
wala	or
Íbdahim	Abraham

Questions:

- ¿Haute Volta tadá tígòng bédd wána?
Haute Volta tadá tígòng bédd yóobé.
- ¿Tigong búg né búgò?
Kíbsà, Nowélè, Noodlokdè, Pákà, Indépendance, la Basgá.
- ¿Kíbs ya tígòng bédd bí?
Ngée, a yá tígòng bédd wúsgo.
- ¿Kíbs ya néb fǎǎ tigong bí?
Ngée, Kíbs ya néb fǎǎ tigongó.
- ¿Dáadè kángà, néd fǎǎ kúda pèsgò wala nóag bí?
Ngée, Kíbs ya néb fǎǎ tigongo.
- ¿Mòos kúda píis ub yáabdàm yúud bí?
Ngée, Mòos kúda píis ub yáabdàm yúudè.
- ¿La Móems mè kúda píis Nábiiga Íbdahim yúud bí?
Ngée, Móems mè kúda píis Nábiiga Íbdahim yúudè.

Comprehension Drill 2

Nóodlokd ya Móems tigongó. Móemsà lóetà ub nóod kluug á yembde. Ya Nóodlokd daad la b dita. Dế daade, Móemsà kéndà púusg míisdè. Nóodlokd daade, ub ká túmd Haute Volta ye. Dế daade Móems tǒě n dii me la b yǔũ kóom. Nóodlokdè wala tigong á tǎǎba fǎǎ ya deem daade. Wagdúg pùgè néb fǎǎ deemdá mé.

NEW WORDS

lóe	(to) fast
míisdè, -sì	mosque
púusgo	prayer

Questions:

1. ¿Nóodlokd ya bwě?
Nóodlokd ya Móems tigongó.
2. ¿Móemsà lóetà ub nóod kluug á yembde?
Ngée, ub lóetà ub nóod kluug á yembde.
3. ¿Ya Nóodloka daad la b dit bí?
Ngée, ya Nóodlokd daad la b dita.
4. ¿Dế daade, Móems à kéndà puusg bí?
Ngée, dế daade, ub kéndà púusgò.
5. ¿Nóodlokd daade, néb tumda Haute Voltaě?
Áyò, Nóodlokd daade, néb ká túmd Haute Voltaě yé.
6. ¿Nóodlokd daade, Móems tǒě n dii mé la b yǔũ kóom?
Ngée, Nóodlokd daade, ub tǒě n dii la b yǔũ kóom.
7. ¿Nóodlokd wala tigong á tǎǎba daad fǎǎ ya deem bí?
Ngée, néb deemda Nóodlokdè wala tigong a tǎǎba daad fǎǎ.
8. ¿Wagdúgpugè, néb fǎǎ deemdá mé bí?
Ngée, Wagdúg pugè, néb fǎǎ deemda mé.

Comprehension Drill 3

Pák né nowélè ya Kídistiǎdàm tígòngo. Haute Voltaè, tónd kà túmd Pák daad yé. Pák ya tónd súú^ud noog dáadè. Ya Násaddàm tigongó, ya Mó^oos mè tigongó. Kídistiǎdàm kéndà égliisè n tugõ m puusd Wénàm. Ub sǎ yíi églisè, ub fǎǎ kuisa b yíidè. Néd fǎǎ deemdá mé, néd fǎǎ ditá mé.

Questions:

1. ¿Pák né Nowélè ya Kídistiǎdàm tígòng bí?
Ngée, Pák né Nowélè ya Kídistiǎdàm tígòngó.
2. ¿Yǎm tumda Haute Voltaè Pak daad bí?
Áyò, tónd kà túmd Haute Voltaè Pák daad yé.
3. ¿Pák ya yǎm súú^ud noog dáad bí?
Ngée, Pák ya tónd súú^ud noog dáadè.
4. ¿Ya Násaddàm né Mó^oos tígòng dáad bí?
Ngée, ya Násaddàm mé Mó^oos tígòng dáadè.
5. ¿Kídistiǎdàm kéndà égliisè n tugõ m puusd Wénàm?
Ngée, ub kéndà égliisè n tugõ m puusd Wénàm.
6. ¿Ub sǎ yíi égliisè, ub fǎǎ kuisa b yíidè bí?
Ngée, ub sǎ yíi égliisè, ub fǎǎ kuisa b yíidè.
7. ¿Ya déem la díib dáad bí?
Ngée, ya déem la díib dáade.

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

INTRODUCTION TO CYCLE THREE

UNITS 38 - 48

Supplementary Comprehension with Expansion of Vocabulary and Conversation.

Cycle 3 is a supplement to Cycles 1 and 2. It consists of eleven units designed for listening and conversation practice. Therefore, they have not been restricted as to structure. No particular grammatical point is treated in any unit, and all structures may occur. The units of Cycle 3 are not controlled for vocabulary and grammar. They are, however, graded.

The earlier units are less complex than the later units in content and style. All of the units are composed of a series of very short narratives. In the earlier units, each narrative is a complete story; in the later units, each short narrative is a chapter in a unit-long story. Therefore, each of the complete-story narratives is immediately followed by questions, but the questions appear at the end of the entire unit where all the narratives are related. Since some of the narratives may seem to be less complex than they, in fact, are, suggested grammatical review accompanies them. Since some other units contain special expressions, they are accompanied by translations. The translation of course, is never word for word. It is only a tool toward expanding the student's use of Moré expressions. All of the narratives introduce new vocabulary as well as new uses of old vocabulary.

UNIT 38

SHORT DESCRIPTIONS OF OUAGADOUGOU

38.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

dootá - houses	náasè - four
butík - store	gúbgà - surround
sóyà - streets	béadà - big (pl.)

Grammar Review

/bée/ and /ya/	- 20.1 -F
space relationships	- 15C, 22.3A-C
/sě/	- 6C, 21.2A-C
plural formations	- 33.1A-B, 36.A

Exercises

1. The student retells the story in Moré in his own words.
2. The student describes a market with which he is familiar, using only the words and structures covered to date.

The Central Market

Wágdùg daagà bée Wágdùg teng súkà. Yá daag sě ya bédd bílfù. A bée komédsà doot súkà. Butík dam mé bée a góab nè a dítg fàã. Sóyà ya náasè gúbgò. Ub yá sóy déadà.

Questions

1. ¿Wágdùg daagá bée yàe?
2. ¿Yá daag sě yá bédd bí?
3. ¿A bée komédsà doot súk bí?
4. ¿Butík dam bée la a góab nè a dítg fà bí?
5. ¿Sóyà ya náasè gúbgò bí?
6. ¿Ya sóy bead bí?

Answers

- Wágdùg daagá bée Wágdùg teng súkà.
 Ngée, yá daag sě yá bédd bílfù.
 Ngée, a bée komédsà doot súkà.
 Ngée, butík dam bée la a góab nè a dítg fàã.
 Ngée, sóyà ya náasè gúbgò.
 Ngée, ya sóy beadà.

38.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

Polísà dá maangd sódà. - The policeman was directing traffic.

Grammar Review

past tense marker, /dá/ - 25.1A-C
 space relationships, /zúgú/ - 15C, 22.3A-C
 noun inflection - 18.1A-D

Exercises

1. The student retells the story in his own words.
2. The student describes a street he knows using only the structures and vocabulary covered in this course so far.

Market Street on a Work Day

A Tembíl dá bée Wágdùg sódà zúgè, la néb dà kà bée sódà zúg wúsg yè. Néb plig bala dagè lógdà sódà zúgè. Polísà yí mè n dá bée sódà zúgè. Polísà dá maangda sódà. Nébà dá kèengdà daagè.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿A Tembíl dá bée Wágdùg sódà zúgè bí?	Ngée, a dá bée Wágdùg sódà zúgè.
2. ¿Néb dá bée sódà zúgè wúsg bí?	Áyò, néb dà kà bée sódà zúgè wúsg yè.
3. ¿Néb pligà dá lógdà zúgè bí?	Ngée, néb pligà dá lógdà zúgè.
4. ¿Polísà yí mè n dá bée sódà zúgè bí?	Ngée, polísà yí mè a dá bée sódà zúgè.
5. ¿Polísà dá maangda sódà bí?	Ngée, a dá maangda sódà.
6. ¿Nébà dá kèengdà daagè bí?	Ngée, ub dá kèengdà daagè.

38.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

déndà - his, hers
 páalgà - new

Grammar Review

- the past tense marker /dá/ - 23.2A-D
 the demonstrative - 13F

Exercises

1. Retell the story.
2. Discuss bicycles with the structure and vocabulary you know. If you try to use unfamiliar items, the lesson will lose its value. You will be making unavoidable mistakes and you will not have a thorough mastery of the past material.

In Ouagadougou Practically Everybody has a Bicycle

Dáwà Sékù tádà kút wéefò. Dáwà Sékù zóa wa mé tada kút wéefò. A Kúlg mē dá tada kút wéefò. La a Kúlg koosá a kút wéefà. A Kúlg zoa wá mé koosá a dëndà. A Kúlg zoa wá kút wéef dá kà páalg yè.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Dáwà Sékù tádà kút wéef bí?	Ngée, a tádà kút wéefò.
2. ¿Dáwà Sékù zóa wá mé tada kút wéef bí?	Ngée, a zóa wá tada kút wéefò.
3. ¿Dáwà Kúlg mē dá tada kút wéef bí?	Ngée, Dáwà Kúlg mē dá tada kút wéefò.
4. ¿Dáwà Kúlg koosá a kút wéefà bí?	Ngée, a kóosà a kút wéefà.
5. ¿Dáwà Kúlg zóa wá mé koosá dënd bí?	Ngée, a zóa wá mé koosá a dëndà.
6. ¿A kút wéefà dá ya páalg bí?	Áyò, a dá kà páalg yè.

38.4 Comprehension Drill 4

Vocabulary

toy tóy	- varieties
búdù	- kind, species
taalá	- bring, take
maangá	- fix, repair

Grammar Review

the conditional clause with /sǎ/	- 22.1A-C
the relative clause with /sé/	- 21.2A-C
the connective /tí/	- 20.4A-B, 37.1A-B
verb + verb constructions	- 20.3A-C, 34.2A-C, 37.2A-B

Exercises

1. Retell the story.
2. Describe the kinds of cars we have here. Remember that you are putting the Moré you know to practice. That is the purpose of the exercise.

The Kinds of Cars

Wágoòg pùgè, id táda vwatúud damb sé ya tóy-tòy wúsgò. Id táda Peugeot dambá; id táda Citroën dambá; la bam fáǎ ya Fidás vwatúud damb búdu. I vwatúud sǎ sǎám sòdè, i tǒè n taalá a la mé n kéeng ti ub tǔgè n máang a Hérǎ, wala Drágasè, wala a Tóliè zǐngè. Bám fáǎ yá doot sé maang vwatúud damb Wágoòg pùgè.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Tónd tada vwatúud damb Wágoòg pùgè bí? 2. ¿Tónd tada bwé vwatúud dambá? 3. ¿Bám fáǎ ya Fidás vwatúud damb búdu bí? 4. ¿La tónd vwatúud sǎ sǎám sòdè, tónd kéengda né a yáe, tí ub tǔgè n máangè? 5. ¿Bám fáǎ yá doot sé maang vwatúud damb bí?	Ngée, yám tada vwatúud damb tóy tòy wúsgò Wágoòg pùgè. Yám tada Peugeot la Citroën dambá. Ngée, bam fáǎ ya Fidás vwatúud damb búdu. Yám vwatúud sǎ sǎám sòdè, yám kéengda né a Hérǎ, wala Drágasè, wala Tóliè zǐngè. Ngée, bam fáǎ yá doot sé maang vwatúud damb Wágoòg pùgè.

38.5 Comprehension Drill 5

Vocabulary

poí	- divide
poí suká	- and a half
yíkà	- get up
baodá	- look for

wĩntòog - sùkà	- noon
vóosà	- rest, repose
sígdà	- descend, quit

Grammar Review

present tense	- 17.2A-C
conditional clause with /sǎ/	- 22.1A-C
verb chains	- 34.2A-C, 37.2A-B

Exercises

1. Retell the story in your own good Moré.
2. Describe the beginning of the work day here. You need not be truthful, just accurate.

Early to Work

Tónd tengě, tumd sǐngdà yíbeoog wákata yópòe wala wákata yópòe la pói suká. Dáwà Kúk sǎ yí, yíbeoog pǐndà. Dáwà Kúk baoda díib bílf n díi, la a lóog tumdě. Dáwà Kúk sǎ tugó tumě n táa wĩntòog suká. A sígdà mé n wáa yíidě n wáa díi, la vóos bílf yaasá.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Tónd tengě, tumd sǐngdà wakat bug yíbeoogò?	Yǎm tengě, tumd sǐngdà wákata yópòe wala yópòe la pói suká.
2. ¿Dáwà Kúk sǎ yík yíbeoog pǐndà, a máandà bwě?	A sǎ yík yíbeoog pǐndà, a báodà díib bílf n díi, la a lóog tumdě.
3. ¿Dáwà Kúk tumda mé n táa wakat bugó?	Dáwà Kúk tumda mé n táa wĩntòog suká.
4. ¿A sígdà mé n wáa a yíidě bí?	Ngée, a sígdà mé n wáa a yíidě.
5. ¿A sígdà mé n wáa díi la a vóos bí?	Ngée, a sígdà mé n wáa díi la a vóosè.

38.6 Comprehension Drill 6

Vocabulary

néb sǎǎ nébà	- some people
gǒǎngà	- here and there, in a circle
weoogó	- the bush, forest

sóòsà, sóòsda	- talk privately
mésè	- (French) mass

Grammar Review

present tense	- 17.2A-C
auxiliary verb /nǎǎ/	- 27.2A-D, 27.3A-C, 27.4A-D, 27.5A

Exercises

1. The student retells the story, not word for word, but simply stating the major events of the story.
2. Short narrative: Sunday in my home town. This narrative should be only as interesting as it can be within the limits of the vocabulary and structure of the lessons to date.

'Sunday' in Ouagadougou

Dúndà ya zimás yíbeoogò. Wágdùg pùgè túmd ká bée yé. Néb sè túmd ub nasád-damb túmà, ká túmd dúndà yé. Néb sǎǎ néb kéengdà mésè. Sǎǎ néb kéengdà gǎǎgà wala weoogè nǎǎ n tugò n tǎǎmsè. Néb sǎǎ néb mè kéengdà weooghè nǎǎ n tugò n sóòsè.

Questions

1. ¿Dúndà ya bwé daadé?
2. ¿Wágdùg pùgè túmd bée mé bí?
3. ¿Nébs sè túmd ub né nasád damba túmdà dúndà bí?
4. ¿Nébs sǎǎ néb kéengdà més bí?
5. ¿Nébs sǎǎ néb kéengdà gǎǎg bí?
6. ¿Nébs sǎǎ néb kéengdà weoogè nǎǎ n tugò n tǎǎms bí?
7. ¿Nébs sǎǎ néb mè kéengdà weooghè nǎǎ n tugò n sóòs bí?

Answers

- Dúndà ya zimásè.
- Áyò, Wágdùg pùgè túmd ká bée yé.
- Áyò, nébs sè túmd ub né nasád damba ká túmd dúndà yé.
- Ngée, nébs sǎǎ néb kéengdà mésè.
- Ngée, nébs sǎǎ néb kéengdà gǎǎgà.
- Ngée, nébs sǎǎ néb kéengdà weoogè nǎǎ n tugò n tǎǎmsè.
- Ngée, nébs sǎǎ néb mè kéengdà weooghè nǎǎ n tugò n sóòsè.

38.7 Comprehension Drill 7

Vocabulary

faa	- approval, encouragement
fassá	- beautify

yěngà	- according to
páalgà	- new
nǎndà	- do with ease, have just
páalg nǎndà	- brand new

Grammar Review

the relative connective /sě/	- 21.2A-C
the verbs /bée/ and /ya/	- 21.1A-F
verb + verb constructions	- /míi/: 24A, 32.2B, 26.1A-D /dátě/: 20.3A-C /tugǒ/: 34.2A-C

Exercises

1. Retell the story.
2. Discuss an attractive building in this area. Remember: accuracy is more important than interesting information.

A New Church

Doota fáasě n bée Wágdùgǎ. Doog-nǐng, sě ya néedè, Dáwà Sékù yěngà, ya mǒg-pédà dóog sě bée Dápoyà. Yá doog bílfù, la a yá doog néed wusgo. Dáwà Sékù né a zóa Tembíl mǐi n dátě n kéengě n tugǒ n gésa á la mé. Yá doog páalg nǎndà.

QuestionsAnswers

1. ¿Doota fáasě n bée Wágdùg bí?	Ngée, doota fáasě n bée Wágdùgǎ.
2. ¿Mǒg-pédà dóog ya néed bí?	Ngée, mǒg-pédà dóog ya néed wusgo.
3. ¿A yá doog bédd bí?	Áyò, a ká bédd yě, a ya bílfù.
4. ¿Yá doog páalg bí?	Ngée, yá doog páalg nǎndà.

38.8 Comprehension Drill 8

Vocabulary

wala - or

Grammar Review

emphatic word order	- 19.3A-F
space relationships	- 22.3A-C

verbs whose imperfective forms show /-t-/ - 19.2A-D

Exercises

1. Retell the story in good Moré but do not feel obliged to repeat it word for word.
2. Describe the nearest station in this area. The purpose of this exercise is the practical use of Moré. Consequently accuracy in using previously mastered material matters more than information about stations.

The Railroad Station

Wágdùg tidě-gàd bée Buffét Ótelà pódè. Yám sá yíi daagě n dík Buffét Ótelà sódè, i tátà bée. Ya gád sě ya bílf balá. Tidě damb wata dád fǎǎ. Ub yítà Bóbò né Ábidgeǎ n wátè. Yám sá kéeng gádà púgě yíbèogò fǎǎ, i gětà néb sě kéngd Bóbò wala Ábidgeǎ.

Questions

1. ¿Wágdùg tidě-gàd bée yàe?
2. ¿Yám sá yíi daagě wǎ, i díkdà yae n táa bée?
3. ¿Gádà ya bédd bí, bí bílfù?
4. ¿Tidě damb wátà dád fǎǎ bí?
5. ¿Ub yítà Bóbò né Ábidgeǎ n wátè bí?
6. ¿I sǎ kéeng gádà púgě yíbèogò, i gětà néb bí?
7. ¿Nébà kéengdà yàe?

Answers

- Wágdùg tidě-gàd bée Buffét Ótelà pódè.
Yám sá yíi daagě n dík Buffét Ótelà sódè, i tátà bée.
Ya gád sě ya bílf balá.
Ngée, tidě damb wátà dád fǎǎ.
Ngée, ub yítà Bóbò né Ábidgeǎ n wátè.
Ngée, id sǎ kéeng gádà púgě yíbèogò, id gětà nébà.
Ub kéengdà Bóbò wala Ábidgeǎ.

UNIT 39

HOUSES

39.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

yíidì, yíiyà	- compound
zákà, zágse	- apartment
doogó, dootó	- room
sóab ti yíidà	- a property
víi	- (French) live
págà, págbà	- wife, woman wives, women
búudù	- family, race

Note: /né a.../ /lá a.../

Since /a/ can be translated as the English 'his' or 'her', the specific possessor in a given phrase is indicated by other means. In the selection below, /né a.../ refers to the first noun, i.e. /sóabà/ and /lá a.../ refers to the second noun, i.e. /págba/. Thus the last sentence of the following comprehension drill might be translated into English as: 'The proprietor, with his wives and their children and also with his entire family, lives there'.

Exercises

1. Discussion of story.
2. Student commentary on who lives in his house. A review of Unit Thirty is recommended to facilitate the preparation of accurate commentaries and to avoid less organized investigation of vocabulary.

How Big is a House?

Ub sě boonda sóab tí yíidà, ya zák bèddè, tí doot wúsgò bée a pùgè. Zák kàng pùgè, néb wusgo víi bée. Zák sóabà né a págbà la a kóambà, né a búud fàà víi bée.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Ub sě boonda sóab tí yíidà ya bwě?

Ub sě boonda sóab tí yíidà ya zák bèede.

Questions

Answers

2. ¿Doot wúsgò bée la a pùgè bí?	Ngée, doot wúsgò bée la a pùgè.
3. ¿Zák kàng pùgè, néb wusgo víi bí?	Ngée, zák kàng pùgè néb wusgo víi bée.
4. ¿Néb wǎnà n víi a pùgè?	Ya zák sòabà né a págbà la a kóambà, né a búud fáǎ.

39.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

búlgà	- a well
bookó	- a hole
tuká	- dig, dug
wókò	- long, deep, tall
yũúdà	- drink (verb)
sóab tí búlgà	- a well site

A Well

Ub sé bǒǒnda sóab tí búlgà, yá book bílf balá, ub sé tuki tí a kǒǒnt kóom. Néb sǎǎ néb tũkdà búlg wókò, sǎǎ néb tũkdà búlg bílf bala, la a kǒǒntà kǒǒm tí zák damb páamè n yũúdà, la ub táda túumd ub túmà, la ub máand ub díibò.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Ub bǒǒnda bwé tí búlgà?	Búlg yá book bílf bala, ub tí túkà, tí a kǒǒnt kóom.
2. ¿Néb sǎǎ néb tũkdà búlg wǎnà?	Néb sǎǎ néb tũkdà búlg wookó.
3. ¿Néb sǎǎ néb mè tũkdà búlg wǎnà?	Néb sǎǎ néb mè tũkdà búlg bílf balá.
4. ¿La a kǒǒntà kóom bí?	Ngée, a kǒǒntà kóom.
5. ¿Tí zák damb páamè n yũúd la ub túmd ub túm bí?	Ngée, tí zák damb páamè n yũúd la ub túmd ub túma.
6. ¿Ub táda kóomà n máǎand ub díib mè bí?	Ngée, ub táda kóomà n máǎand ub díib mè.

39.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

makdá	- is trying to

gílgù	- round
tǎǎbó	- together, in a group with others
tǎǎndà	- almost
sáyà	- finished, ended
taabá	- another
truéllè	- (French) trowel

Building a House

A Kúlg makda dóog pàalgà nǎǎ n mǎǎ. Yá doog gílgù la a dátè n mǎǎ, wala a táabà. Ad tǎǎnd sáy mè. A sǎ makǎ n sáy, a nǎǎ n mǎǎ mè. A dátè n mǎǎ nè a nùgù. Né nùg kèengdà táo táo mè. A míi woto. A mǎǎntà dóogà yé dǎsmà a tǎǎbò.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿A Kúlg makda dóog pàalgà nǎǎ n mǎǎ bí?	Ngée, a Kúlg makda dóog pàalgà nǎǎ n mǎǎ.
2. ¿Yá doog gílgù la a dátè n nǎǎ n mǎǎ bí?	Ngée, yá doog gílgù la a dátè n nǎǎ n mǎǎ.
3. ¿Wala a táabà bí?	Ngée, walá a taabá.
4. ¿Tǎǎnd sáy mè bí?	Ngée, táand sáy mè.
5. ¿A Kúlg sǎ makǎ n sáy a nǎǎ n mǎǎ mè bí?	Ngée, a Kúlg sǎ makǎ n sáy a nǎǎ n mǎǎ mè.
6. ¿A Kúlg mǎǎntà né bwé?	A mǎǎntà né a nùgù.
7. ¿A Kúlg tada truéllè bí?	Áyò, a ká tad truéllè yè.
8. ¿La a mǎǎntà né a nùg bí?	Ngée, a mǎǎntà né a nùgù.
9. ¿Né nùg kèengdà táo táo bí?	Ngée, a kèengdà táo táo.
10. ¿A míi woto bí?	Ngée, a míi woto.
11. ¿A mǎǎntà doogà yé dǎsmà wǎnà?	A mǎǎntà doogà yé dǎsmà tǎǎbò.

39.4 Comprehension Drill 4

Vocabulary

mǎǎdè	- mature, full grown
mǎǎgà, mǎǎsì } nǎǎgà, nǎǎsì }	- sour or bitter plants

Note: /sě...wǎ/ and /pa...ye/

Both /sě...wǎ/ and /pa...ye/ are markers which surround the sentence. Both expressions can occur at once, i.e. a negative subordinate clause. In such a case the relative connector, /sě/ precedes the negative marker /pá/ or /ká/. Only one of the usual final particles occurs, however. /wǎ/ only marks the end of the clause.

Taking Care of the Garden

Samdí dád fǎǎ, Dáwà Sékù mǐí n maanga a zěěndò. Dáwà Sékù mǐí n yánkà móod nǐís ub sé pà sumá wǎ. De pòodè, Dáwà Sékù butà tómatò la kípàdè. Dáwà Sékù tada kumbà mé a zěěndè wǎ. Dáwà Sékù mǐí n yánkà ub lá me.

Questions

1. ¿Dáwà Sékù mǐí n maanda bwě, samdí dád fǎǎ?
2. ¿Dáwà Sékù mǐí n maanga bwě a zěěndè wǎ?
3. ¿La dé pòodè, Dáwà Sékù maanda bwě yaasá?
4. ¿Dáwà Sékù tada kumbà a zěěndè wǎ bí?
5. ¿Dáwà Sékù mǐí n yánkà a kumbà bí?

Answers

- Samdí dád fǎǎ Dáwà Sékù mǐí n maanga a zěěndà.
- Dáwà Sékù mǐí n yánkà móod nǐís ub sé pà sumá wǎ.
- Dé pòodè, Dáwà Sékù buta tómatò la kípàdè.
- Ngée, Dáwà Sékù tada kumbà a zěěndè wǎ.
- Ngée, Dáwà Sékù mǐí n yánkà ub lá me.

UNIT 40

FOOD

40.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

sagbó	- native staple food
muěmbó	- mixing, preparing
díglìga	- earthen house
gǎǎngà	- colorful cloth
wuká	- gathered up
téedò	- belongings, things
súubù	- collecting

Note: /sé...wǎ/ and /ká...yé/

When both /sé...wǎ/ and /ka...ye/ occur in one clause, either /sé pá...wǎ/ expresses both ideas or /sé ká...yé/. In Unit 39, drill 4, we saw /sé pa...wǎ/. In this selection, we have /sé ká...yé/.

The Inside of the House

Yá doog néedè, la a yá bílfù. Sagb múemb zǐing bée mé. Kóom sùub zǐing m' bée mé. Mam díkà m gǎǎngà n waa díglìg a pùgè. M wukà m téed m' n waa díglìg bée. Yá doog sé ká béd d yè, la a yá néed wusgó. Mam nongá á la mé.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Yá doog néed bí?	Ngée, yá doog néedè.
2. ¿A yá bílf bí, bí béd dè?	A yá bílfù.
3. ¿Sagb múemb zǐing bée mé bí?	Ngée, sagb múemb zǐing bée mé.
4. ¿Kóom sùub zǐing m' bée mé bí?	Ngée, kóom sùub zǐing m' bée mé.
5. ¿Yám díkà i gǎǎngà waa díglìg á pùgè bí?	Ngée, m díkà m gǎǎngà waa díglìg á pùgè.
6. ¿Yám díkà i téed m' waa díglìg bée bí?	Ngée, m díkà m téed m' waa díglìg bée.
7. ¿La a yá doog sé ya béd d bí?	Áyò, a ká béd d yè.
8. ¿La á ya néed bí?	Ngée, a ya néed wusgó.
9. ¿Yám nongá á la me bí?	Ngée, mam nongá á la mé.

40.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

kí	- millet
zòòm	- flour
zeendó	- sauce
tíis vándò	- leaves from trees
tóodè	- stuck together, sticky

Sagbo, the Traditional Dish

Pàgà Élizabèth mǎǎnda ságbo. Sagb yá díibò. Ub mǎǎnda sagb né kí sóòm. Dàwà Sékù tengé ub mǎǎnda ságbo. Ub díita Sagb né zǎǎndó. Ságb zend yá tóodè. Ub mǎǎnda ságb zeend né tíis vándò. Sagb yá Dàwà Sékù tengé díibò.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Pàgà Élizabèth mǎǎnda bwé?	Pàgà Élizabèth mǎǎnda ságbo.
2. ¿Ságb yá bwé?	Ságb yá díibò.
3. ¿Ub mǎǎnda ságb né bwé?	Ub mǎǎnda ságb né kí zòòm.
4. ¿Ub mǎǎnda ságb Dàwà Sékù tengé bí?	Ngée, ub mǎǎnda ságb Dàwà Sékù tengé.
5. ¿Ub díita ságb né zǎǎnd bí?	Ngée, ub díita ságb né zǎǎndò.
6. ¿Ságb zǎǎnd yá tóod bí?	Ngée, Ságb zǎǎnd yá tóodè.
7. ¿Ub mǎǎnda ságb zeend né bwé?	Ub mǎǎnda ságb zeend né tíis vándò.
8. ¿Ságb yá Dàwà Sékù tengé díib bí?	Ngée, ságb yá Dàwà Sékù tengé díibò.

40.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

némdo	- meat
dúngà, dúmsì	- animal, mammal
náafò, níisì	- cow, cows
nóagà, nóosè	- chicken
kúundà	- kill

The Variety of Meat

Haute Volta tónd tada néemd búud tòy-tòy wusgó. Id tádà dúmsì; id tádà níisì; id tádà nóos mè. Bam fáǎ tónd díita ub lá me. Tónd kúundà ub lá me díitè. Yám sǎ kèengà Silmiisà yíidì, a gǎtá níis wusgo bée.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Haute Volta ub táda néemd buud tòy-tòy bí?	Ngée, ub táda néemd buud tòy-tòy wusgo.
2. ¿Ub táda dúms la níis bí?	Ngée, ub táda dúms la níisì.
3. ¿Ub táda nóos mè bí?	Ngée, ub táda nóos mè.
4. ¿Bám fãã ub díità ub lá me bí?	Ngée, sám fãã ub díità ub lá me.
5. ¿Ub kúudà ub lá me díitè bí?	Ngée, ub kúudà ub lá me díitè.
6. ¿Sílmíisà yíidì níis wusgo bée mè bí?	Ngée, Sílmíis yíidì níis wusgo bée mè.

UNIT 41

THE WEATHER

41.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

túulgò	-	warmth, warm season
wákatò	-	time, season
wógdò	-	cold
sépalgò	-	rainy season
sáagà, sáasè	-	sky, rain
sóbdè	-	shade, night

The Seasons in Upper Volta

¿Yám dátè n bángà Haute Vólta id sè tada wákat sèem waè? Id táda sépalgò, dé ya sáas wákatò. Id táda túulgò, dé ya túulg wákatò. Túulgò wúsgò mèngà! Id lébè n tada wógd wákatò, dé wákatò wógd bée wúsgò. Id táda sóbd mè.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Yám dátè n bángà ub sè táda wákat sèem Haute Vólta bí?	Ngée, tónd dátè n bángà ub sè tada wákat sèem Haute Vólta.
2. ¿Yám tada sépalg bí?	Ngée, tónd tada sépalgò.
3. ¿Dé ya wákat búgò?	Ré ya sáas wákatò.
4. ¿Yám tada túulg bí?	Ngée, tónd tada túulgò.
5. ¿Ré ya wákat búgò?	Ré ya túulg wákatò.
6. ¿Ya túulg wusg méng bí?	Ngée, ya túulg wusgo méngà.
7. ¿Yám tada wógd wákat bí?	Ngée, id lébè n tada wógd wákatò.
8. ¿Dé wákatò wógd bée wusgo bí?	Ngée, dé wákatò wógd bée wúsgò.
9. ¿Yám tada sóbd mè bí?	Ngée, tónd tada sóbd mè.

41.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

baatá	-	hole for catching rain water
pídà	-	fill up
kóobà	-	fields

datè n sããama bílfù	- almost ruined
niná	- some one, something
nin dádè	- some day
nin dádè wala kái	- sooner or later
yíngà	- because of
bílfù sáagà yíngà	- because of the low rain fall

Rain

Wágdòogo yíbèogè sáagà níi mè. A pá mí wusg ye. Baatã pá píd koom ye. Kóobà mé datè n sããama bílfù sáagà yíngà. La id tẽ̀ndà mé ti nin dádè wala kái la dá sumá á ye, id twé paama kóom sè yíid woto.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Sáagà níi Wágdòogè yíbèogè bí?	Ngée, a níi mè.
2. ¿A níi wusg bí?	Áyò, a pá níi wusg ye.
3. ¿Baatã pídà kóom bí?	Áyò, ub pá píd koom ye.
4. ¿Kóobà datè n sããama mé bí?	Ngée, kóobà mé datè n sããama mé sáagà yíngà.
5. ¿La yám tẽ̀nda mé tí i twé paama kóom bí?	Ngée, id tẽ̀ndà mé ti nin dádè, wala kái la dá sumá ye, id twé paama kóom sè yíid woto.

41.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

néige - (French) snow

A European Winter

Dúndà yógd bée mé, la ká wusg ye. Dábítè néige lúi mè. Wógd yíi wusgo téngà púgè. Záamè yíi tũulg bílfù; wíntòog yíi mè.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Dúndà yógd bée wús bí?	Ngée, la a ká wusg ye.
2. ¿Dábítè néige lui mé bí?	Ngée, dábítè néige lui mé.
3. ¿Wógd yíi wusgo téngà púgè bí?	Ngée, wógd yíi wusgo téngà púgè.
4. ¿Záamè yíi tũulg bílfù bí?	Ngée, záamè yíi tũulg bílfù.
5. ¿Wíntòogo yíi mè bí?	Ngée, wíntòogo yíi mè.

UNIT 42

SCHOOLS

Vocabulary

kásangà, kasámsè	- large, great
sáyà	- finished, end

We Want to Build Schools

Id dátè n mée kádn doot wúsgò kái la yúmà nú. Id dátè n paama kádn bíis wusgo mé. Yá tum kásang wusgo. A ká twé sáy yúmà yé yé. A yá tum tooog mé, la tónd náã n tuma á la mé yúmà nú.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Yám twé n mée kádn doot wusgo kái la yúmà nú?	Ngée, id dátè n mée kádn doot wúsgò kái la yúmà nú.
2. ¿Yám dátè n paama kádn bíis wusgo mé bí?	Ngée, id dátè n paama kádn bíis wusgo mé.
3. ¿La a yá tum kásang bí?	Ngée, a yá tum kásang wusgo.
4. ¿Yám tuma twé n sáy yúmà yé bí?	Áyò, a ká twé n sáy yúmà yé yé.
5. ¿A yá tum tooog bí?	Ngée, a yá tuma tooogò.
6. ¿Yám náã n tuma á la mé yúmà wánà?	Tónd náã n tuma á la mé yúmà nú.

42.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

séekdà, séekà	- suffice, be enough
zífimsì	- seats
méembò	- act of building

How Many Do We Need?

Záamè a Kúlg nè kádn saam páalgà gómà kádn doot méemb goam Wágdoogè. Ub dátè n mée kádn doot wúsgò Wágdoog púgè. Kádn doot pístà ká twé sèek yé. Kádn doot pís-nù twé sèekà mé, la ká né zífims taab yé.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Záamè, a Kúlg mããna bwě nè kádn saam páalgà?	Záamè ub gómà kádn doot méemb g'òam Wágdoogě.
2. ¿Ub dátè n mée kádn doot bí?	Ngée, ub dátè n mée kádn doot wúsgò Wágdoogě.
3. ¿Kádn doot pístà tǒě s'èekà mé bí?	Áyò, kádn doot pístà ká tǒě s'èek yè.
4. ¿Kádn doot wǎnà tǒě s'èekè?	Kádn doot pís-nù tǒě s'èekà mé.
5. ¿Né zĩĩnsà táabà bí?	Áyò, ká né zĩĩns táab yè.

42.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

- dúnì, dúnyà - earth, world
a dá nǎã n - he would...

Isaac Has Dreams

A Isák sǎ dà ya kádn saambá, a nǎã n mée kádn doot wúsgò. A nǎã n kadma kádn blis wusg mé. A Isák dátà mé tí a kádn blisà bángà búmbù. A dátà mé tí koamba bángà búm nǐng sě bée dúnì pùgě fǎã.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿A Isák sǎ dà ya kádn saambá, a nǎã n mããna bwě?	A Isák sǎ dà ya kádn saambá, a nǎã n mée kádn doot wúsgò.
2. ¿A dá nǎã n kadma kádn blis wusgo mé bí?	Ngée, a dá nǎã n kadma kádn blis wusgo mé.
3. ¿A Isák dátà mé tí a kádn blisà bángà búm bí?	Ngée, a dátà mé tí ub bángà búmbù.
4. ¿A Isák dátè n zámsà koamba tí ub bángà búm nǐng sě bée dúnì pùgě fǎã bí?	Ngée, a dátè n zámsà ub lá me tí ub bángà búm nǐng sě bée dúnì pùgě fǎã.

42.4 Comprehension Drill 4

The Home Town French Class

Pàgà a Pók zámsà fídās teng bílf pùgě. Ub bóondà téngà ti Kómbisdì. A Pók dooga Kómbisdì. Kómbisdì tada kádn doot a níigi, né kadn sáam damba níigi.

Kádn blis yà wusgo á pùgè. A Pók kadn sáambà dá ya móagà. A kádnà néedè.
A Pók dà kà gómd fídās yè, la muásà a gómdà mé. A Pók kadn sáambà yá kadn
sáamb sùngò.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Págà Pók zàmsà fídās teng búgò?	A zàmsà fídās teng bílf pùgè.
2. ¿Ub bóondà téngà tí bwé?	Ub bóondà téngà tí Kómbisdì.
3. ¿Págà Pók dooga Kómbisd bí?	Ngée, a dóogà Kómbisdì.
4. ¿Kómbisd tada kádn doot wǎnǎ?	Kómbisd tada kádn doot nífigì.
5. ¿Né kadn sáam dam wǎnǎ?	Né kadn sáam damba a nífigì.
6. ¿Kádn blis yà wusg á pùgè bí?	Ngée, kádn blis yà wusg á pùgè.
7. ¿A Pók kadn sáambà dá yà móag bí?	Ngée, A Pók kadn sáambà dá yà móagà.
8. ¿A kádnà néed bí?	Ngée, a kádnà néedè.
9. ¿A Pók dà gómd fídās bí?	Áyò, a dá kà gómd fídās yè.
10. ¿La muásà a gómdà mé bí?	Ngée, la muásà a gómdà mé.
11. ¿A Pók kadn sáambà yá kadn sáamb sùng bí?	Ngée, a yá kadn sáamb sùngò.

UNIT 43

TRAVELLING

43.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

- néngà - see, appear, keep up to date
sódè - trip

Kuka and Tembila Plan a Trip

A Kúk nǎǎ n kéengà sódè. A nǎǎ n kéengà né a zóa Tembílà. Ub nǎǎ n kéengà Bóbò. Ub kéengdà Bóbòǎ ub zóa nǎǎ. A Kúk né a zóa Tembíl nǎǎ n kéengà záabdè, záabd wákàt a nú. Ub nǎǎ n taa Bóbò wákàt piig né yúngò. Ya kéend wòok wusgo. La Bóbò nǎǎ n yíi nòog béoogò.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Sámdì níng sé waatá, a Kúk nǎǎ n kéengà sód bí?
Ngée, A Kúk nǎǎ n kéengà sódè.
2. ¿A Kúk nǎǎ n kéengà sód né ándà?
A nǎǎ n kéengà sód né a zóa Tembílà.
3. ¿Ub nǎǎ n kéengà yáe?
Ub nǎǎ n kéengà Bóbòǎ.
4. ¿Ub kéengdà Bóbòǎ ub zóa nǎǎ bí?
Ngée, ub kéengdà Bóbòǎ ub zóa nǎǎ.
5. ¿A Kúk né a zóa Tembíl kéengdà wákàt búgò?
A Kúk né a zóa Tembíl kéengdà záabdè.
6. ¿Záabd wákàt búgò?
Záabd wákàt a nú.
7. ¿La a Kúk né a zóa Tembíl nǎǎ n taa wákàt búgò Bóbòǎ?
Ub nǎǎ n taa bée wákàt piig né yúngò.
8. ¿Ya kéend wòok bí?
Ngée, ya kéend wòok wusgo.
9. ¿Bóbò nǎǎ n yíi nòog béoog bí?
Ngée, Bóbò nǎǎ n yíi nòog béoogò.

43.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

- klásà - class (on a train)
kéendà - trip

The Train Trip to Bobo

Ub díkà tíde Wágdoogǎ n kéeng Bóbòǎ, a Kúk né a zóa Tembílà. Néb pida

tídè wǎ púgè wusgo. Ub díkà klás a tǎǎb sòabà. Yénd yà doota tǎǎbò. Néb bée bée wusgo. Ub ká náms ub kéendà púgè yé.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Ub díkà tídè Wágdoògè n kéeng yáe?	Ub díkà tídè Wágdoògè n kéeng Bòbòè.
2. ¿A Kúk nè ándà?	A Kúk nè a zóa Tembíla.
3. ¿Néb pida tídè wǎ púgè bí?	Ngée, néb pida á púgè wúsgo.
4. ¿Ub díkà klás a tǎǎb sòabà bí?	Ngée, ub díkà klás a tǎǎb sòabà.
5. ¿Yénd yà doot á tǎǎb bí?	Ngée, yénd yà doot a tǎǎbò.
6. ¿Ti néb bée bée wusg bí?	Ngée, néb bée bée wusgo.
7. ¿Ub námsà i kéendà púgè bí?	Áyò, ub ká náms ub kéendà púgè yé.

43.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Review

/bàngà/ and /míi/ - 26.1A-D

Poko Will Also Be in Bobo

Págà Pók dà bée Dapóyà, la a kéengà Bòbòè muásà. A súúd kà nóog wusg bé yé. A dá kà míi néb wusg Bòbòè yé. La a bángà néb bée muásà. A zǐíndg yà nóog wusgo.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Págà Pók dà bée yáe?	A dá bée Dapóyà.
2. ¿La a kéengà yáe muásà?	A kéengà Bòbò.
3. ¿A Pók súúd ya nóog Bòbòè bí?	A súúd kà nóog wusg yé.
4. ¿A Pók dà míi néb Bòbòè bí?	Áyò, a dá kà míi néb wusg Bòbòè.
5. ¿La a bángà néb bée bí?	Ngée, a bángà néb bée.
6. ¿A zǐíndg yíi nóog wusg Bòbòè bí?	Ngée, a zǐíndg yíi nóog wusgo.

43.4 Comprehension Drill 4

Vocabulary

gě, gěntà - saw, see
 páalg nǎndà - brand new
 sídè - in construction

Grammar Review

- /nã/ - 28.1A-D, 28.2A-F
 /nãã/ - 27.2A-D, 27.3A-C, 27.4A-D

We Pass Some Construction

Záamè a Tembíl díkà lógtòd yíídà sódè nãã n kèeng bée né. Sídè wã butíkà dóog seaagá, a gěntà dóog pàalgà, ub sě nã mēēntà. Ub yéelà mé tí yá bánk doogo lá yéndà; la ub nã kà mēē a sáy yè; la yá doog pàalg nãndà. F sǎ yǔsgò bée nè, f gěntà doog bílfù á yémbdè, ub sě mēēntà bée nè.

Questions

Answers

1. ¿Záamè a Tembíl díkà lógtòd yííd sódà bí?	Ngée, a díkà lógtòd yíídà sódè.
2. ¿A Tembíl gě bwě sídè wã dóog seaagǎ?	A gě dóog pàalgà, ub sě nã mēēntà.
3. ¿Ya bwě doog lá yéndà?	Ya bánk doogó.
4. ¿La ub mēē á la mé n sáy bí?	Áyò, ub nã kà mēē n sáy yè.

UNIT 44

THE NEIGHBORHOODS OF OUAGADOUGOU

44.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

sígdà	- continue, follow
goángà	- promenade, a walk
ámbassadà	- (French) embassy
mõgpér	- (French) mon pere, priest
póg sàdà	- young lady, girl
púg sàdbà	- young ladies, girls

Kúlba, Dapóyà, Láglè

Fo sá waa Wágdoogè goáng balá, zííms níng yám sé sídgè n tógò n gés, ya Kúlba, Dapóyà, la Láglè. Bám ya zííms sé ya néedè. Ub bée Wágdoog púgè. Kúlba ya Ámbassad damba zíímsì. Dapóy mõgpér doogã ya bílfù la a ya néed wusgo. Láglè mé ya teng bílfù né a náabà. Láglè mé, póg sàdb kádn doog bédd bée bée.

44.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

básdà	- neighborhood, this place
mákà, mákdà	- measured, measure
yálmà, yáíndà	- extended, extend
keelá	- remain, be left over
keelè n taalá	- occupy, fit into
dígdà	- area, town
semsé	- a joint, corner
koi	- intently, or purpose

How Big Is Laglè?

F sá bée Láglè mwásà, f básdà Wídè n f dítgò. Ub sé makdá, Láglè yálm kòí! Láglè síd ya yáíngò. Gèná n keelè n taalè n dígd Bàogè, n dígd Nóosè la sémsè fãã.

44.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

dábdà - approach, extend towards

The Extent of Laglè

Fo sǎ sǐd bée a Dakwéngò, f sǎ gèsà f poodè wǎ, sǎ tadè n dábdà a Nóosé, ya Laglè la dǎndà. Laglè méngà bée Wágdoòg táodè; n tádà Dóagè, n tádà ub sǎ boond tí Kaviéd, n tádà Nákwùmbùgò la Dapóyà, la Háya.

44.4 Comprehension Drill 4

Vocabulary

soándgà - census, counting
wéèndà, wéèná - seems, seemed to have the appearance of
yídà - more, more than

Many People Live There

Laglè yálmà mé. Ub sǐd yèelà mé, ti dǎ soandga úb sǎ makda, sǎ ká Dapóyà, ká weenda á táab lebè n bée me n yídà a né súúd yé.

44.5 Comprehension Drill 5

Vocabulary

mǒmpér, mompiámà - (French) priest, priests
eglfisì - (French) church
yúngdà - return often to a given place
Wénám - God
sésà - prayed, spoke through the teeth

The Church at Kolg-Naaba

Id sǎ yòsg bée mwásà lébgà Kolg-Náab la id kéendà. Ya Kolg-Náab la mompiámà tugò n mǎé. Ub dóot bée né, ti ub bóond tí eglfisi, ti ub kéendè n yúngd wénám sées bée.

44.6 Comprehension Drill 6

Vocabulary

bádaagà, bádaasè	- dam, dams (French)
básà	- stopped, left off, let alone
zondá	- set up, built
maamsé	- assimilate, collect

The Dam at Kolg-Naaba

Ti id sá sígd Kolg-Naab mwásà, lébè n yá bádasà. Zonde n wáa bas bée. Bádasà too mè lébè n bée bée. Bádag káng mé sá kà ub sè pagá néd mwásà wá, kóomà dagè tǒǒ bádag kángà káodè, tí ub máams dé tí pá mǎǎn yè.

44.7 Comprehension Drill 7

Vocabulary

zéemà, zéemsè	- equality

Tampúy

Tónd sá yíi bée mwásà lébgà Tampuy. Bám mè tada ub náab bée. Ya téng bílf balà n zéemsè.

44.8 Comprehension Drill 8

Vocabulary

púugò, púutò	- field, fields
koodá	- cultivate
ai	- but, while
teká	- extent
togsé	- imitate, represent

Where Are the Ouagadougou City Limits?

La tónd sá síg bée mwásà, m tǎnd tí lébgà púutò. Lébgà púut mwásà tí nebà tadè n kóod bala n taalè n díg Bágsiònk mwásà. Ai Wágdoòg tékà pá tǒǒ yangè n tógs yè. Wágdoòg ya béddè wúsgò. Ya id wáa bas wótò balá.

Drill 1

Questions

1. ¿Fo ná n waa Wágdoòg dúndà bí?
2. ¿Fo wáa mè náá n zum bwé Wágdoògè?
3. ¿Fo dátè n gésà zííns tenga Wágdoòg púgè bí?
4. ¿Zííns búgò ya néed kà?
5. ¿Ub bée Wágdoòg púgè bí?
6. ¿Bwé bée Kúblà?
7. ¿La Dapóyà bwé bée bée?
8. ¿La Láglè bwé bée bée?
9. ¿Láglè tada bwé yaasa?
10. ¿Yám náá n kéengà bée béoog bí?

Answers

- Ngée, mam ná n waa Wágdoòg dúndà bálà.
 Mam wáa goang bál ka.
 Ngée, m dátè n gésà zííns sè ya Wágdoòg púgè.
 Kúblà ya néedè; Dapóy ya néedè; Láglè ya néedè.
 Ngée, ub bée Wágdoòg púgè.
 Ámbassad damba zííns bée Kúblà.
 Dapóyà mōgpér doog néedè n bée bée.
 Láglè ya téng bílf nè a náabà.
 Láglè tada pogsádb kádn doog bédd mè.
 Ngée, m náá n kéengà bée béoogò.

Drill 2

Questions

11. ¿Láglè bée yáe muásà?
12. ¿A Sékù sá bée Laglé, a básdà Wídè yáe?
13. ¿Ub sè makdá, Láglè yálmà mé bí?
14. ¿Láglè táalà mé n kéeng yáe?

Answers

- Láglè bée Wídè dítgò.
 A Sékù sá bée Láglè, a básdà Wídè a nùg dítgò.
 Ngée, ub sè makdá, Láglè yálmà wúsgò.
 Láglè táalà mé n kéeng Bàogè, Nóosè, la Sémsè.

Drill 3

Questions

15. ¿A Dákwèng pódè wá kéetè ya Láglè la bée me bí?
16. ¿Láglè bée yáe Wágdoògo?

Answers

- Ngée, a Dákwèng pódè wá kéetè ya Láglè la bée me fǎǎ.
 Láglè bée Wágdoòg táodè.

Drill 4

Questions

17. ¿Láglè yálmà mé bí?

Answers

- Ngée, Láglè yálmà mé.

18. ¿Dapóy né Láglě búgò ya bédde? Dapóy ya bédde wusgo n yíd Láglě.

(No questions for Drill 5)

Drill 6

Questions

19. ¿Kolg-Náabě tada bádas bí?
20. ¿Kolg-Náabě bádasě yá bédde bí?
21. ¿La a yá sùma bí?

Answers

- Ngée, Kolg-Náabě tada bádasé.
Ngée, Kolg-Náabě bádasě yá bédde.
Áyò, a ká sùm yé.

Drill 7

Questions

22. ¿Tónd sě yíi bée, id kéengdà yáe?
23. ¿Tampúy tada náab bí?
24. ¿Tampúy ya téng bílf bí?

Answers

- Tónd sě yíi bée, id kéengdà Tàmpùy.
Ngée, Tampúy tada náabà.
Ngée, Tampúy ya téng bílf balá.

Drill 8

Questions

25. ¿La tónd sě síg bée muásě, id tátà yáe?
26. ¿Ya bwě pùutò?
27. ¿Nébà máãdà bwě nè ub púutà?
28. ¿Púutà táalě n taa Bągsiõnk bí?
29. ¿Wągdoòg ték la wótò né bí?
30. ¿Wągdoòg ya bédde wusg bí?

Answers

- Tónd sě síg bée muásě, id lébgà pùutò.
Ya néb pùutò.
Nébà kóodà ub púutà púgě.
Ngée, púutà táalě n taa Bągsiõnkò.
Áyò, Wągdoòg ték ká woto né bal yé.
Ngée, Wągdoòg yá bédde wusgo.

Translations

Drill 1

If you take a walk in Ouagadougou, the places you will see are Kulba, Dapoya, and Laglě. They are the prettiest places. They are in Ouagadougou. The foreign embassies are in Kulba. There is a little church in Dapoya which is very pretty. Laglě is a small town with its own chief. There is also a

large school for girls there.

Drill 2

If you are in Laglě now, you have Widě on your right. Laglě is indeed very big! Laglě is really vast. It occupies Boogě and Noosě both.

Drill 3

When you are in Dakwengo, look behind you toward Noosě. That's Laglě. Laglě is right in front of Ouagadougou. It contains Doagě, another place called Caviere, Nakumbugo, Dapoya and Haya.

Drill 4

Laglě covers a large area. At the last census, it was established that Laglě is the most populated area, next to Dapoya.

Drill 5

If we pass there now, we come to Kolg-Naaba. The good fathers built a house there called a church. They go there from time to time to pray.

Drill 6

Then, continuing our trip after Kolg-Naaba, we come to the end of a dam which was built in that neighborhood. There are various dams there. This one dam here, which has just been built, could collect water for every one to use, but it is not quite ready yet. (It has suffered from continuous flooding.)

Drill 7

After we have left there, we come to Tampuy. They also have their own chief there. It is also only a small town.

Drill 8

After that, I think that we come to the open country. There are people there now cultivating the fields which extend to Bagsionko. The Ouagadougou city limits are not here. Ouagadougou is very big. It is we who come to the end of our trip.

UNIT 45

CHILDHOOD MEMORIES

45.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

yǎndò, yǎndde	- childhood
téngdà, téngà	- remember, remind
ketá	- remain

My Home Town

Teng níng mam sé ketě n tēēndà yéel wusgo ya Lódopèni. Mam dátě n lébè n gě á la mé yaasa. A téngdà yéel wusgo m yǎnd mè.

45.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

pípì	- at first
sóol`	- possession, property
kóabgà	- one hundred

It is a Small Town

Pípì dalá, f bángà tí Lódopèni bée Dedugù né Bóbò suka. La yá Dédug sòolmè n la a bée. Lódopèni yá teng bílf bala. A táda néb kóabg balá.

45.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

gulá	- raised, grow up
saam bílà	- uncle

Not My Birth Place

Mam ká doog bée né yé. La mam gulà bée. Mam búlà m saam bíl níng bée.

45.4 Comprehension Drill 4

Vocabulary

tólmè - change for a purpose

My Uncle's House

M sáam bíl sè yíi yíidì ya yúm písi muásà n tógò zíí Lódopèni n tólmè.
Ya yénd zàkè la mam bángà m yándm nóogò.

45.5 Comprehension Drill 5

Vocabulary

wóoglm - length, size (of clothes)

táabà - each other, together

yídà - exceed, surpass

tágsgò - idea, thought

tágsgà - guess, imagine, think

The Six of Us Had One Thing in Common

M sáam bíl dà tada kóambà nu. Tónd fáã dà ká tad yúmd yè yè. La id
wóoglm dà ká yíd táab wusg yé. A bíig diblí kásmà dá tada yúm píg-la-yébù.
;Yám mè tágsè n gès sè kèsà mwásà? A kóamba fáã yà kom bíbli. Ngée, ub fáã!
A Ámadu, a Músà, a Yúsùf, A Álí, la a Hámidu.

45.6 Comprehension Drill 6

Vocabulary

yísà, yísda - take out

kéengà - outside, a short distance away

deongó - game, playing

Our Activities

Dád ñìngà tónd mī n yíisà dúmsī kéeng pùgè. Wákat ñìngà tónd kéenda
táãsgò. Wákat ñìng bí kóòm deong púugò séaagè bée.

45.7 Comprehension Drill 7

Vocabulary

tasá	- reached
zēēndó	- sauce, gravy
mánà	- okra
túdà	- companions, a following

Evenings

Záabde sá mǐi n wata, mam né m túdà tasē n díkdà yíid sòdè né sūūd nòogò.
Tónd sūūda ya nóg wusgo id sē ná n lébè n tugē n gē m má Tani wā, la id gē
sag túulgā né mán zend nógò.

Drill 1

Questions

1. ¿Fó téndà téng b̄ug yéel wusgo?
2. ¿A téngdà la f la yéel wusgo bí?

Answers

- Mam téndà Lódopèni yéel wusgo.
Ngée, a téngdà m la yéel wusgo.

Drill 2

Questions

3. ¿Lódopèni bée yáe?
4. ¿La yá sóolmè n lá bée?
5. ¿Lódopèni ya téng bèdd bí, bí
bílful?
6. ¿A táda néb wānà a púgè?

Answers

- Lódopèni bée Dédugù né Bóbò súkà.
A bée Dédugù sóolmè.
Lódopèni ya téng bílf balá.
A táda néb k'abg balá.

Drill 3

Questions

7. ¿A Tembíl dooga bée bí?
8. ¿Ub gúlà á la mé yáe?
9. ¿Ya ándà yéng la a gúlè a?

Answers

- Áyò, a ká doog bé yé.
Ub búlà á la mé bée.
A gúlà a sáam bílf yéngà.

Drill 4

Questions

10. ¿A sáam bílf sê yíi yíid ya yúm wánà?
 11. ¿La a sáam bílfà túmdà bwé tum Lodopèni?
 12. ¿A bángà a yándm nóog yàe?

Answers

- A sáam bílf sê yíi yíid ya yúm písí mwásà.
 A sáam bílfà tólmà Lódopèni.
 A bángà a yándm nóog bam zàkè.

Drill 5

Questions

13. ¿A sáam bílfà dá tada kóam wánà?
 14. ¿Koamba fǎǎ yúm dá ya a yé bí?
 15. ¿Koamba wóoglǎm dá yídà táab wusgo bí?
 16. ¿A bíig díbli kásmà dá tada yúm wánà?
 17. ¿A kóambà fǎǎ ya kómdíbli bí?

Answers

- A sáam bílfà dá tada kóamb á nú.
 Áyò, ub fǎǎ yúm dá kà a yé yé.
 Áyò, koamba wóoglǎm dá kà yíd táab wusg yé.
 A bíig díbli kásmà dá tada yúm píig-la-yébù.
 Ngée, a kóambà fǎǎ ya kómdíbli.

Drill 6

Questions

18. ¿A kóambà mǐí n yísà dúmsì n kéeng pùgè bí?
 19. ¿Wákat níngà ub mǐí n kéengà tǎǎsg bí?
 20. ¿Wákat níngà ub mǐí n kéengà kóom deong mé bí?

Answers

- Ngée, ub mǐí yísà dúmsì n kéeng pùgè.
 Ngée, wákat níngà ub mǐí n kéengà tǎǎsgò.
 Ngée, wákat níngà ub mǐí n kéengà kóom deongo.

Drill 7

Questions

21. ¿Záabd sǎ taa, koamba mǎǎndà bwé?

Answers

- Záabd sǎ taa, ub kúisà yíidè.

22. ¿Koamba sũũd ya nóog nè ub má Ngée, ub sũũd ya nóog wusgo né ub má a
a Tani bí? Tani.
23. ¿Ub nóngà ságb nè zeend wúsè bí? Ngée, ub nóngà ságb nè zeend wúsgò.

Translations

Drill 1

The place which remains most in my mind is Lodopeni. I want to see it again. It reminds me a lot of my childhood.

Drill 2

At first, you must know that Lodopeni is between Dedugu and Bobo. It is in the Dedugu administrative area. Lodopeni is only a small place. It has only one hundred inhabitants.

Drill 3

I was not born there, but I grew up there. My uncle there raised me.

Drill 4

My uncle, in whose house I spent ten years, was a merchant. It was in his house that I knew the happiness of childhood.

Drill 5

My uncle has five children. We didn't all have the same age. But our sizes were almost the same. The oldest boy was twelve years old. Can you guess the rest? All the children were boys. Yes, all of them! Amadu, Mousa, Yusuf, Ali and Hamidu.

Drill 6

During the day, we used to take the animals out. At that time we would go hunting. Or we would play in the water next to the fields there.

Drill 7

When evening came, my companions and I would take the road home cheerfully. We were very happy if just on our arrival we would see my aunt Tani and also the hot sagbo with some good okra sauce.

UNIT 46

HUNTING

46.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

yaab-dambà	- ancestors
wǎ-wǎnǎ	- how?
tígsgà táabà	- gather together
néb sǎǎ nébà	- some people

Hunting, Old Style

ǎTónd yaab dam dagè tǎǎsgà wǎ-wǎnǎ? Tónd yaab dam dagè tígsgà táabà, dagè n bée téms tóod-tóodè, la ub tígsgà táab tenga yímbdè bàm wusgo. Néb sǎǎ néb kèengdà né nǎo; néb sǎǎ néb kèengdà né wíidì.

46.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

zǒǒmbá	- mount, ride
zandá	- pick up, grasp
kándè, kǎnà	- lance, spear, arrow
támgbò, támbdò	- club, whips
basá	- left behind
pógdà	- follow
támpò	- bows for arrows
kalbdé, kalbá	- club, clubs

Pedestrians and Riders

La sé zoomba ub wíidì wǎ pá tat sé kèengdà ub né nǎwà ye. La wíidì wǎ dǎmbà, bàm zaanda kǎnà la támbdò. La nǎwǎ dǎmbà ya baasé bógd bàm. La bàm mé tada támpò la kálbà.

46.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

soám̀bà, soáms̀è	- game animal
yalsá, yalsdá	- bring out of hiding
wudgí	- escape, run
lób̀gà	- once, only one time
kúongà	- caught
dígà, dígdà	- took
yúnkà	- snatched up

The Hunting-Dogs

Kalbdé, lá ub sé taantě, báas mwásà wã wáe. Baase sé mii n pògd n'awà dambà, bàm sã mii n tugõ n gé soambà, ub sã yalsá mwásà ta, a sã wudgí tí ub sã lòbgà kuongè. Ya báasà dígdà a. Ub sã tugõ n paamá, yúnkè. Ub kéldè n taa basa á la mé.

46.4 Comprehension Drill 4

Vocabulary

tidá	- stand up
tida wéef zùg woto	- stand up on the horse
yánkà	- close, pulled out
zoómà, zóondà	- continue, last
koomá, koondá	- strike
kadsá	- detach, unglue
ketá	- remain, stay
lóogdè	- the side

Hunting on Horseback

Ub yéelà tí wíidi wã dambà nínà mii n twé n tugõ tídà wéef zùg woto, n dígà waa yánkà, n dígà-dígà waa tugõ n zóond woto né. Kóondà kadsà bala táo-táo balè n kété n tád lóogdè.

46.5 Comprehension Drill 5

Vocabulary

nasádènde	- European style
kúu, kúudà	- kill, die

Our Ancestors were Excellent Hunters

Muásà lébà nasádènde. Nínà sǎ dà nǎ yáas nè támpò tǎǎ a twé síd kúu sòamsà a yíibù. Id ká míi sǎ ya síd yén yé, la ub sǎ dàgè makda yéndà, ub dá tǎǎda la sùma.

46.4 Comprehension Drill 6

Vocabulary

bùgùn	- fire
bùg-dáogò	- gun
bùg-dáoodò	- guns
tíim	- powder, medicine
níigà, níigda	- ooze, sweat, leak
kúgdè, kúgà	- stone, stones
pooglá, pooglgá	- wounded, mourned
zóm	- powder, flour

Guns

La ub dá tada bùg-dáood mè sǎ níigda tíim zóm, tí ub bóond tí bùg-dáood tíim, tí ub píi kúgà púgè wǎ. A kúgà yén dàgè míi pógnd dúmsà wáè!

46.7 Comprehension Drill 7

Vocabulary

kúdmà	- the times of the ancestors, long ago
hála	- until, since, even
légà, légdà	- came back without having accomplished the mission
lé	- not any more (from /lébà/)
yéngà	- spread out
pínd zíingè	- formerly (lit. - in an earlier place)
lóngà, lómsè	- drum

Hunting Today

Dúndà, tǎǎsgà lé kà yánk yěng wusg yé. Ya sídà. Muásà tǎǎsgà ká lèbè n bée a pínd zǐngè yé. Ub básà kúdmà n kěé nasadéndè. Néba sě mǐi n tígì táabà hál tǐ yá wíidì la lómsè. Muásà ya f gé a yé wǎ kěém, n díkì légè n wáat f yíidì.

46.8 Comprehension Drill 8

Vocabulary

dadá	- perhaps
báo	- search for, make an effort to get
báo-báo	- the object of the search
báa	- add, increasing
yěéntá	- discourage

The Lone Hunter Has Less Endurance

Píndà f dagè n tǎé paam dadà á yé n báo-báo, f pà yěénta mé, kété n ya báob balá. La muásà f sǎ kèngà f yé né búg-dáoogò, f sǎ kà tugò n páam, f yěéntà mé, tí ya f sě ya f gé bùm la f sě kà paamǎ, n lébgè n wáa.

46.9 Comprehension Drill 9

Vocabulary

náagdà	- meet, unite
sáadà	- vagabond
vóòdè	- hole, emptiness, loneliness

Nowadays Hunters Are Not Organized

Mwásà yíi téedà wáa mè, sě nǎǎ n kúu wáe la néba sě kà lèbè n náagd táabà. Néd kà fǎǎ saadè n báodà a méng vóòdè bal mwásà.

Translations

Drill 1

How did our ancestors hunt? Coming from different places, they would gather together in one village, chosen before hand. Some would come on foot;

others on horseback.

Drill 2

Those on horseback were not as numerous as the foot travellers. The horseback riders had bows and arrows. The pedestrians were accompanied by their dogs and had bows and clubs also. These clubs were used for the final kill.

Drill 3

The dogs, which accompanied the hunters, were specially trained for their work. When they saw an animal, they knew how to bring it out into the open. If the animal ran, they caught it. It was these dogs who took it. If they succeeded in throwing it down on the ground, then the hunters came to finish it off.

Drill 4

They said that the horsemen used to stand up on their horses, to take an animal, while their mounts rode on. They got their animal by piercing it swiftly with a lance from this position.

Drill 5

Now hunting is practiced European style. Formerly a good hunter could kill two animals at once. We don't know if what people say is true or not. It seems, nevertheless, that our ancestors were excellent hunters.

Drill 6

And they also had fire arms which spat powder, which they call guns of powder. They put the powder in some pebbles. These pebbles would wound the animals fatally.

Drill 7

Today, hunting is not so attractive any more. That's true. Now hunting is no longer what it was before. They have abandoned the style of the ancestors and adopted European style. People used to gallop together [to the forest to the accompaniment of] horses and drums. Now you see one sole traveller, who returns home without having accomplished his mission.

Drill 8

Formerly you could perhaps find something if you did not get discouraged and continued your search all day long. But now if you go out alone with a gun, you get discouraged if you don't get anything, that is if you see something which you do not succeed in bringing home.

Drill 9

Now there is a lot of equipment to hunt with, but there are no more hunting groups. Now a hunter goes out alone and does not seek companionship anymore.

UNIT 47

THE CAT AND THE BUGS

47.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

nángdùsà	- change, return to former state
kii	- spoil, kill, put an end to
dálà	- one must
bengá	- covered up
mustikédà	- (French) mosquito netting
sǎǎngà	- improved, better
dũ, dundá	- sting, nip, prick
pompá, pompdá	- sprayed, spray
petrólà	- gas, oil, kerosene

Bugs

Ya nángdùs wàkatò. Dúmsà ya wúsgò. Ya kii wǎ né kámǎnǎ sě bée wǎ. F sǎ kěe doogě, dálà f pagé, wala f bengà mustikédà, tí dế watě n sǎǎngà. F yěngà á la mé, sǎ pà dëndà. Dúmsà ya wúsgò. Ub dúndà f lá me. Sǎǎ néb pompda né petról koom bílfǎ.

47.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

pítà	- are found
pómpidà	- squirt gun

Bugs at Night

Yúngò ub pítà wúsgò. F sǎ kěe doogě yúngò, dálà f pómpì né tíim kóom ub sě boond tí petrólà wala Flýtòx. Ya yěnd bala f tádè n pómpidè. A kúudà dúms wusgo wálà f kii fùg doog púgě.

47.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

yúgà	- cat
káosà	- stayed
maana	- happened
dádè, dádsù	- day
suká	- asked
toolá	- do business, send an order

The Dead Cat

Dàwà Tembíl dá tada yúg bílfù ub sě kǒǒ á. Dàwà Tembíl dá nòngà á la wúsgò. La a pá káos nē Dàwà Tembíl yè. A máanà dásù píig-la-náas bala. Dáda yémbè, Dàwà Tembíl sígà túmdè n taa tí a Isák yéel Dàwà Tembíl tí a kii mè. Dàwà Tembíl suka tí bwě maana, tí ub taa gèsà a. Dàwà Tembíl dà tēndà mé tí ya báasè n dūmà á la. Ai. Bumbà a yé pá toolě n máanà yé. A kii woto né bala.

Translations

Drill 1

It is between seasons. There are many animals (bugs) around. They have spoiled the corn. When you go into the house, be sure to close it or use the mosquito netting, which is better. You spread it out afterwards (when you get inside). There are many bugs. They bite you. Some people spray a little with kerosene.

Drill 2

At night there are many of them. When you go into the house at night, be sure to spray with a remedy called kerosene or Flytox. Of course, you must have a spray gun. It kills many bugs or you spoil the clothes in your house.

Drill 3

Tembila had a little cat which some one gave him. He liked it a lot. But it didn't stay with him. Something happened only fifteen days after he got it.

One day Tembila came home from work, and Isaac told him that the cat had died. Tembila asked what happened, were they able to see it. Tembila thought that some dogs overpowered it. It wasn't such a big thing. It died just like that.

UNIT 48

INDEPENDENCE DAY

48.1 Comprehension Drill 1

Vocabulary

kíbsà	- holiday
kólgà, kólgdà	- approach
děngà, dēngdà	- start
togsm	- information
sáagà, sáagdà	- spread, go everywhere
teng-téngà	- from place to place
kiúugù	- month

Independence Day

Índependensà kíbsà sá mĩ n waa kólgè, ub déngdè n sáagà mé tógs teng-téngà. A yá kiúug kàngà yě.

48.2 Comprehension Drill 2

Vocabulary

bàsà	- left alone, abandoned
hát tì	- thus, therefore
gílì	- all
tigm	- assembling
fǎǎngdè	- liberation, saving
maká	- designated, named

Independence Day in Ouagadougou

Tónd bàsà násad kíbsà fǎǎ ké yěndà mwàsà. Hál tì ub sá yéel tì a kólgdà woto né, temsa fǎǎ gíl nèbà wata Wágdòogè n waa, tigm taabà n déem súud nòog deem. Ub sè maká n yá tónd teng fǎǎngdè dádè. Nèbà tígsdà taabà n waa wusgo nǎǎ n waa déem.

48.3 Comprehension Drill 3

Vocabulary

Wádbà	- a kind of dance
sáoda, sáodbà	- dancer
yánkà	- choose
bínga	- wear, put on
drapeáu	- flag (French)
drapeáu wã fúta	- uniforms

Travelling by Car

Ub sígdà táab Wágdoògě a dádă. La muásă wă ká mobíl la ub kóontà bām! Ub wátà né mobíl muásă. Wádb sáōndbà, la téng fáă mé yánkà néb tí ub năă n waa bíng drapeáu wă fútă.

48.4 Comprehension Drill 4

Vocabulary

wáogà	- numerous, many
biskǎngà, biskánsè	- bicycle
zoombá	- ride
néedè, néedm	- beautiful, beauty
píndà	- formerly

Horseback Riders

La muásă wíidì wă dām ká lébè waog yé. Ub básà wíidì wă muásă n kěě biskǎnsă. Biskǎnà dām mé mǐi n zóombà mé, la bām nēedm ká dátè n ta wíidì wă dām yé. Píndà, sě dà ya wíidì wă. Nasád kǐbsă, ub mǐi n mǎăna mé tí yá néedè.

48.5 Comprehension Drill 5

Vocabulary

lé	- command form of /lébà/

From Horses to Bicycles to Feet

Muásă ub básà wíidì wă n kéend nē biskǎnsă. Kǐbsà sǎ taa wótò, lébgà

biskánsà yíd sě kéend ub né nàwà. La ká dế mwàsà, la ub sě yéel tí kíbà dád bí ub dá lè zoom biskánsà. Ub sǎǎmdà kéenà, tí ub yéel tí ub dá lè zoom biskánsà yé. La ub sǎ dǎtǎ bí ub yíi tenga pùgè n zóombè.

48.6 Comprehension Drill 6

Vocabulary

koamb-póglè	- girls
koamb-díblì	- boys
toodé	- in a separate group, alone
néd kǎo	- a group
kéengè n kéengà	- go in a group, go in orderly fashion

Two Groups in Laglè

La kíbà dád yéng yíbeoog woto, tónd mǎng sě bée Laglè wǎ, tónd gǎntà Laglè koamb sě yít né drapeáu wǎ fútù. Koamb póglè yá toodé; koamb díblì mé yá toodé. Néd kǎo fǎǎ bée né a náabà, tí ub nǎǎ n kéengà muàsà n kéengà Índependǎsà Zíngè.

48.7 Comprehension Drill 7

Vocabulary

tǒǒngà, tǒǒngdà	- attach, glue back to back
púkà, púkdà	- cover with, reach to
Moéemà, Moéembà	- Muslim, Mohammedan
Kidíst-nébà	- Christians
náagà, náagdà	- make an effort

The Spirit of Unity

Ti ub tóong né yíbeoòg muàsà tí wíntoog nǎ n púkdè. Moéembà, Kidíst-nébà, págbà la koambà, fǎǎ kéengdà né táabà, ká lébè n bée tí fo yá woto né, mam yá woto né ye. Ya ub náag táab muàsà n déem tí ya ub súūd dádè.

48.8 Comprehension Drill 8

Vocabulary

défilè	- (French) parade
yédà, yédbà	- be dressed in
gáddè, gád dàmbá	- guard, guards
pembá, pembdá	- play an instrument, make music
tán tándò	- drums, instruments
fléur, fléur dambá	- (French) flowers
háya	- so that
díglìg	- a grave

The Parade

Déndà id góm défilè wǎ yéelà mé. Défilè wǎ yá sóddaasè, né sě yédb drapeáu damba fútà né gád damba. Ai tí ub péebd tántándò, tí sóddaasà kéendà, háya tí néb bèada getě. Ub sǎ maan dendǎ say, ti ub dik fleur dam me tugǒ díglig be.

48.9 Comprehension Drill 9

Vocabulary

dígà	- form all over, converged
singá, singdá	- begin, start
witér	- (French) huit heures, eight o'clock
onzér	- (French) onze heures, eleven o'clock
sagá, sasé	- time, hour, o'clock
yíigà	- pass by, go beyond
tángà, tángdà	- stumble head on

The Long Celebration

Wala, dígè tónd índependansǎ, Móog nèb wusg wáa mè. Móogǎ néb fǎǎ waa mé. Défilè wǎ mǎng singda yíbèooog woto né witér wakat sagá. N tógò tang onzér saba. A wáa yíigà dén mǎngǎ.

48.10 Comprehension Drill 10

Vocabulary

pípì, píndà	- in the first place, formerly
tántàndà	- player of an instrument
tántàndà dambà	- orchestra
gěngà, gěngdà	- aim, direct towards
pée, péedà	- lead, put together
pógà, pógdà	- follow
záalgà, záalsè	- simple, lone one
yélgà, yélgdà	- put on clothes
toongá, toongdá	- follow one right after the other
kómì dambà	- employees, workers

The Band, Children, Soldiers and Workers

Tí pípì ya tántàndà dambà gěngè n lóogè n tógò n yáasà. Bám mè tugò n yáas tàodè n péedè. Sè pógd muàsà, yíi sòddaasà méngà. Bám mè kéengd muàsà toongà. Bám sè lóog muàsà lébgà né záalsà, mam dátè n yéelà mé tí kádm blìsà. Kádm blìsà mé toonga mé, dágè n yélgà fút budà yé. Bám mè kéengè n lóogè, sám sè lóogè, yíi kómì dambà, sám dágè yélgà fút pèelsè. Bám wàolmè dágè n nǎǎ n ylig fǎǎ gílì.

48.11 Comprehension Drill 11

Vocabulary

sák sàkà	- one after the other
yǎǎngà, yǎǎngdà	- helped, aided
zíp	- jeep
búg dàogò, búg dàodò	- gun, guns
padasút dambá	- paratroopers
póglgè ~ púglè	- both, doubled
RDA	- Rassemblement Democratique Africain
JDV	- Jeunesse Democratique Voltaïque, affiliated with Union Democratique Voltaïque.
zemse	- (French) GMC, truck

The Army and the Parties

Tí ub yǎǎngè n yánk tenga sák sàk fǎǎ nèbà, tí sám yáongè n nǎǎng táab

muásà né ub fút yèndè n lóogdè. Háute Vóltà sóddaas mè la sě yáongè n yá wusg la, tí bām mè toong táab muásà lóogè. Bām poodě yíi sóddaas móbíl dam ub sě boond ub dām tí zémsè wǎ né zíp, tí búg-dád bēadà bée ub poodě. Bām sě lóogè, lébgà padasút dambá. Bām lóogdè poodě tí JDV-RDA púglgè.

48.12 Comprehension Drill 12

Vocabulary

- basket dambà - basketball players
bala dambà - football players

Athletes

Bām mè sě lóogè yíi basket dambà. Bām kà yíi wusg ye, tí bām mè kompóglè. Bām sě lóogè, lébgà bala dām muásà. Bām yě dà ya wúsò.

48.13 Comprehension Drill 13

Vocabulary

- gílì - all, entirely, around
miúgù, mídù - red color
sáblè - black color
péelsè - white color

Different Colored Uniforms

Bām dágè yèlgà drapeáu wǎ fútù. Sǎǎ néb yèlgà sábl gílì sǎǎ néb yèlgà míd gílì. Mídà dágè bée poodě tí sablesǎ bée táodè. Péelsà muásà bée ten sùkà.

48.14 Comprehension Drill 14

Vocabulary

- gymnástikà - gymnastics, acrobatics
wíngà, wíngdà - showed, demonstrated
zoambgá, zoomsé - one who is mounted
koléz - secondary school (French)
kúdsà dambà - racers (French)

School Children and Cyclists

Sě maand ub gymnástikà bàm pògdà bálà dambà. Bàm mè dágè n yélgà ub fút toodé. Dế ya sế d'atè n wíngè kádn zak fǎǎ né a koamba. Aí tí bàm kěě nè lóogè, yíi kùdsà dām muásǎ sế zoamb kút wíidì wǎ. Bàm mè dá ya wúsgò. Bàm sế lóogè, yíi kadm bíi bèadà muásǎ wáa koléz koambǎ.

48.15 Comprehension Drill 15

Vocabulary

togsm	- information
gésn	- watching
nébà gésn gésn	- spectators
togsá	- inform, retell
wéengà, wéendà	- press with the hands, clap
nùg-pògà	- palm of the hand
yáa, yáadà	- tired out, fatigued
zǐindà	- make someone stay
káosà	- lasted a long time

The Spectators

Ká tǒě togsn sáy yè. Id sǎ nǎǎ n zǐind i n tógse, i nǎǎ n káosà mé; tí nébà gésn gésn wéend nùg pògsè wáa yàe.

48.16 Comprehension Drill 16

Vocabulary

tígdè	- joy, satisfaction
sígà, sígdà	- descend, drop

Why the Joy?

Tígdè kángà búd nǎ pà zǐind wágdòog tí tónd gế yè. Néba yíi wusgo. Sǎ yá woto dế yènd sígdà mé. La dế-yènd sígdà mé búm sế ya tónd fǎāngdè dádè.

48.17 Comprehension Drill 17

Vocabulary

sǎǎ	- dance, improve
Wádbà	- a kind of dance
Tádkày	- a kind of dance
Wáogò	- a kind of dance
kenga, kengba	- walker, traveller, performer on the feet
wísì	- flutes

The Dancers

Ya záabdà la tónd náǎ n gě wádb sǎǎbdà sě náǎ n sǎǎ ub súúd nòogà. Wádb sǎǎbdà bàm mè ya wúsgò, téng fáǎ nè a wádb sǎǎbdà. Kéngbà bée ká m péebd wísì, tí kéngbà bée ká sǎǎnd Tádkày, tí kéngbà sǎǎd Wádb mèngà, tí kéngbà bée ká maane Wǎǎgò.

48.18 Comprehension Drill 18

Vocabulary

másque dambá	- people wearing masks, Waongo dancers
lóebà, lóebdà	- tied up, attached, wrapped
zúúndù	- leather, bark
yégdà	- threads, fibers, long hanging fibers

The Masked Dance

Dě ya násàd ub sě boond tí máscara dambá. Bám lóeb nèng gílì né zúúnd muàsà yégdà n sǎǎdè.

48.19 Comprehension Drill 19

Vocabulary

yǎngontà	- lighted, lights
flambeau	- (French) torch
baadé, baadádè	- things to see

Fireworks

Kíbsà bée tí béoogò ub yǒngontà búgùm. Násad ub sě boond tí flambeáu wǎ. Bádaasě wǎ la ub túgò n máanè bádaadè.

48.20 Comprehension Drill 20

Vocabulary

wě	- hit, strike, cause something to happen
náodè, nǎwà	- foot, blow, stroke, shot

The Cannon Sounds

Tí ub wě búg-dáoog kéengà, yíi náod kóabgà la yá la ub sě wě wǎ.

48.21 Comprehension Drill 21

Vocabulary

gusá, gusdá	- went to sleep, went to bed
ba	- even, not even
ba dádè	- that very day
věngà	- light, clarity
káagà, káagdà	- shone from afar
wéngà, wéngdà	- followed, came after

Happiness

Ba dádǎ Wágdoòg pá gusd bá bílfù. Néba fǎǎ sě dágè n tád deem, la béoogǎ sě vǐng kǎagè, aí tí deem lébè n wéngè n sǐng bala. Ya kóam-bíi, tí ya bíi-kasmsé, ti ya ni-kémsè wǎ, fǎǎ ya sǔǔd nòog bala.

Translations

Drill 1

When Independence Day approaches, people go from place to place spreading the information. It is (that month) in September.

Drill 2

We have abandoned all the European holidays now. Thus when the approaching holiday is announced (like that) all the people from the entire republic come to Ouagadougou to see each other and to enjoy themselves. They have named it our country's liberation day. A great many people gather together to celebrate it.

Drill 3

They all arrive in Ouagadougou that day. But now the government gives transportation to those who don't have cars. They arrive by car now, the Waruba dancers [for example]. Every town chooses the people who will wear the uniforms.

Drill 4

Now the horseback riders are not so numerous anymore. They've abandoned horses for bicycles. There are [many] cyclists arriving, but their beauty does not approach that of the horseback riders. Formerly, there were horses. The colonial holidays also used them (something attractive).

Drill 5

Now they've abandoned the horses and taken to bicycles. On the day of the holiday, bicycles outnumber pedestrians. Therefore now, it has been decided to forbid bicycle riding on the holiday! It's because cyclists interfere with traffic that bicycle riding is forbidden. But if they want to, they can go out into the country and ride.

Drill 6

The morning of the holiday, those of us who are in Laglè watch the Laglè children leave in their uniforms. The girls are in one group; the boys in another. Every group has a leader, and they will march in procession to Independence Square.

Drill 7

[The preparations] begin at dawn (when the sun comes up). Muslims, Christians, women and children all go out together. There is no more religious prejudice. (You are one thing, and I am another.) And every one strives together to have a good time on this (their) special day.

Drill 8

We should discuss the parade now. There are soldiers, young people in uniform and area guards. Accompanied by the orchestra of the national guard, the parade passes by the important personalities. After the parade, comes the ceremony of placing flowers on the tomb of the unknown soldier.

Drill 9

Many Mossi people from all over attended our Independence celebration [last year]. Many many Mossi people came. The parade began at eight o'clock and continued until eleven o'clock. In fact, it even continued beyond that time.

Drill 10

The orchestra of the national guard paraded in the first row. They were supposed to lead the parade. Next came the soldiers, marching in perfect formation. Those who came next were the as yet unformed ones, meaning the school children. They also marched in order and all wore the same outfits. After them came the workers all dressed in white clothes. They are more numerous than all the others.

Drill 11

In all the neighborhoods people have gotten together to choose the young people who are to march together in uniform. The Voltan army also has many soldiers who have also marched in good formation today. Next, came the military vehicles, trucks and jeeps, with huge guns behind them. Those who came next were the paratroopers. After that came both the JDV - RDA.

Drill 12

Next came the basketball players. There were not many of them. There were also girls' teams. After them came the football players. There were really a lot of them.

Drill 13

All the teams were dressed in a uniform the color of the national flag. Some wore black; some wore red. Those in red were in the back; those in black were in the front. Those in white were in the middle.

Drill 14

The football players followed those who practice acrobatics. They also had their own uniforms. Each group of school children wore the uniforms of their schools. The children came and went. Those who passed next were the bicycle racers. There were also many of them. When they passed, the bigger school children and the secondary school students came.

Drill 15

There is no end to this information. If we make you stay to tell it, you will remain [here all night]. Suffice it to say that the spectators [filled with joy] applauded until they were exhausted.

Drill 16

We have never before seen such a celebration in Ouagadougou. There were many, many people. But that is normal. (When things are like this, these things happen.) The joy is even more normal when it is seen as the attachment of a people to independence and to the peace which is a product of independence.

Drill 17

In the evening we will attend the performance of the Waduba dancers, who dance gaily. The Waduba dancers are also very numerous. Each village has its own dancers. There are some here who play the flute; some who dance Tadkay; even some who dance Waduba; and others who do the Waongo.

Drill 18

It is the white man who called the Waongo the masked dance. The dancers wrap themselves up in fibers or bark from a tree to dance.

Drill 19

On the eve on the holiday they light a great fire [fireworks]. The white people call it a torch. The fireworks display took place at the dam [that day].

Drill 20

The cannon shots sounded. It was one hundred and one shots that they gave.

Drill 21

That day the people of Ouagadougou did not sleep at all, not even a little. The whole population had a good time until dawn at which time the dancing began all over again. Children, adults, old people, everybody is very happy and the cries of joy can be heard everywhere.

- A Partial List of Suffixes, separated into noun and verb suffixes for the sake of a clear explanation.

Mass nouns generally have no plural suffix available to them. It is reported, however, that in some areas /-a/ is used, e.g. /kóomà/ - containers of water.

MORE BASIC COURSE

Verb Suffixes:

<u>Suffix</u>	<u>Class Name</u>	<u>Example</u>
/-ba/	the contrary	/bíi/ - child; /bíibà/ - mature
/-da/	habit, state	/kóo/ - grow; /kóodà/ - grows
/-ga/	the reverse activity	/kéè/ - entered; /kéengà/-left
/-s/	the transitive	/pá/ - acquisition; /pàsà/ - added something
/-k-/	double reverse	/pa/ - available; /pagá/ - closed; /paká/ - opened
/-t-/	double habit	/-ta/ - reached; /-tadá/ - has; /-tatá/- generally arrives

Alternate spellings for the same word are indicated by /~/ between the two representations.

Words borrowed from the French are indicated by (Fr.) after the English translation.

GLOSSARY: MORE - ENGLISH

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
-A-			
a		1. he, his, her, she 2. particle occurring before names of people	3
	adé	this, that	7
ái		1. no (shortened form) 2. while	44 48
áíí		greetings are accepted (used by a woman)	4
ambassádà		embassy (Fr.)	21
ambassadeúr		ambassador (Fr.)	9
Ámedikà		America, U.S.A.	3
	Ámedik dàmá	Americans	3
	Ámedikè	American	8
ándà		who	12
	ánd dàmá	who (pl.)	12
Ánglèsi		English	4
áyò		no	6
áspidìni		aspirine	33

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
		-B-	
bá		father, esteemed person	4
	bá bílà	uncle, father's younger brother	30
	bá dambá	esteemed persons	4
	bá kásmà	uncle, father's older brother	30
	m bá	1. my good friend 2. thank you	2
	bílgà bá	uncle, father's younger brother	30
ba		distinguish, separate	
	ba dadè	that very day	48
	balá	only	1
	badmá	separated, different	36
	basdá	neighborhood, this area	44
	basá, basdá	1. left behind, abandoned 2. completed an action	15 46
	basé	stopped, let alone	44
	Basgá	feast of the Ancestors	36
báã		added, increased	33
	bángà	know, found out	7
báãgà, báãsè		sickness, ill person	33
baadé, baadádè		things to see	48
baagá, baasé		dog	32
baatá		hole for catching rain water	41
baddágà, baddásè		dam (Fr. - barrage)	44
bádkà		thanks, blessings	14
bálà		ball, soccer	36
	bál damba	soccer players	48
bámbà		they, their, them (long form)	1
	bám	he, they, their, them (medium form)	7
Bámbada		Bambara (person)	4

MORE BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	Bámbadandè	Bambara (language)	4
bananá		banana	13
	bananá dambá	bananas	13
bánkà		bank (Fr.)	22
bao		search	10
	bao báo	object of a search	46
	bao, baodá	looked for, made an effort to obtain	46
	baobó	a search	46
	boě ~ bwě	what	9
báskèt		basketball	48
	báskèt dambà	basketball players	48
bató		boat, ship (Fr.)	19
beddé, beadá		big, great	20
bée		1. there	12
		2. is, is located	2
béoogo		tomorrow	14
bě		stop up, cover, stick on	47
	běngá, běngdá	covered, covered up	47
bíed		beer (Fr.)	31
bíelà		welcome	2
bíelbà		welcome	2
bí		1. question marker	5
		2. after that, well then	15
		3. let, indirect command	34
bí ~ bíí		small, diminutive	
	bí díbla	boy, young man, son	30
	bí púglà ~ pòglà	girl, young lady, daughter	30
	bííba ~ bíí, bííbda	matured, ripe	13
	bííga, bíísi	child	4
	bííga bá	the child's father	30
	kadm bííga	pupil, student	9
	na bííga	prince	29
	bílà	small thing	30
	bá bílà	uncle	30
	má bílà	aunt	30

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	pógd bá bílà	aunt	30
	tǎǎ bílà	younger sister	30
	yáo bílà	younger brother	30
	yásb bílà	uncle	30
	bílfù	small, few, little	11
	bílf bílfù	slowly	11
	bíisde	sand	31
	bíism	milk	31
bíngà, bíngdà		wore, put on	48
biskǎngà, biskǎmsè		bicycle	48
Bóbò		Sobo Dioulassi	3
bóe		houseboy, servant	10
bóe	bóe dambá	servants	10
	bóe tǔndé	job of servant	10
boo		opened up	
	boogá, boogdá	got partly cloudy	35
	boolá, boondá	called	11
	boosá, boosdá	begged, asked for	21
	bookó, boogdó	hole in the ground	39
botó ~ wotó		how, same, like	39
budá, butá		planted	13
búdì		bread	34
búgù		fire	48
	búg da'ogò	rifle, gun	18
bulá		blue	35
búlgà, búlsè		a well	39
butíke		store, shop (Fr.)	34
	butík dambá	shops (Fr.)	34
búdù ~ búudù		1. kind, sort	28
		2. race, family, group, spreading one kind of item	30
	da búde	when, which day	12
	búgò	what, which	12
	búmbù	thing	6
búdò		office (Fr.)	7
búugà, búusì		goat	32
bwě		what	9

MORE BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
		-D-	
dá ~ dǎa		arrived at a certain state of being	
	dá, dǎgè	past tense marker	10
	dá...yé	negative command marker	11
	dábà, dǎbdà	approached, extended to	44
	dádà	perhaps	46
	dádè ~ dǎadè	day, daytime	12
	dáyà ~ dǎsmà	days	12
	dá bíṭè	day before yesterday	12
	dá búḍè	when	12
	bá dádè	that very day	48
	nín dádè	one of these days	41
	dálà	1. one must, necessity	47
		2. unless, well	36
	pípì dálà	at first	45
	dátà	want, wish	15
dǎa		acquiring	13
	dǎa, dǎadà	bought	13
	dǎadà, dǎabǎdà	buyer, one who acquires	13
	dǎagà, dǎasè	the market	7
dag nódè		door, opening	7
	dag nǎyà	doors, openings	7
dǎàm		millet beer	31
dǎògo ~ dǎòogo		male, strength, greatness	32
	dǎwà, dǎopà	man, mister	1
	búg dǎogò	gun, rifle	18
	nág dǎoogo	bull	32
dǎdiò, dǎdiò dǎmbà		radio (Fr.)	8
dérilè		parade (Fr.)	48
dě, dǎndà		1. that, this (demonstrative pronoun)	4
		2. his, hers	38
	dǎnà, dǎndà	followed	48
	dǎngà, dǎngdà	started, began	34
	dé pòodè	then	17

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
dee		diversion	17
	deemá, deemdá	played, had a good time	17
	deongó	game, amusement	45
deembá, deem dambà		parents-in-law	30
depásà, depásdà		ironed (Fr. repasser)	14
dí		press, oppress	
	dígà, dígdà	1. converged	48
		2. caused to fall	46
	dígdè, dígsè	area, town	44
	díglà	put down on the ground	40
	díglà	a grave, grown stiff	48
	díglìg	adobe house	40
	díkà, díkda	took	14
díi		used, consumed	11
	díibò	food	11
	dítgò	right, right hand, hand with which one eats	22
díblà		young male	30
díplomatè, díplomat dambá		diplomat	9
doogó, dotó ~ dootó		house, room	8
	doogá, doogdá	gave birth, was born, lived	8
	bánk doogó	bank building	22
	kadn doogò	school house	22
	mõg-pédà doogó	church	38
drápeau		flag (Fr.)	48
	drápeau wã fútà	uniform	48
dũ		stung	47
	dũmá, dũndá	stung, nipped	47
	dũngá, dũmsí	animal	40
dúndà		today	6
dúnì, dúnyà		earth, world	42

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
-E-			
ecólà		school (Fr.)	28
égliisà ~ églisà		church (Fr.)	22
équipe		team (Fr.)	36
éssènce		gasoline (Fr.)	26
-F-			
faa		encouragement, approval	38
	faasá, faasdá	decorated, beautified	38
fǎǎ		all, every, entire	2
	fǎǎgà, fǎǎgdà	saved	19
	fǎǎngdè	saving, liberation	48
Fídǎsé		France, French (Fr.)	4
fínetdè		window (Fr.)	7
flambeau		torch (Fr.)	48
fleur		flower (Fr.)	48
fúgù ~ fúugù		cloth, clothes, covering	14
	fútù ~ fúutù	clothes (pl.)	14
	fúkà, fúgsè	shell, husk	32
	fúkúdgà	old rag	34
-G-			
gádà		parked the car (Fr.)	37
	gádàz	garage (Fr.)	26
	gádè, gád dambá	station (Fr.)	15
gáddè, gád dambá		guard (Fr.)	48
gǎǎ ~ gěě		lie down	32
	gǎǎngdà, gǎǎndsè	bed, place to lie down	32
	gǎǎngà	colorful cloth	40
gě		saw, light, sight	
	ngée	yes	3
	gěěngà ~ yěěgà, gěěngdà	became clear	35
	gěngà, gěngdà	put on the right course	48
	gésà, gètà	saw, watched, looked	6
	gém	watching	48

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	nébà gésm gèsm	spectators	48
gíli		entirely, all around	48
	gílgu	round in shape	39
góabgà		left hand	22
	góbga ~ gúbga	surrounded	38
gố		run, wander	
	góndgà ~ gốdgà	turned	22
	góãgà, goãmse	1. here and there in a circle	38
		2. a walk, promenade	44
	tí góngò	a holiday	36
góm		speaking	
	gómà, gómdà	spoke, said	11
	gómdè, goámà	word, language, discussion	4
gũũ		wait, protect	37
gúbga ~ góbga		surrounded	38
gulá		grew up, was raised	45
gusá, gusdá		went to bed, sleep	15
gúdì: nãñ gúdì		peanut	32
gymnástikà		acrobatics (Fr.)	48
-H-			
hálà		until	22
	hál tí	thus, so, therefore	48
-I-			
i		you, your (short form)	1
id		we, our (short form)	2
-J-			
JDV		Jeunesse Democratique Voltaire (Fr.)	48
-K-			
ká		here	6

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	káí	right here	6
	káí né wǎ	this very spot	6
	ká...yé	negative marker	6
káafò, kí		millet	31
ka		unglue, come apart, movable	
	kadgá, kadsé	leg	33
	kalbdé, kalbá	whip, club	46
	kadsá, kadsdá	detached	46
	kamáandè, kamáanà	corn	31
	kasángà, kasámsè	vastness, non cohesion	42
kadmá, kadmdá		read, studied, taught	9
	kadm bífigà	pupil, student	9
	kadn dóogò	school house	22
	kadn sámbà ~ sáambà	teacher	9
	kádngò	studying, lesson	36
kǎndè, kǎnà		lance, spear, arrow	46
kángà		that (demonstrative adj.)	22
kángà, kángdà		sounded	48
káagà, káagdà		shone from far away	48
kábdè		excuse, pardon	14
	i kábdè	excuse me	14
káo		pertaining to length	
	káosà, káosdà	1. stayed, remained	28
		2. lasted, endured	35
	néd káo	group of people	48
	káusà ~ káoosà	remained	35
kásmà		boss, official, older member of family	27
	bá kásmà	uncle, older than father	30
	má kásmà	aunt, older than mother	30
	pógdb kásmà	aunt, older than father	30
	tǎǎ kásmà	older sister	30
	yáo kásmà	older brother	30
	yásb kásmà	uncle, older than mother	30
kátè, kátà		hyena	36

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
ke		patience, endurance	
	kelá, keldá	left over, remained	44
	kelé n talá	occupied, fit into	44
	kelgá, kelgdá	heard, listened	5
	keesá, ketá	remained, lasted, endured	34
	kemá, kemsé	brittle, hard, difficult, old	32
	ni kémà, ni kémsè	elderly gentleman	32
	ketá	stay, remain	45
kée ~ ké		budging, moving, walking	
	kée, kéěntà	came in, entered	5
	kěná, kéndà	travelled	15
	kěnga, kéngdà	went, went away	7
	kěngdà, kéngbà	walker, traveller, performer on the feet	48
	kěngè n kéngà	go in orderly fashion	48
	kěngò	vastness	44
	kěěsà	put something inside	15
keegá, keesé		green, parakeet	37
kii, kiitá		1. died, dead	33
		2. spoiled, ruined	47
kíbàde, kíbàes ~			
	kíbàise	news	8
kíbsà		Mossi holiday	30
kídngà, kídnsì		distance	22
kípadé, kipayá		a pepper	23
Kíditìà, Kíditìà			
	dambá	A christian	37
	Kídist nèbà	Christians	48
kíuugù, kíuusì		moon, month	34
klásà		class on trains and airplanes (Fr.)	43
kó ~ kóo		shove, force out	
	kóadà, kóadbà	farmer, planter	9
	kóbgò, kóbdò	body hair, fur, feather	33

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	kóo, kóodà	grew something	13
	kóobà	fields under cultivation	41
	kósà, kótà	begged, asked for	10
ko ~ koo		get rid of	
	koasá, koasdbá	merchant	9
	koosá, koosdá	sold something	13
	koolgá, koolgdá	approached	48
kõ ~ kõõ		give, hit	
	kõ ~ kõõ, kontá	gave, for	11
	koomá, koomdá	struck repeatedly	46
	kondé, konyá	1. something given, 2. hit, slap, strike	46
	koambá	children, offspring	4
	komb díblì	boys, sons	30
	komb púglì ~ púglì	girls, daughters	48
	zeend koambá	plants	24
	kom, kombá	1. hollow 2. hunger, famine	33
koabgá		one hundred	15
koi		indeed, on purpose	44
kokódè, kokóyà		neck	33
koléz		secondary school (Fr.)	48
kom		hunger, famine	33
	kõ yúùdù	thirst	33
komb díblì		boys, sons	30
komb púglì		girls, daughters	48
kóòm		water	24
komédsà		commerce, trade (Fr.)	38
	kómì dambà	employees, workers (Fr.)	48
kõvokasiò		summons (Fr.)	37
kú ~ kúu		old, bent, dead, ancestors	
	kúu, kúudà	1. killed 2. grown old, walk bent over	32 46
	kúdgà, kúdsè	something old and worn out	34
	fú kúdgà	old rag	34

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	kúdmà	long ago, the time of the ancestors	46
	kúgdì, kùgà	stone, rock	46
	kuísà, kuítà	went home	29
	kuísà ~ kwíisà	dried up	34
kú		pile up, amass	
	kúmbdè, kúmbà	eggplant	11
	kuóngà, kuóngdà	caught	46
kúdsà		competition (Fr.)	48
	kúdsà dambà	racers	48
kútù		iron	10
	kút wéefò	bicycle	10
	kút wíidi	bicycles	10
-L-			
la		1. and, but	1
		2. verb used to emphasize	3
		3. object marker	
laafí		health, peace	1
láagà, láasè		dishes	34
lándì		Monday (Fr.)	23
lé		continuing, parallel	
	lé	1. command form of /lébà/	48
		2. not any more, still	44
	lébà, lébdà	1. repeated	
		2. stopped, quit (negative)	23
	lébgà, lébgdà	1. returned, left from	
		2. changed, converted	23
	lédà	time span, hour	36
	légà, légdà	came back without having accomplished the intended mission	46
lé		something hidden, covered	
	lénga, lémsè	gift, gratuity	14
	lémbùdè, lémbuyà	orange	13
lédà	léd dambá	a duck	32
lígdì		money	13

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
lítde		liter (Fr.)	26
lífde, lívd dambá		book (Fr.)	5
lío		pass from...to	
	lóobgà	did something only one time	46
	lóogà, lóogdà	left, came out	18
	lóogdè, lóogà	the side	46
lóa	restricted		
	lóa, lóetà	fasted, did not eat	37
	lóebà, lóebdà	tied up, wrapped up, attached to	48
	lókde	end of fast	37
	nóod lókde	Ramadan	37
lógtodè		doctor (Fr.)	9
lóngà, lómsè		a drum	46
lui, luitá		fell, dropped	19
-M-			
mam		I, me, my (medium form)	4
	m	I, my (short form)	1
	mã ~ mam	I, me (pre-pause medium form)	11
	m bá	thank you	2
má		mother, aunt	4
	má dambá	mothers, aunts	4
	má bilà	aunt younger than mother	30
	má kásmà	aunt older than mother	30
maa		doing	
	maagá, maagdá	cooled off, slowed down	35
	maaká, maakdá	1. attempted, tried	39
		2. measured	44
	maamsá, maamsdá	acquired something, assimilated	44
	maaná, maandá	1. did, made	9
		2. happened	47
	maangdé, maangá	repair, repair shop	24
maddí		Tuesday (Fr.)	23
mánà		okra	45

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
mángdò ~ mángodò		mango	13
másque dambá		people wearing masks, Waongo dancers	48
máitchà		game, match (Fr.)	36
mé		1. obligatory verb object	2
		2. also, too	4
měě ~ mée, mēētà		built, constructed	13
médkdédì		Wednesday (Fr.)	23
méngà ~ myéngà		self, exactly, indeed	20
mesé		mass (Fr.)	38
míi		1. know	7
		2. do habitually	
míigà, mífisì		bitter plants, weeds	39
míisdè, mífisì		mosque	37
minítì		minute (Fr.)	36
miúgù, miútù ~ mídù		red color	37
móo		mature, red, done	
	Móagà, Móosè	a Mossi	8
	móasà ~ muásà	now	6
	módsà, módsdà	ripened, softened	35
	mód mòd	hot and wet	35
	módgà, módgdà	1. clouded, overcast	35
		2. constrained, not free	
	Móodè ~ Mōōdè	1. like a Mossi, Moré language	4
		2. mature, full grown	39
mobíli		automobile, car	18
Moéemà		Muslim, Mohammedan	48
	Moéembà ~ Moéemsè	Muslims	37
mōmpéda		priest (Fr.)	44
	mōmpiámà	priests	44
	mōgpédà dóogò	church	38
muásà		now	6
	múas muásà	right away	6
muēmbó		1. stirring, mixing	40
		2. meal	40
mwífù, mwí		rice	31

MORE BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
mustikédà		mosquito netting (Fr.)	47
-N-			
n ~ m		verbal connective	3
naa		profiting, respected, aloof	
	naaá	greetings are accepted	2
	naabá	1. chief	29
		2. greetings are accepted	2
	na bíigà	prince	29
	naagá, naagdá	united, met	46
	nasáadà	white person	19
	nasáadènde	1. European style 2. European language	23
náa			
	náafò, níisì	cow	31
	nág dáoogò	bull	32
	wée náafò	buffalo	32
	náasè	flour	8
nǎ ~ nǎǎ		ease, proximity	
	nǎ	have just, (neg.) not yet	7
	nǎǎ	1. future marker	6
		2. in order to	27
	nǎǎmà	1. arrange easily to be	26
		2. docile	44
	nǎnà, nǎndà	have provided something, done easily, almost	38
	páalg nǎndà	brand new	43
	nǎngà, nǎngdà	made an effort	48
	nǎngdùsà	changed back to	47
	nǎngdùs wakátò	change of season	47
	námsà, námsdà	got tired, exhausted	18
nangúdi, nǎngúyà		peanut	32
náo		bottom, poverty, base	
	náodè, náwà	1. foot	33
		2. blow, stroke	48

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	náo bílà	toe	33
né		and, with, into	1
ne		indeed	4
nédà, nèbà		person	16
	nébà gésn gésn	spectators	48
	néb sǎǎ nèbà	some people	38
	Kídíst nèbà	Christians	48
	néd káo	a group of people	48
	sǎǎ nèbà	some people	38
needé		pleasant, pretty	3
	needmá	beauty, pleasure	48
neige		snow (Fr.)	42
némdò		meat	34
ngée		yes	3
nífù, níni		eye	33
níi		twisted, tied up in knots	
	ní kémà	elderly gentleman	32
	níi	eight	8
	níi ~ níigà, níigdà	1. oozed, leaked, sweated	46
		2. rained	31
niná, níngá		1. that, some one, some thing	41
		2. the one who	24
		3. because of, during	41
	nín dádè	the other day, one of these days	41
nóagà, nóosè		chicken	32
nóngà, nóngdà		liked, loved	24
nóodè, nóyà		mouth, opening	33
	Nóod lókdè	Ramadan	37
noogé		approximately	43
noogó, noogdó		happy, content, contributing to someone's benefit	6
Nowélé		Christmas (Fr.)	37
ntó		agreed, O.K.	13
núu		pertaining to five	

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	núu	five	8
	núgù, núsì	hand	22
	núg bìlà	finger	33
	núg pùgà ~ pògà	palm of hand	48
-O-			
ódzavel		bleach (Fr.)	34
ohǒǒ		aha! yes, O.K.	7
ǒnzer		eleven o'clock (Fr.)	48
otél		hotel (Fr.)	15
-P-			
pá. r. yé		negative marker	9
pá ~ páa		acquisition, addition	
	páalgà, páalsè	new	24
	páalg nǎndà	brand new	43
	páamà, páamdà	obtained	26
	págà, págbà	wife, woman	1
	páogà, páogdà	lacked, needed	34
	pàsà, pásdà	added something	37
	m pás nè	in addition	26
pa		available	
	pagá, pagdá	closed	5
	paká, pakdá	opened	5
pádasùt dǎmbà		paratroopers (Fr.)	48
Padí		Paris (Fr.)	23
Pákà		Easter (Fr.)	37
papáyà, papái dambá		papaya	13
pé		lead, unite	
	pée, péedà	led, united	48
	péelgà, péelsè	white, the color of mourning clothes	37
	pékà, pékdà	washed, whitened	14
	pésgò, píisì	sheep	31
pěě		nearness, proximity	

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	pěě, pěěntá	was near	26
	pěěmbá, pěěmbdá	played on instrument, scratched	48
	pemsm	air, wind	31
pédà		priest (Fr.)	38
petdólè, petdólà		gas, oil, kerosene (Fr.)	47
pí		pile, heap, a covering	
	pídà, pítà	1. filled up, abounded	41
		2. found and acquired	47
	píigà, píisì	ten	8
	píisà, píisdà	swept up	34
	píisì	sheep (plural)	31
	pílà, píldà	rolled, folded up	32
	pílga, pílgdà	unrolled, unfolded, peeled	32
	písì ~ píisì	tens, twenty	8
	písnaasè	forty	15
	písnìi	eighty	15
	písnùu	fifty	15
	pístàã	thirty	15
	píswàe	ninety	15
	písyòobè	sixty	15
	písyòpòe	seventy	15
pikúudè, pikúuyà		injection, shot, (Fr.)	33
píndà		formerly, early	6
pípì		at first, first	48
plákà, plák dambá		license plate (Fr.)	37
pó ~ pú			
	póakà, pógèsè	female relative	30
	pógà ~ pùgà, pùgsè	inside, stomach	15
	nùg pògà	palm of hand	48
	pógà, pògdà	followed, succeeded	46
	pògd bà, pògdb dambá	aunt	30
	pògd bílà	aunt	30
	pògd kàsmà	aunt	30

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	pógè ~ pùgè	interior	15
	póglà	female	30
	bí pòglà	girl, daughter	30
	koamb pòglè	girls, daughters	48
	komb pòglè	girls, daughters	30
	póglgà ~ pùglgà	repeated, doubled	5
	póglgè	both	48
	pógsàdà	young lady	15
	pógyàngà, pógyàmsè	elderly lady	32
	pói ~ púi	divided	36
	pói suká	half	36
polísà		policeman (Fr.)	38
pompídà		squirt gun (Fr.)	47
pompá, pompdá		sprayed	
poodé, poayá		back, behind	22
pooglá, poogndá		mourned	46
pooglgá, poogndá		wounded, hurt	19
póstà		mail (Fr.)	10
	póst doogó	post office	10
pú ~ pó			
	pùgà ~ pógà, pògsè	stomach, inside	15
	núg pògà	palm of hand	48
	pùgè ~ pógè	interior	15
	pùglà	female	30
	bí pùglà	girl, daughter	30
	komb pùglì	girls, daughters	30
	pùglgà ~ póglgà	repeated, followed	5
	púi ~ pói	divided	36
	púi suká	half	36
púkà, púkdà		1. reached to 2. woke up	48
púugò, púutò		field	44
puusá, puusdá		greeted, prayed, wished	14
puusgó		prayer	37

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
		-R-	
RDA		Rassemblement Democratique Africain (Fr.)	48
		-S-	
sá		whole, complete, accomplished, ready	
	sádà	mature girl	15
	pógsádà	young lady, Miss	15
	sádè, saya	the end, the completion	39
	sádgà, sádsè	mature female who is not yet a mother	32
	wed sádga	mare	32
	sákà, ságsè	part of town, neighborhood	48
	sák sákà	one after the other	48
	teng sákà	part of a village	48
	sáyà	finished	39
sa		slippery, goes by quickly, smooth	
	sagbó	native dish	40
	sagá, sasé	short time span, hour, o'clock	48
	saká, sakdá	obeyed, agreed, submitted	34
	sasé	times, moments	36
sáa		every where, spread out	
	sáadà, sáadbà	vagabond	46
	sáagà, sáagdà	spread out, went all over	48
	sáagà, sáasè	1. sky, rain	31
		2. broom	32
	sáas wakátò	rainy season	41
sǎ		if, when	22
sǎǎ		debt, owing, be in debt	
	sǎǎmá, sǎǎmdá	1. spoiled, broke, interfered with	10
		2. owed	38
	sǎǎ nébà	some people	38
	sǎǎmbá	thank you	2

MORE BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	sããmbá, sããm dambà	progenitor	30
	kadn sáambà	teacher	9
	sããná, sããmbá	stranger, visitor	36
sáblgà, sáblsè		black (Fr.)	37
safándà, safána		soap (Fr.)	34
salóó		living room (Fr.)	34
samdí		Saturday (Fr.)	23
sãó		dance, jump, shake	48
	sãódà, sãódbà	dancer	48
sãóngà, sãómsè		better, cured	47
sé		concide, meet	
	séaagà, séaasè	side, beside	21
	sékà, sékdà	sufficed, was enough	42
	sésà, sésdà	made something coincide, spoke through the teeth	44
sebdé, sebá		book, paper	17
seongó ~ siongó		rainy season	36
sepálgò ~ si páalgò		dry season	35
sé		joined together	
	sé	that, which, since (subordinate conjunction)	6
	sémè	converged, from all over	41
	sémsà	a joint, a place where the parts meet	44
síbdè, síbà		grape	13
	síbgà, síbsì	grapevine	32
sídà		truth	10
sídè		in construction	43
sígà, sígdà		descended, lodged	15
sigá, sigdá		quit, stopped	36
sigádè, sigáyà		cigar, cigarette (Fr.)	33
silgá, silsí		kite(bird), airplane	19
Sílmigà, Sílmisi		Fula person	8
	Sílmíidì	1. Fula language 2. Fula fashion	4
singá, singdá		began	27

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	sĩngá, simsĩ	beginning	48
sipálgò, sipálsè		dry season	35
siõngó, siõndó		rainy season	35
só		pertaining to ownership	
	sóabà, sóabdà	owner, proprietor	15
	sóagà, sóagdà	attached, fixed	32
	sóadgà, sóadsè	fastener, button	32
	sólm, sólm dambá	property, governed area	45
sóambà, sóamsè		game animal	46
soandgá		counting, census	44
sobdé, sobá		shade, night	41
	sobgá, sobgdá	got dark	41
sóddaagà, sóddaasè		soldier (Fr.)	9
sódè, sóyà		road, trip, run along the surface	3
sondé		family name	12
sõngá, sõngdá		helped, assisted	24
sõõgà, sõõgdà		rubbed	34
sõõsà, sõõsdà		talked privately	38
stádè		stadium (Fr.)	36
sũ		something good	
	súgdì	pardon, excuse	10
	súmdè, sumà	good thing	4
	súngò	of good character	16
	sũũdì, sũũyà	1. heart	6
		2. upper torso	33
subá		assurance	24
súkà		center, between	19
suká, sukdá		asked	11
súkdè		sugar (Fr.)	31
súubù		collection, gathering	40

-T-

ta		reached, arrived	
	tadá	have (state of successful reach)	8

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	tagsgá, tagsé	distracted, guessed	45
	talá ~ taalá	brought	24
	kéelě n talá	occupy, fit into	44
	tasá, tasdá	reached something	45
	tatá, taantá ~ taaldá	arrived, resulted in	22
tǎ		stick together with adobe	39
	tǎmètà, tǎmètà	mason	9
táabá		1. together, each other	39
		2. another	31
tǎǎbó		three	8
táamà, táamsè		karité	13
taalá, taandá		stopped often	39
tángà, tángdà		stumbled head on	48
Tadkáy		a kind of dance	48
táksì, táksì dǎmbà		taxi (Fr.)	15
tǎmbgò, tǎmbdò		club, stick	46
	tǎmpò	bows for arrows	46
	tǎmpò tǎǎ	hunter	46
	tǎntǎndà, tǎntǎndà dǎmbà	orchestra	48
tao		soon	10
	tao tao	quickly, on time	10
	taodé, taoyá	1. straight ahead, in front of, in line	22
		2. lower torso	33
tǎǎ, tǎǎpà ~ tǎwà		sister, female cousin	30
	tǎǎ bílǎ	younger sister	30
	tǎǎ kǎsmà	older sister	30
tǎǎ		piercing, hitting	
	tǎǎ, tǎǎndǎ	1. hit, kicked, played a hitting game	36
		2. pierced, stabbed	45
		3. hunted	46
	tǎǎbó	game, playing	36
	tǎǎsgó	hunting	18
	tǎmpò tǎǎ	hunter	46
tapi, tapi dǎmbà		rug, mat (Fr.)	34

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
tě		mental activity	
	těma, těndà	thought	30
	těngà, těngdà	remembered	45
tě		surface	
	těká	extent	44
	těngá, těmsé	country, region, village	12
	těngdé, tengyá	bottom, underneath	22
	teng sákà	part of a town	48
	teng téngà	from place to place	48
teógò, téedò		belongings, things	15
tí		that, which	11
ti		straight, correct	
	tidá	up right, standing	46
	tidgá ~ tedgá	straight, correct	22
tídě		train (Fr.)	18
tigóngò		Mossi holiday	36
tígsà, tígsdà		gathered, harvested	46
	tígdè, tígà	satiation, satisfaction	48
	tígm	an assembly	48
tíim, títo		1. medicine, remedy	33
		2. powder	47
tíigà, tíisì		tree	41
	tíis vándò	leaves from trees	40
tí, táabà		another, additional	31
tóo		pain, difficult	
	tóodè	sticky, viscous	41
	tóogò	painful, difficult	13
	tóě, tóogà	can, is capable of	14
too		detach, separate	
	toodé, totóyà	1. varying, different	40
		2. along in a separate group	48
	togsá, togsdà	1. imitated	48
		2. retold, informed	21
	togsm	information	48

MORE BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	toolá, toondá	do business	47
	tolmdé, tolmsé	1. deliberate change	45
		2. door to door commerce	45
	togá ~ tugá	went to do	3
	toongá, toongdá	1. attached, glued	48
		2. follow one right after the other	48
	toy tóy	different kinds	38
tóndò		we, us (long form)	1
	tónd	we, us (medium form)	11
truelle		trowel (Fr.)	39
tubdé, tubá		ear	33
túdà, túdm		companions	45
tugá ~ togá		went to do, went for	3
tuká, tukdá		dug	39
tumá, tumdá		worked	9
tumdé ~ tuumdé		work, job	10
	tumá	jobs	10
	bóe tumdé	job as servant	10
tusá		a thousand	29
túulà, tuundà		got hot	35
	túulgò	heat, warmth	35
-U-			
ub		they, them, their	3
UDV		Union Democratique Voltaïque (Fr.)	48
-V-			
valíze, valíz dambá		suitcase (Fr.)	15
vánddadì		Friday (Fr.)	23
venà, vèndà		is clear, light, healthy	48
	véngà, véngdà	illuminated, clarified	48
	véngà, vémsè	clear thing	48
víi		resided, lived (Fr.)	39

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
Vóltalk, Vóltaík dambá		Voltaic	8
vóosà		rest, repose	38
vóòdè		hole	46
-W-			
wǎ		this, that (demonstrative adjective)	6
waa, wata		arrived, came	2
wǎǎgá, wǎǎgdá		cut	33
waalá, waaldá		sprayed	24
Wádbà		kind of dance	48
wae		then, please, oh, well	5
wáe		nine	8
Wágdùgu ~ Wágdògo		Ouagadougou	3
wákatò		time, hour, o'clock	12
	nǎngdùs wákatò	change of season	47
	sáas wákatò	rainy season	41
wakídè, wakiyà		five franc piece	13
walá		1. or	37
		2. even, still	48
wálgà, wálsè		gazelle	32
wǎnà		how	6
	wǎ wǎnà	how much	13
Wáogò		kind of dance	48
wáogà		numerous, many	48
Wáyùya ~ Wáyùgia		Ouahigouya	32
wéefò, wíidì		horse	10
	wéd sǎdgà	mare	32
	wée náafò	buffalo	32
	kút wéefò	bicycle	10
wé ~ wí		Sun, God	
	wéńǎm	God	14
	wín tòogò ~ tògò	noon	1
	wénà, wéndà ~ wínà	seemed, appeared to be	44
	wéndgà ~ wíndgà	sunshine, daylight	48

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	wéngà, wengda ~ wíngà	showed, demonstrated, manifested	48
wěě		press, shape	
	weengá, weengdá	1. pressed with the hands	
		2. applauded	48
weogó, weotó ~ wetó		bush, forest	36
wí ~ wě		Sun, God, Almighty	
	wíntòogó ~ wěntòogó	noon	1
	wínà ~ wěná	appeared to be	44
	wíndgá ~ wěndgà	sunshine	48
	wíngà ~ wéngà	showed, manifested	48
Wídèn		name of town	44
wíidì		horses	10
witér		eight o'clock (Fr.)	48
wígà, wísì		flute	48
wó		long, tall	
	wóbgò, wótò	elephant	36
	wóglm	length, size (of clothes)	45
	wókò	tall, long	20
wógdò		cold	33
wotó		like, thus, so	4
wu		nourish, assimilate	
	wubá, wubdá	vomited	33
	wudgá	ran, escaped	46
	wuká, wukdá	gathered up	40
	wumá, wumdá	came to understand	7
	wusgó	much, very	3
-Y-			
yá ~ yáa		stretch beyond	
	yáabà, yáab dambá	grandparent	30
	yáa, yáadà	tired out, fatigued	33
	yálngò, yálm	width, extended area	44
	yálmà, yáln dà	extended	44

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
ya ~ yaa		is (without any idea of change)	1
	yaasá, yaasdá	stood around, waited	5
	yae	where	4
	yalsá, yalsdá	stood up, brought out of hiding	46
yǎ		master, acquired, acquirer	
	yǎ	you (medium form)	11
	yǎm	you, your (medium form)	1
	yámbà	you (long form)	2
	yángà, yángdà	threw down	45
	yándò, yánddè	childhood	45
	yángà, yámsè	one who has given birth	32
	póg yángà	elderly lady	32
	póg yámsè	elderly ladies	32
	yánkà, yámkdà	1. picked	24
		2. picked up	46
		3. chose	48
yáo, yáopà ~ yáwà		brother, male cousin	30
	yáo bílà	younger brother	30
	yáo kásmà	older brother	30
	yásbà	uncle	30
	yásb dàmbá	uncles	30
	yásb bílà	uncle younger than mother	30
	yásb kásmà	uncle older than mother	30
yǎo		kind of food	
	yǎo, yǎodà	payed, compensated	34
	yǎoŋgà, yǎoŋgdà	helped, aided	48
yé		not, not one	
	dá...yé	don't (for commands)	11
	ká...yé	negative marker	6
	pá...yé	negative marker	9
yédà, yédbà	yédà, yédbà	be dressed in	48
	yégdè, yégà	thread, fiber	48
	yélgà, yélgdà	put on (clothes)	48

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
yeelbá		welcome greetings	2
yeelá		1. said, told	5
		2. welcome greetings	2
yémsm̃		salt	31
yéndè, yénà		tooth	33
yě		self, really, (short form)	1
	yémbò, yémbdè	one	8
	yéndà	1. self	1
		2. her, him, it (long form)	22
yé ~ yěě		bottom	
	yecndá, yeentá	discouraged	46
	yengá, yengdá	1. spread out over the surface	46
		2. appeared	38
yí ~ yíi		exceed	
	yí ~ yíi, yíta	became	3
	yíibù ~ yébù	more than one, two	8
	yíidì, yíyà	house, compound	2
	yíid dambá	extended family	2
	yída	excess, more than	46
	yíigà, yíigdà	went beyond	48
	yíkà, yíkdà	1. got up, stood up	15
		2. flew	31
	yíkàdm	marriage	8
	yíngà	1. exterior	22
		2. place beyond	
yíbéoogò		morning	1
yíidè, yíisà		deer	32
yíilà		sang	36
yíilì, yíilà		song	
yǒnkà, yǒnkà		got stuffy	35
yǒngontà		lighted, lights	48
yǒsgó		passed by	22
yóobè		six	8
yǒǒdé, yǒǒyá		nose, nostril	33
yópoè		seven	8

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
yũ		in a snap	
	yúngà, yúngdà	1. returned to a given place	44
		2. hurled down	46
	yúngò	evening, after sun down	1
	yúnkà, yúnkà	snatched up	46
yúmdè, yúmà		year	28
yũũ, yũũdá		drank, smoked	33
	kǒ yũũdú	thirst	33
yúudè		given name	12
yúugà, yúusì		cat	32
-Z-			
záa		distance	
	záabdè	afternoon	1
	záagà, záagdà	go far away	26
	záalgà, záalsè	lone one, simplicity	48
	záamè	yesterday	12
	záadà ~ záadà	be far away	22
za		hold together, tied up	
	zabá, zabdá	hurt, pained, argued	25
	zaká, zagsé	house, apartment	2
	zak dambà	immediate family	2
	zalá, zandá	held, grasped	46
	zamsá, zamsdá	learned	4
zedì		Thursday	23
zeendó ~ zendó		1. garden	21
~ zěedó		2. vegetables, fruit	24
		3. sauce, soup	45
	zěend kóambà	plants	24
zéemà, zéemsè		equality	44
zémsè		GMC, truck (Fr.)	48
zíí ~ zíi		placed, spot, property	
	zíí, zííndà	sat down	5

MORE BASIC COURSE

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Related Words</u>	<u>Glossary</u>	<u>Unit in which introduced</u>
	zĩndga ~ zĩĩga	1. property, place	22
		2. square (in a town)	22
		3. chair, seat	32
	zĩndsè ~ zĩĩmsè	properties, seats	32
zĩlmdé, zĩlmá		tongue	33
zĩmás		Sunday (Fr.)	23
zĩp		jeep	48
zoa, zoa dámbà		friend	7
zõãgà, zõsè		fly, insect	31
zòòm		flour	31
zóobgò, zóobdò		hair of head	33
zóomà, zóondà		continued, lasted	46
zoombá, zoombdá		rode, mounted	46
	zoolá, zoondá	built, erected	44
	zoombgá, zoomsé	rider, (e.g. astride a horse, bicycle)	48
	zoompá	riders, horsemen	46
zugú, zutú		1. head	33
		2. top of	22
	sód zugú	on the street	22
zũũndù		leather, bark of tree	48

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Alexandre, R. P. 'La Langue Möré,' Memoires de l'Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, No. 34, Dakar 1953.
- Europe-France Outremer, No. 409 Special, March, 1964.
- Greenberg, Joseph H., The Languages of Africa, International Journal of American Linguistics, Volume 29, Number 1, Part II, January, 1963.
- Hall, John F., Dictionary and Practical Notes, Mossi - English Languages, Assemblies of God Mission, Ouahigouya, 1949.
- Skinner, Elliot, The Mossi of the Upper Volta, Stanford University Press, Stanford, California, 1964.

MORE BASIC COURSE

INDEX

	Note, drill number
Adjectives	
multiple modifiers	32B
position of	13A
Affirmation	
general note	7C
incomplete affirmation	7F
Complement	
obligatory	2F
Connectives	
/bí, bí/	18.3A
/la/	4E
/la/ + vowel elision	17.3A-B
/n/ + /la/	34A
/sǎ/	22.1A-C
/sě/	6C, 21.2A-C
/ti/	20.4A-B, 37.1A-B
Consonants	
alternation of	9D
alternation of nasal consonants	12C
nasal consonants and nasal vowels	12A
Courtesy	
expressions of	14A-B, 36B, 36.1A
Future Time	
general note	6B
Greetings	
general	1A
members of family	2C
regional variations	2B
welcoming	2A

MORÉ BASIC COURSE

	Note, drill number
Intonation	
after certain particles	35B
questions	3.2A-B
Kinship Terminology	
general note	30B
Metathesis	
general note	18C
Negation	
drills	18.1A-D
general note	6A
incomplete	7F
of imperative verbs	11D
Nouns	
action class, /-ga/ /-se/	36A, 32.1A-D
agent class, /-da/ /-ba/	9E
augmentative, /kásmà/	30D
collective class, /dambá/	2E
demonstrative suffix, /-ǎ/	6D, 13F, 18.2A-E
diminutive, /bílà/	30C
enclosure class, /-go/ /-do/	32.1A-B, 36A
inflection drills, /-ě/ /-ǎ/	18.2A-E
instrument nouns /-d-/ /-i-/	32C, 34J
locative suffix /-ě/	3D
mass nouns /-m/	31C, 31.2A-B, 34C
/-mde/ suffix	23C
partitive vowel	25A
personal class	30.1A-B, 30.2A, 30.3C
result class, /-de/ /-a/	23C, 33.1A-B
sex markers	30E, 32E
spacial relationships	15C, 22.3A-C

MORE BASIC COURSE

	Note, drill number
Numerals	
drills	8.1A, 33.2A, 33.3B
general note	8B
Pronouns	
/a/ special use of	7A, 8B
drills	29.1A-B
forms of	1B
object pronouns	7G
social use of	1D, 30A
style	1C
Questions	
intonation of	3.2A-B
markers: /bí/	5A
/wae/	13C
Reduplication	10A
Suffixes	
Nominal	
/-ǎ/	6D, 13F, 18.2A-E
/-da/ /-dba/	9E
/-de/ /-a/	23C, 33.1A-B
/-ě/	3D
/-ga/ /-se/	36A, 32.1A-D
/-go/ /-do/	32.1A-B, 36A
/-m/ /-a/	31C, 31.2A-B, 34C
/-mde/	23C
Verbal	
/-e/	34B
/-ě/	20.3A-C
/-g-/	10D
/-s-/	15B

	Note, drill number
Titles	
great respect	4A
familiarity and respect	32D
Tones	
drills	16.1A-E, 17.1A-D
general note	3E, 16.1C
initial /ya/	4B
object nouns	4C
Verbs	
aspect	9A, 18A
/bée/ and /ya/	21.1A-F
cohortative imperative	15D
immediacy marker	7B
imperative forms	5B, 5C, 20.1A-D
imperfective aspect	3B, 17.2A-C
irregular verbs	9C, 19.2A-D
/kǝ/, special uses of	11C, 19.4A-B, 20.2A-E
/la/, special verb	7E
negation	6A, 18.1A-D
negative imperative	11D, 20.1A-D
passive	13D, 34.1A-C
past tense marker	10B, 14D, 23.2A-E, 24.1A-C, 25.1A-C
perfective aspect	3A, 19.1A-D
phonetic changes	11A, 23B
present tense	9B, 17.2A-C
reversive marker /-g-/	10D
special expressions	8A
stative verbs	20A, 22.2A
subordinate ending /-e/	34B
transitiviser /-s-/	15B
two tense markers	28.3A-B
verb plus verb constructions	
/dátě/ + /n/ + verb	20.3A-C, 23A
/déngě/ + /n/ + verb	34D
/míí + /n/ + verb	24A, 32.2B

MORE BASIC COURSE

	Note, drill number
/ná/ + /n/ + verb	28.A-D, 28.2A-F
/náã/ + /n/ + verb	27.2A-D, 27.3A-C, 27.4A-D, 27.5A
/tugó/ + /n/ + verb	34.2A-C, 34.3A, 37.1A, 37.2A-B
verb + having, knowing, being	26.1A-D
verb + /kõ/	20.2A-E
/yẽ/ + verb	35A
Vowels	
elision of	1E, 13B, 16.2A-D
stem changes	4D
Word Order	
emphatic	19.3A-F, 34A
expressions of location and time	32A